

United States
Department of
Agriculture

Forest Service

**Pacific Southwest
Forest and Range
Experiment Station**

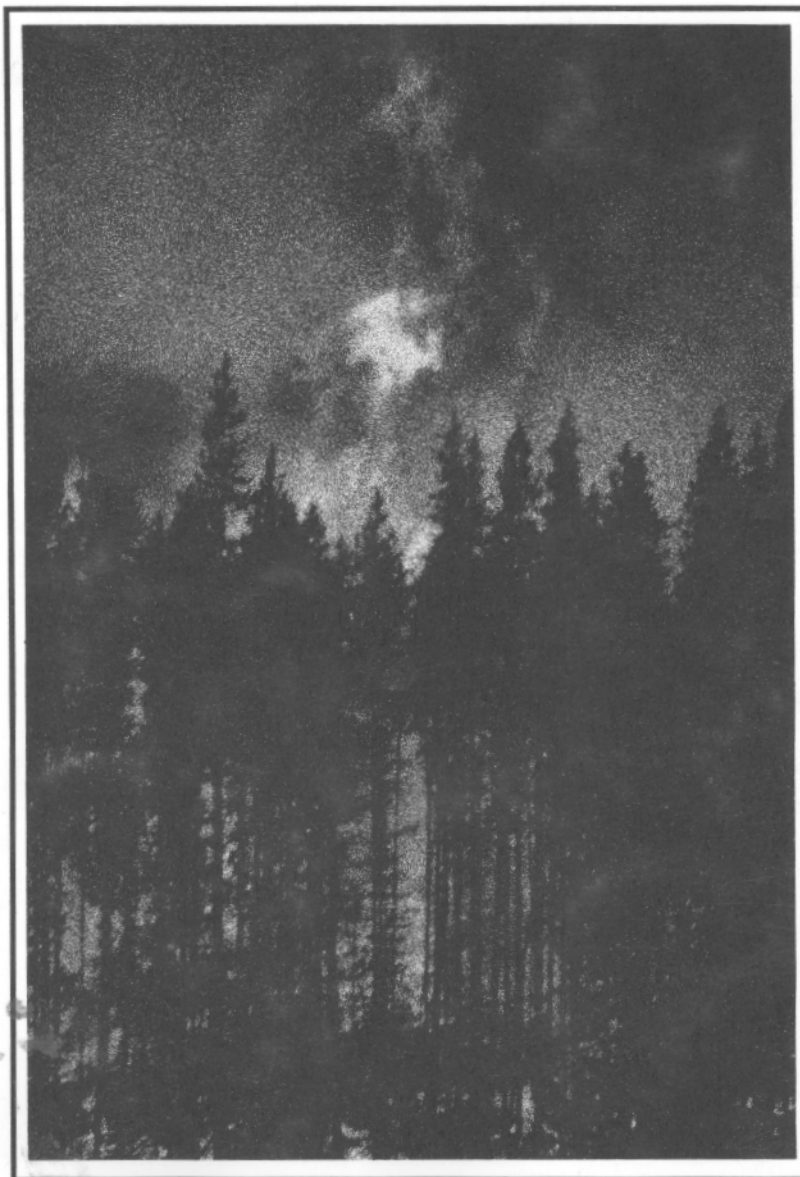
General Technical
Report PSW-109

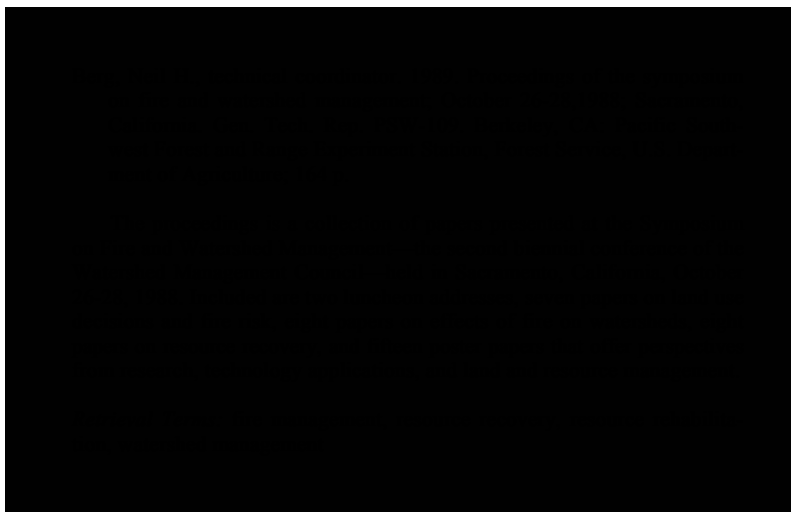


Proceedings of the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management

October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California

Neil H. Berg, Technical Coordinator





Authors took responsibility for preparing papers in camera-ready format. Views expressed in each paper are those of the authors and not necessarily those of the sponsoring organizations. Trade names and commercial enterprises mentioned are solely for information and do not imply the endorsement of the sponsoring organizations.

Publisher:

**Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station
P.O. Box 245, Berkeley, California 94701**

March 1989

Berg, Neil H., technical coordinator. 1989. Proceedings of the symposium on fire and watershed management; October 26-28, 1988; Sacramento, California. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-109. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 164 p.

The proceedings is a collection of papers presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management—the second biennial conference of the Watershed Management Council—held in Sacramento, California, October 26-28, 1988. Included are two luncheon addresses, seven papers on land use decisions and fire risk, eight papers on effects of fire on watersheds, eight papers on resource recovery, and fifteen poster papers that offer perspectives from research, technology applications, and land and resource management.

Retrieval Terms: fire management, resource recovery, resource rehabilitation, watershed management

Authors took responsibility for preparing papers in camera-ready format. Views expressed in each paper are those of the authors and not necessarily those of the sponsoring organizations. Trade names and commercial enterprises mentioned are solely for information and do not imply the endorsement of the sponsoring organizations.

Publisher:

AD-33 Bookplate
(1-83)

Pacific Southwest
P.O. Box 245, Berkeley, CA 94701

March 1989

NATIONAL

**A
G
R
I
C
U
L
T
U
R
A
L**



LIBRARY

Proceedings of the Symposium on

Fire and Watershed Management

October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California

Neil H. Berg
Technical Coordinator

CONTENTS

Foreword	v
Opening Remarks.....	vi
Luncheon Addresses	
Timber Salvage Operations and Watershed Resource Values	1
<i>Paul F. Barker</i>	
Current and Future Wildland Fire Protection Impacts of the Wildland-Urban Interface	3
<i>Harold R. Walt</i>	
Technical Papers	
Land Use Decisions and Fire Risk	9
Wildfire in the Pacific West: A Brief History and Implications for the Future	11
<i>James K. Agee</i>	
Use of Prescribed Fire to Reduce Wildfire Potential	17
<i>Robert E. Martin, J. Boone Kauffman, and Joan D. Landsberg</i>	
The Effects of Prescribed Burning on Fire Hazard in the Chaparral: Toward a New Conceptual Synthesis	23
<i>Anthony T. Dunn</i>	
Cost-Effective Fire Management for Southern California's Chaparral Wilderness: An Analytical Procedure	30
<i>Chris A. Childers and Douglas D. Piirto</i>	
Demography: A Tool for Understanding the Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Problem	38
<i>James B. Davis</i>	

Controlled Burns on the Urban Fringe, Mount Tamalpais, Marin County, California	43
<i>Thomas E. Spittler</i>	
Synthesis and Summary: Land Use Decisions and Fire Risk	49
<i>Theodore E. Adams, Jr.</i>	
Effects of Fire on Watersheds	53
Effects of Fire on Chaparral Soils in Arizona and California and Postfire Management Implications	55
<i>Leonard F. DeBano</i>	
Soil Hydraulic Characteristics of a Small Southwest Oregon Watershed Following High- Intensity Wildfire	63
<i>David S. Parks and Terrance W. Cundy</i>	
Frequency of Floods from a Burned Chaparral Watershed.....	68
<i>Iraj Nasser</i>	
Application of SAC88 to Estimating Hydrologic Effects of Fire on a Watershed	72
<i>R. Larry Ferral</i>	
Stream Shading, Summer Streamflow and Maximum Water Temperature Following Intense Wildfire in Headwater Streams	75
<i>Michael Amaranthus, Howard Jubas, and David Arthur</i>	
Effects of Fire Retardant on Water Quality	79
<i>Logan A. Norris and Warren L. Webb</i>	
Maximizing Vegetation Response on Management Burns by Identifying Fire Regimes	87
<i>V. Thomas Parker</i>	
The Effects of Fire on Watersheds: A Summary	92
<i>Nicholas Dennis</i>	
Resource Recovery	95
Emergency Burn Rehabilitation: Cost, Risk, and Effectiveness	97
<i>Scott R. Miles, Donald M. Haskins, and Darrel W. Ranken</i>	
Emergency Watershed Protection Measures in Highly Unstable Terrain on the Blake Fire, Six Rivers National Forest, 1987.....	103
<i>Mark E. Smith and Kenneth A. Wright</i>	
Emergency Watershed Treatments on Burned Lands in Southwestern Oregon	109
<i>Ed Gross, Ivars Steinblums, Curt Ralston, and Howard Jubas</i>	
Wildfire, Ryegrass Seeding, and Watershed Rehabilitation	115
<i>RD. Taskey, CL. Curtis, and J. Stone</i>	
Rationale for Seeding Grass on the Stanislaus Complex Burn	125
<i>Earl C. Ruby</i>	

Watershed Response and Recovery from the Will Fire: Ten Years of Observation	131
<i>Kenneth B. Roby</i>	
Compatibility of Timber Salvage Operations with Watershed Values	137
<i>Roger J. Poff</i>	
Rehabilitation and Recovery Following Wildfires: A Synthesis	141
<i>Lee MacDonald</i>	
Poster Papers	145
Population Structure Analysis in the Context of Fire: A Preliminary Report	147
<i>Jeremy John Ahouse</i>	
Effect of Grass Seeding and Fertilizing on Surface Erosion in Two Intensely Burned Sites in Southwest Oregon	148
<i>Michael P. Amaranthus</i>	
Postfire Erosion and Vegetation Development in Chaparral as Influenced by Emergency Revegetation-A Study in Progress	150
<i>Susan G. Conard, Peter M. Wohlgemuth, Jane A. Kertis, Wade G. Wells II, and Susan C. Barro</i>	
Chaparral Response to Burning: A Summer Wildfire Compared with Prescribed Burns	151
<i>Daniel O. Kelly, V. Thomas Parker, and Chris Rogers</i>	
Fire Rehabilitation Techniques on Public Lands in Central California	152
<i>John W. Key</i>	
Distribution and Persistence of Hydrophobic Soil Layers on the Indian Burn	153
<i>Roger J. Poff</i>	
Fire Hazard Reduction, Watershed Restoration at the University of California, Berkeley	154
<i>Carol L. Rice and Robert Charbonneau</i>	
Soil Movement After Wildfire in Taiga (Discontinuous Permafrost) Upland Forest	155
<i>Charles W. Slaughter</i>	
Fire and Archaeology	156
<i>Larry Swan and Charla Francis</i>	
Modeling Fire and Timber Salvage Effects for the Silver Fire Recovery Project in Southwestern Oregon	157
<i>Jon Vanderheyden, Lee Johnson, Mike Amaranthus, and Linda Batten</i>	
Maximizing Chaparral Vegetation Response to Prescribed Burns: Experimental Considerations	158
<i>Chris Rogers, V. Thomas Parker, Victoria R. Kelly, and Michael K. Wood</i>	
Burned-Area Emergency Rehabilitation in the Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, USDA	159
<i>Kathryn J. Silverman</i>	
Does Fire Regime Determine the Distribution of Pacific Yew in Forested Watersheds?	160
<i>Stanley Scher and Thomas M. Jimerson</i>	

Techniques and Costs for Erosion Control and Site Restoration in National Parks	162
<i>Terry A. Spreiter, William Weaver, and Ronald Sonnevil</i>	
Erosion Associated with Postfire Salvage Logging Operations in the Central Sierra Nevada ..	163
<i>Wade G. Wells II</i>	
Technical and Poster Papers Not Submitted for Publication	164
Exhibitors	164

FOREWORD

Wildfires have affected the landscape since the dawn of time and will continue to do so for the foreseeable future. Policies and practices in response to fire have varied, however, contingent upon a complex mix of values and attitudes overlaid by the technical acumen available to both "fight" the fire and reclaim the land afterwards.

Massive wildland fires along the west coast of the United States during summer 1987 were the impetus for selection of Fire and Watershed Management as the theme for the second biennial conference of the Watershed Management Council. Consumption of a major portion of Yellowstone National Park by wildfire in 1988 prompted national attention on fire containment and control policies and elevated the significance of the Symposium and Field Tour.

After the success of the California Watershed Management Conference in November 1986, a steering group was formed to plan and organize the second conference. Session topics were selected to identify major issues currently affecting the development of policies and procedures in the area of fire and watershed management. The topics were land use decisions and fire risk, effects of fire on watersheds, and resource recovery (emergency rehabilitation and long-term restoration). Each topic was examined during half-day symposiums at which information was presented by 25 invited experts. Their papers represent a unique assemblage of knowledge, viewpoints, and methodologies. Included are perspectives from research, technology applications, and land and resource management. The Symposium also provided opportunities for in-depth, one-on-one discussions as part of the presentation of 15 poster papers. In addition, Paul Barker, Forest Service, USDA, and Harold Walt, California State Board of Forestry, presented luncheon addresses.

To illustrate points developed in the Symposium and allow further informal interactions, a field tour of the Stanislaus Complex Burn, the largest contiguous area burned in California in 1987, was held after the Symposium. Stops on the tour emphasized emergency rehabilitation techniques, salvage timber harvest, and reforestation efforts and pointed out the often complex

interplay of procedures and policies necessary to optimize resource recovery.

Principal sponsors of the Symposium were the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, Department of Forestry and Resource Management (University of California, Berkeley), East Bay Municipal Utility District, Pacific Gas and Electric Company, and Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station (Forest Service, USDA). Other Symposium sponsors included the California Department of Conservation (Division of Mines and Geology), Jones and Stokes Associates, Inc., Meridian Engineering, Inc., National Council of the Paper Industry for Air and Stream Improvement, Inc., Operation Phoenix, Pacific Southwest Region (Forest Service, USDA), Soil Conservation Service, USDA, US Environmental Protection Agency, Water Resources Center (University of California), and Wildland Resources Center (University of California). The Stanislaus National Forest (Forest Service, USDA) sponsored the field tour.

To expedite publication of the proceedings, we asked authors to assume full responsibility for delivering their manuscripts in photoready format by the time the conference convened. We thank all the presentors who took the time to prepare their presentations for this volume and recognize the difficulty of converting a poster presentation to a manuscript.

Without the tireless and dedicated effort of the program staff, Theodore Adams (field trip), Linton Bowie (publicity), Trinda Bedrossian (at large), Robert Doty (posters, technical program, field trip), Johannes DeVries (at large), Ed Dunkley (at large), James Frazier (field trip), Charles Hazel (local arrangements, exhibits), George Ice (technical program), Kimberly Lathrop (technical program), John Munn (technical program), Carol Walker (registration), and Ed Wallace (at large), neither the symposium nor the field tour would have occurred.

Special thanks are due May Huddleston, Stanley Scher, and Sandy Young for editing these proceedings and to the Pacific Gas and Electric Company for producing and distributing the bulk of the publicity materials.

Neil H. Berg

Technical Coordinator

*Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station,
Forest Service USDA*

OPENING REMARKS

WELCOME! It is a real pleasure for me to welcome you to the second biennial Watershed Management Conference. Just think, just two short years ago many of us were gathered here in Sacramento for the first conference. That first conference was a huge success, and I believe that this second biennial conference will follow suit.

The goal in organizing this conference is to provide a forum for discussing the problems, experiences, and needs for changes related to fire and watershed management. The fires of fall 1987, in Oregon and California, jolted us into the realization of just how vulnerable our watersheds are to wildfires—thus, the reason for us to choose "Fire and Watershed Management" as the theme of this second biennial conference.

Just a quick check of the program tells you that an excellent exchange of information on watershed management is in store for us. The symposium planning committee, chaired by Neil Berg, has selected a number of papers relating to land use decisions that contribute to, or lessen, the risks of wildfire. Other selected papers will present some new information as well as reemphasize the effects that fire has on watershed properties. Then a group of papers will explore ways of rehabilitating watersheds that have been ravaged by wildfire, to restore their favorable hydrologic function.

The planning committee has provided, between the major sections of the symposium, ample opportunities for discussion with your fellow colleagues and a chance to renew old acquaintances. The exhibits will provide a look at new technologies. Although we usually do not hesitate to share our views openly, the wine tasting will loosen us up for some frank discussions. The poster session will provide a welcome break between sessions and again give us a chance to exchange information on a

one-on-one basis. The Fire Flicks Film Festival will provide a multimedia forum for transferring knowledge and information. I believe that a real top-notch symposium is in store for us.

At the end of the symposium, we have a field trip to the Stanislaus National Forest to get that "on the ground" look and experience that just can't be provided in a ballroom. Again, we will have a chance to discuss and exchange ideas with our peers, while observing the challenges that wildfire imposes on our routine life in watershed management.

In summary, I think we have an enjoyable, informative and productive four days ahead of us. But, let's not just sit back and assume that the authors presenting the papers are providing all the answers. As the papers are presented, ask yourselves, "What management options do we need to pursue to make watersheds less susceptible to wildfire? Are changes in fuels management needed? What are they? How do we put them into practice? What new research is needed?" Let's go away from here, not with just the knowledge of how to fix it—but, let's constantly look ahead and seek out ways to improve watershed management.

You are the best brains in watershed management, and you are the most experienced cadre to meet the challenges ahead.

Let's use this time to take a break from the hectic year that we have all put in to recover from last year's holocausts. Kick back, give the authors your attention, absorb the experience and information that they have for you, pursue some active discussions while looking at the exhibits and posters, and use your newly gained knowledge for better watershed management in future years.

Again, welcome! It is good to see you all again.

Andrew A. Leven
Executive Committee Chair, Watershed Management Council
Assistant Regional Forester, Range and Watershed
Management
Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, USDA

Timber Salvage Operations and Watershed Resource Values¹

Paul F. Barker²

In 1987 we had the most extensive and destructive wildfires ever to hit the National Forests in California. More than 700,000 acres of National Forest land in the Sierra Nevada and Northern California burned, and 1.8 billion board feet of timber was damaged or killed.

Fire intensity was so severe that rates of tree kill were as much as 40 percent in some stands. As a result, salvage logging of severely damaged stands became a major priority in the Pacific Southwest Region, and salvage logging made up nearly half of the total timber harvest in 1988.

The fires were of particular concern because the 20 million acres of National Forest land in California supply nearly half the surface water available for homes, farms, and communities in the State.

EMERGENCY REHABILITATION

The firefighters received much-deserved credit for their heroic efforts to protect lives, property, and resources during those fires. Unfortunately, the rehabilitation crews that went in after the fires to protect watersheds from further damage got much less attention.

Emergency rehabilitation measures began right after the fires and included the following:

- seeding 78,000 acres of intensely burned lands with grass and forbs to establish protective cover
- contour felling of dead standing trees on about 3,000 acres to retard downslope water runoff
- clearing about 70 miles of stream channels of debris that could plug culverts and damage bridges

- restoring drainage along about 1,000 miles of roads to handle increased runoff from winter rains

- installing more than 2,000 structures to trap sediment, stabilize streambanks, and reduce gully erosion

Emergency rehabilitation cost over \$5 million over a period of three months. Watershed restoration and fisheries habitat work continued throughout the year and more than \$1 million has been spent on restoration projects in 1988.

SALVAGE LOGGING

I think these few facts show that the Region is committed to preserving watershed resource values. However, earlier this year there was a lot of press coverage of public concerns about the potential adverse effects of salvage logging on National Forest watersheds. Many of our salvage timber sales were challenged.

Today I'd like to put salvage logging on the National Forests in perspective.

Timber harvest from National Forests in California averages 1.8 billion board feet annually. In normal years salvage makes up less than 5 percent of timber harvest. As a result of the 1987 fires, salvage made up an unusually large percentage of the harvest in 1988, amounting to about 50 percent of the total. However, harvest of green timber was reduced proportionately so that the total volume harvested from National Forests remained close to the historic average of 1.8 billion board feet.

Salvage logging is an emergency measure that requires timely removal of the fire-damaged trees before they deteriorate. Normal timber harvest planning extends over a 5-year period, but we do not have that kind of time available in salvage logging. Although it is important to salvage fire damaged trees before they become unmarketable due to insect damage and disease, we cannot afford to take shortcuts which will result in further damage to the watershed resources in the area.

Once a wildfire passes through an area, protective cover is reduced, the area is

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Regional Forester, Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, San Francisco, California

subjected to increased raindrop impact, and in some cases there is a loss of soil infiltration capacity. All of this results in more rapid runoff, gullyng, and subsequent water quality degradation. In many cases, we no longer have that "green" strip of vegetation along the stream channels to filter out sediment, and slow down the flow of water.

In preparing salvage sales, the Forest Service looks at the cumulative effects on the watershed caused by the fire, and those likely to occur as a result of salvage logging. The total environmental assessment includes benefits that can be derived from salvage logging as well as the negative effect salvage might have. The same care and attention to resource values occurs in planning salvage sales. Only the much shorter time available to complete salvage sales distinguishes them from normal green timber sales.

Total salvage from the 1987 fires will amount to about 1.2 billion board feet over the next couple of years. Green sales will be reduced during this period, and only about 200,000 acres of the total 700,000 burned acres will be salvage logged. That is a very small percentage of the total 6-million acres of National Forest land in California considered available and suitable for timber production.

So what becomes of the areas that are not salvaged?

Watershed restoration work will continue in those areas. This year and for the next 2 to 3 years, \$2 to \$3 million will be spent on watershed restoration work.

In the past, only emergency watershed restoration and salvage dollars were appropriated by Congress. This year additional appropriations for watershed and wildlife habitat restoration were authorized to work on additional acres that could not be covered under the emergency funding authorization.

BENEFITS OF SALVAGE LOGGING TO WATERSHEDS

Potential adverse effects of salvage logging have been discussed at length. What about the benefits of salvage logging?

The most obvious benefit is that valuable timber will be used for wood products rather than just deteriorate. But equally important, salvage can return significant benefits to the many resources in the burned areas.

Unsalvaged-dead trees are susceptible to insect and disease infestations, and can represent a threat to the remaining live trees and adjacent stands. In addition, standing-dead trees provide little protection to the watershed. Slash that remains on the ground following salvage logging can provide mulch to

an otherwise bare landscape, and during salvage, a certain number of trees are felled on the contour, and left on the ground as a watershed protection measure.

In many areas, large volumes of woody debris deposited in drainages as a result of wildfires are removed as part of salvage operations, while at the same time leaving logs in stream channels where such measures will stabilize channels and improve fish habitat.

Timber salvage operations provide needed dollars for long term watershed restoration and may be the most important contribution to watershed recovery after a fire.

Emergency funds for rehabilitation are limited to treatments that are emergency in nature. Although the amount of emergency funds available may be large, only a small area of a watershed is usually treated with those funds.

Road erosion is a common water pollution problem. As part of salvage operations, roads can be resurfaced and culverts upgraded or given needed maintenance. Roads opened for salvage logging can also provide vital access to conduct other watershed restoration work.

An important part of all salvage sales is collecting funds assessed to carry out erosion control. Erosion control measures are a normal part of any salvage sale contract.

Often overlooked is the fact that without salvage sales, the above benefits will not be accomplished because our budgets seldom provide funds for recovery beyond the dollars available for emergency rehabilitation. This is an important factor in analyzing cumulative effects.

Salvage, when done properly, and I can assure you the Forests are doing a great job in "doing it properly," adds little if any additional impact and serves to reduce the long term cumulative watershed impacts already imposed on the watershed by wildfire. Salvage actually speeds up revegetation and reduces the time it takes for the watershed to recover its hydrologic function. Improvements to roads and channels and other erosion measures also reduce the overall cumulative impacts in a watershed.

CONCLUSION

Salvage logging, properly planned and carried out, provides important benefits to watersheds. The Forest Service is carrying out salvage with full consideration of watershed values. We are using salvage logging as an opportunity to carry out major restoration projects to benefit fish, wildlife, soils, and water resources on the National Forests.

Thank you very much.

Current and Future Wildland Fire Protection Impacts of the Wildland-Urban Interface¹

Harold R. Walt²

I want to first of all thank the Watershed Management Council for putting on this most timely and important conference. You must know that your specialized field is the Board of Forestry's absolute top priority for an expanded and enriched research effort, and we had strong bipartisan support from the Legislature to fund the start of such a program beginning in 1988-89, but with so many budget pressures this year in Sacramento and the unexpected surge in enrollment at the University of California, we had to take a rain-check until next year.

Thank you, Andrew Leven, for the kind introduction. You may wonder how a school teacher specializing in banking has the temerity to stand up before a group of watershed specialists. It's easy; I combine the two backgrounds: banking and forestry. Picture something along this line. It's October. The leaves are falling and I can't remember when I've seen so many stripped, bare and lifeless-looking branches. Particularly the ones belonging to savings and loan associations.

As you have heard, I was trained as a forester at Berkeley but made my living for years as president of a major architectural and engineering company. Governor Deukmejian appointed me as chairman of the State Board of Forestry nearly six years ago, with assurances that the assignment would require only one day a month of my time. This nine-member Board sits as the policy and regulatory body for the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection. Perhaps of direct relevance to my talk, the Board has been more active during the last five

years in developing policies related to wildfire and the wildland urban interface than at any time in its 102-year history. During this period, the Board has traveled extensively in rural California and has come to know first-hand the fire protection impacts of development.

For the next few minutes, I hope to inform you about some of these impacts and to try to convince you, both collectively and as individuals, to help the Board address some of these issues. We will need all the help we can get, particularly from you professionals.

There is much I could talk to you about on wildfire and watersheds--everything from controlled burning to revegetation after wildfire. I could even dwell on the point that watershed damage done by wildfire, at least as measured by the area of vegetation destroyed, exceeds the area harvested for timber by many times. But I am sure others have told you all about this.

The real title of my speech ought to be something like "Fire and Water Ain't Seen Nothing Yet--Just Wait for the Next Eleven Million People." More people! Remember this and you will know the source of most significant current and future issues related to watersheds, wildfire, and the wildland-urban interface. The driving force behind both watershed and wildfire protection policies in California increasingly will be population.

Let me refresh your memory. Current estimates place the State's population at about 28 million. State Department of Finance projections suggest that the number will be 33 million by the year 2000 and 39 million by the year 2020. What does this mean in magnitude? Look around the room. In your mind's eye, add 20 percent more people. This is the year 2000. Now add 40 percent more. This is the year 2020. All of you want water to drink, a place to live--preferably in the country for

¹Presented at the symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Chairman, California State Board of Forestry, Sacramento, California

many of you, beautiful scenery in which to recreate along with police and fire protection. But we have to provide it within a fixed area and with fewer per capita dollars spent than we now use.

Of much greater concern to watershed folks, this population growth has not been evenly distributed around the state. From 1980-87, 23 rural counties increased their population by nearly 24 percent while population in the other 35 counties grew by only 17 percent. The fastest growth rates took place in rural counties like Nevada, Lake, and Calaveras. There are now over 7 million Californians living in rural areas, double the number of ten years ago, involving something over 2 million residential and related structures. With relatively few changes over the next three decades, the same counties are projected to be growth leaders. We are looking at more than 10 million residents in rural California early next century. And not only are we getting more pressure to produce water, we are having more people living in the very areas that yield this water.

This has all been documented in an extensive forest and range survey by the Department of Forestry and Fire Protection that is hot off the press. It is entitled California's Forest and Rangelands: Growing Conflict Over Changing Uses. This is eye-opening stuff and should be required reading several times for everyone in this room. It only costs a 25-cent postage stamp. See me or contact the CDF Forest and Rangeland Resources Assessment Program for details.

Now let me share some statistics that you may not know about. They concern wildfire. The State has financial responsibility for protecting timber, watershed, and contiguous rangelands amounting to about 35.5 million acres (14.4 MM ha). These are called State Responsibility Areas and include all of the significant, privately owned watershed lands in the State. On these lands, we currently experience about 8,000 wildfire starts a year. For various reasons, the number of fire starts from all causes has increased 37 percent over the last decade, based on a 5-year moving average. If long-term trends continue, we can expect an average of 11,000 wildfire starts per year over the 1990's and as many as 15,000 wildfire starts per year in the first decade of next century. Forty percent of the acreage burned comes from people-caused fires. Of special concern is arson. Approximately one out of five wildfires is started by an arsonist. There is a direct statistical

link between the number of people and the arson starts. The more people, the more arson starts.

You may wonder why I am focusing on the effects of more people in wildland areas in this talk. From the standpoint of a wildfire protection agency, people and their impacts are our most critical problem. Even without people, the climate and geography of California encourage wildfires. In fact our state's natural history shows much evidence of wildfires frequently burning huge acreages. Dry climate, mountainous terrain, hot summer days, and substantial winds set the stage for fast-starting and hot-burning wildfire. But people exacerbate the wildfire problem in several ways.

- They build residences and other structures in rural settings that are hazardous fire areas without understanding the real danger of wildfire.

- They expect, indeed, politically demand that these residences and communities be protected from wildfire. Thus fire agencies are under a political and moral obligation to try to protect life and property first from wildfire. This is despite a mandate to protect natural resources.

- The location of structures in wildland areas along ridges and in other areas changes the way wildfires must be handled. Fires must be fought in very complex circumstances which give first consideration to evacuation of people and to protection of property. Only lastly is consideration given to the positioning of forces and choice of tactics to control wildfire.

- Increased residential and commercial development, with its associated streets, lawns, landscaping, and island borders of unused natural vegetation alter the pattern of firespread. Structures, especially if they are built in a manner not conducive to fire safety, themselves become volatile fuel for a wildfire.

- Control of accumulated fuels by prescribed burning is more difficult because emerging land ownership patterns and attitudes of land owners complicate land management. Of course, here it is worth noting that our past policy over the last 50 years to stop most wildfire has added to our accumulated fuels. How serious is the problem of structures on watershed lands, you might ask? Very serious. In my

lifetime, nearly 4,500 homes and structures have been destroyed by rural wildfire. Sixty percent of these losses have occurred since 1970 at a total damage cost of about 750 million dollars--roughly the same magnitude as total losses from earthquakes and floods during the same period.

The recent Forty-niner fire near Nevada City shows the situation graphically. Jerry Partain, Director of the Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, called this fire the classic interface fire of the 1990's. In a matter of minutes, said one observer, this conflagration changed from a wildfire to a "real estate fire" and led the San Francisco Chronicle to question if homes should even be built in areas so severely prone to wildfire. The fire was indeed a classic. There were narrow roads, streets and houses without identification, flammable materials, little reserve water, and a belief by homeowners that the fire could only happen to someone else. The total damage was in excess of 30 million dollars and involved over 150 homes. More than 33,000 acres (13,400 ha) of watershed lands were burned. During the first day and a half of the fire, the vast majority, if not all, of the wildland and structural fire engines were committed to structure protection, leaving the wildfire to extend and to threaten more homes and to destroy more natural resources. Structures and their location effectively "watered down," so to speak, the ability to initially attack and to control the fire.

Structures even complicate what is essentially a wildland fire. A good example is the Stanislaus Fire Complex in 1987 near Sonora in Tuolumne County. This fire burned over 160,000 acres (65,000 ha) of watershed, which was about a sixth of the total of 900,000 acres (364,000 ha) that burned in 1987. The fire threatened several towns, and under different circumstances might well have burned hundreds of structures. The threat of burning into residential areas, plus the actual existence of structures, changed the way the fire was fought and diverted firefighting resources away from protecting timber and watershed lands. It is hard to measure if the natural resource losses were greater because of the existence of structures, but they were a real factor in the fire.

Structural fire protection in State Responsibility Areas is somewhat fragmented and difficult to coordinate. In addition to the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (CDF), there

are about 360 special fire districts and 160 volunteer companies. Major consolidation of existing independent fire agencies is not expected over the next decade, so problems of coordination will remain, or even accelerate. Further, in many places CDF, on a de facto basis, has become a rural fire organization that provides services not directly related to wildfire protection. These include, but are not limited to, structural protection, emergency services such as heart attacks or hazardous material spills, and public assistance calls. Often because of the location of its facilities and its cooperative relationships with local citizens, CDF is the single agency that is expected to respond to public needs. These pressures and expectations will continue as more people move to rural areas.

The Board of Forestry has been struggling with these impacts for the last six years. I have come to believe that there are no simple answers. However, I think that you, as watershed professionals and other specialists concerned about our watersheds, can play an important role as we try to address the impacts of wildfire. Let me suggest a few action items, both to make what I say more relevant and to summarize my comments.

First, it is imperative that we make rural residents aware of the threat of wildfire both to themselves and to the environment. Most people who move into the wildland areas have no idea of the damage that wildfire can and will do in rural California. Statistically, it is just a matter of time until these areas will burn. In addition, people just assume that a fire truck will roll up to their house and protect it if a wildfire is threatening. In reality, this may or may not be true.

State law now requires a 30-foot minimum clearance of flammable vegetation around structures in State Responsibility Areas. This recognizes that such clearance is probably the single most effective step that a homeowner may take. The key to this law is enforcement. About one-fourth of all homes inspected by fire agencies do not meet the 30-foot clearance requirement on the first inspection. Even after a third inspection 28 percent of the homes that did not comply still do not meet the requirement. This would be bad enough if we had a vigorous enforcement program. However, CDF and other fire agencies do not have the

staff to carry out a strong inspection program. At best, only high-risk areas are inspected each year. Thus the first thing you could do would be to understand the need for clearance of flammable vegetation around structures in wildfire-prone areas and to strongly support the personnel and program necessary to get such clearance.

Second, we must have more thorough local planning for the effects of development related to wildfire. Current general planning law recognizes the threat of wildfire only to a very limited degree, and the treatment is superficial when compared to that given to flood and earthquake threats. Over 20 rural counties have little or no consideration of wildfire in their general plans. There is almost no discussion of the cumulative effect of subdivisions in worsening the threat of wildfire. There is little discussion of strategic fire defense improvements, such as landing places for helicopters, or of evacuation plans for people in the event of wildfire. Intellectually, these kinds of analyses are old hat to watershed planners, but can be scary to local politicians and be viewed as very costly by developers.

Last year the Board of Forestry sponsored SB 2190 by Senators Dills and Campbell. The bill strengthened the requirements for general plans to deal with wildfire-related concerns. However, despite the support of fire agencies, planners, and others, the bill was vetoed by the Governor for fiscal reasons. This veto is unfortunate because local planning must be forced to deal with the negative effects of development on fighting wildfire. The Board plans to have the bill introduced again. So the second thing that you can do is to recognize the importance of strengthened local planning and to support such legislation. In addition, if such legislation passes, you can work locally to see that such planning is carried out. Even if a bill does not pass, you can press local government to address the cumulative effects of development on wildfire risk and control tactics.

Third, we must address the badly designed development patterns that give us narrow access roads, unsigned structures, and no reserve water supplies. It is a firefighter's nightmare to approach a wildfire and see a narrow curved road, with overhanging vegetation, and panicked residents driving out. What would you do? Fortunately, the Legislature passed and the Governor signed SB 1075 in 1987. This bill requires the Board to adopt

minimum, statewide standards for access roads, street and structure identification, minimum private reserve water supplies, and fuel breaks and greenbelts. The requirements will apply to all structures constructed in State Responsibility Areas after July 1 of next year. The bill is not retroactive, but we believe that over time much of the problem of poor infrastructure will take care of itself as change means that the standards will apply. The Board has spent the last year developing draft regulations to implement the bill. This draft is now being circulated for public comment in advance of a more formal proposal being scheduled for hearing early next year. Thus the third thing that you can do is to get a copy of the draft and to support our adoption of strong minimum standards. Vigorous support for these standards makes it easier to deal with strong opposition.

And finally, a centralized data base is necessary for all of us to analyze the effects of more people moving into wildland areas. This is just as true for a subdivision as it is for a powerline, a dam, timber harvesting, or another project. Each agency seems to have its data base. But nowhere is our data drawn together at a common source or put in a common geographic information system that is readily accessible to decision makers or project planners. Nor is it collected by the same standards. The closest thing I know is the data base that led to the Forest Assessment that I showed you earlier. In our age of information sophistication, such a failing is shameful--despite all the proprietary and political reasons why each agency guards its information base and ways of collecting the information.

I know that an effort is in progress to develop a common geographic information system among state agencies. This effort as well as any other effort of a similar nature deserves your support.

It is almost anticlimactic to say again that the movement of people into the wildland areas is our key difficulty. We cannot stop this movement, and as a philosophic view I am not sure we should try. But we can do a better job managing the pressure of the wildland-urban interface. I have offered you some suggestions about wildfire. They all require an activist role, whether it be support for more vigorous enforcement of clearance laws, stronger general planning laws to deal

with wildfire, tough minimum statewide standards for things like access roads and minimum water supplies, or a common and standardized data base. When you venture into the world of wildfire and watersheds, you definitely get flame that water will not put out. It is political

flame caused by people wanting to live in rural California. I encourage you to blow on this flame so it does not burn us. Only by being active, within your agencies and at the local and state political level, can you blow hard enough.

Land Use Decisions & Fire Risk



Wildfire in the Pacific West: A Brief History and Implications for the Future¹

James K. Agee

Abstract: Wildfire has been for millennia a natural component of our western forested wildlands. Its frequency, severity, and effects have varied depending on the specific environment, the type of fire, and the adaptations of the forest biota to fire. The socio-political environment in which these forests exist has had a much more significant impact on public and private policy towards fire than the physical-biological environment. Although ecological criteria are important in technical planning, they will be overshadowed by socio-political criteria in problem definition and solution for the future.

The Pacific coastal states (California, Oregon, and Washington) are fire environments, historically subjected to fires of myriad frequencies, intensities, and extents. These natural forest fire regimes have been significantly altered over the past 150 years, primarily in response to socio-political pressures that resulted in more or less fire than projected under a natural fire regime. This paper summarizes these natural fire regimes, the evolution of fire policy in these areas, and fire management implications for the near future.

THE NATURAL FOREST FIRE REGIMES OF THE PACIFIC WEST

The fire regime concept is one way to group potential ecological effects of fires. A fire regime is defined by patterns of similar fire frequency, intensity, and extent. It can be characterized by the environmental factors that determine plant growth (temperature and moisture patterns), ignition sources (lightning, human), and plant species characteristics (fuel accumulation, adaptations to fire) (Agee, in press (b)). The descriptions below apply to "unmanaged" or "natural" forests, but such "baseline" fire regimes have important implications for forests managed for single or multiple uses. Forest fire regimes of the West can be placed in one of three arbitrarily defined categories, which overlap considerably (fig. 1):

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Research Biologist/Professor, National Park Service Cooperative Park Studies Unit, College of Forest Resources, University of Washington, Seattle, Wash.

high, moderate, and low severity, describing the ecological effects generated by the fire.

The high severity fire regimes are generally in cool and wet environments, with fire occurring under unusual conditions: drought and dry, hot winds (Pickford and others 1980). Fires may be of high severity but usually are of short duration (days to weeks). Crown fires and severe surface fires account for most area burned and usually kill all the trees in the stand. Fire return intervals range over 100 years and may not be cyclic (Hemstrom and Franklin 1982, Fahnestock and Agee 1983).

Moderate severity fire regimes typically occur in areas with extended summer drought, and individual fire durations are often weeks to months. The extended burning time is associated with a variety of burning conditions due to variable weather. The overall effect is a patchiness on the landscape as a whole, with individual stands often consisting of two or more age classes. The moderate severity fire regime can also be thought of as a combination of the high and low severity regimes, with each dominating as a function of site-specific fuels, weather, and topography. Dry Douglas-fir forests and red fir forests, with fire return intervals of 25 to 100 years, are examples of moderate severity fire regimes (Means 1982, Morrison and Swanson, in press, Pitcher 1987).

In low severity fire regimes, natural fires are typically frequent (<25 years apart) and widespread. With limited time for fuel to accumulate, fires are of low intensity, which the dominant trees are adapted to resist. Ponderosa pine forests and oak woodlands are examples of low severity fire regimes (Wilkes 1844, Biswell and others 1973, Bork 1985).

DEVELOPMENT OF FIRE POLICY

Natural criteria, such as the historical role of fire in ecosystems, have been secondary to social criteria in directing fire management policy for western forests. In low severity fire regimes, where fire was frequent, social forces did not allow for controlled use of fire, while in high severity fire regimes, where fire was infrequent, controlled use of fire for slash burning was tolerated and to some extent mandated. These patterns are a result of people's response to fire as a threat (Lee 1977).

The Need for Management

At the turn of the 20th century, fire control as a forest policy was in its infancy. Fires set purposely or accidentally by humans were common. In Oregon and Washington, disastrous regional fires in the summer of 1902 occurred in nearly

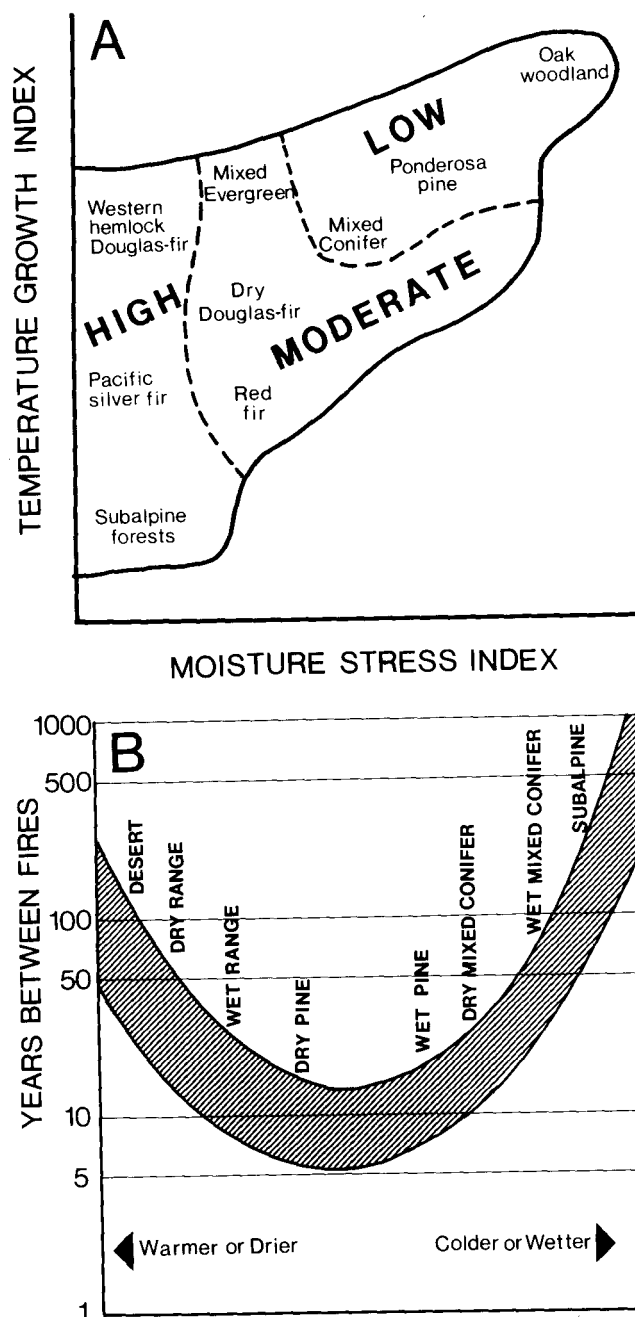


Figure 1--A: Fire regimes are defined by fire patterns: various forest types can be described in terms of the severity resulting from fires of various frequencies and intensities (Agee in press (b)). B: Environmental conditions can be associated with fire return intervals in a variety of landscapes of the West (adapted from Martin 1982).

every county west of the Cascades in Oregon and Washington (McDaniels 1939). Fire control organizations began to appear in these states and California (Allen 1911, Clar 1969a). Foresters believed that before forest management could

become effective, control over forest fire, particularly underburning, was imperative (Steen 1976).

Evolution of Fire Management Policy

In the high severity fire regimes of the Pacific Northwest, industrial landowners led the way towards more effective fire protection. At the same time, they felt that burning slash fuel on cutover areas would better protect the virgin timber supply. Slash burning was recognized as a legitimate forest management tool, particularly since it was done on land whose immediate value was very low.

Slash burning in the Douglas-fir region evolved from a policy of spring or fall burning, which was adopted after 1910 (Allen 1912) to almost exclusive fall burning after some serious fire escapes, including over 100,000 acres (40,000 ha) in 1922 (Joy 1922). Research on slash burning (Hofmann 1922, 1924) highlighted both positive and negative impacts, but the practicality of mandatory slash burning began to be questioned. A debate at the Pacific Logging Congress of 1925 suggested that cutover areas, once spaced far apart, were now contiguous for 10 to 30 miles, and that slash fires repeatedly overran such areas, killing regeneration (Lamb 1925). "Blanket rules" for mandatory slash burning were criticized (Allen 1925). Nevertheless, due to liability laws, slash was burned on most cutover areas up into the 1960's (Agee, in press (a)).

The use of fire in the infrequent but high intensity fire regimes of the Pacific Northwest contrasted with the approach adopted in California in low severity fire regimes, where frequent surface fires had burned through the mixed conifer forests for centuries. The use of underburning in merchantable stands was seen as a continuation of Indian burning practices, and "Piute forestry", as light burning practices were called, was perceived as a threat to forest management (Pyne 1982) and a "challenge to the whole system of efficient fire protection" (Graves 1920).

In 1910, the debate over the practicability of light burning in pine forests began with an article promoting the use of underburning (Hoxie 1910). Foresters replied by showing the detrimental impact of fire on seedlings and saplings, even though residual stands were well stocked (Pratt 1911), and contrasted "promiscuous" light burning with slash burning of the Pacific Northwest, which was "...never allowed to run at random; it is systematically set out, and controlled absolutely" (Boerker 1912). At the time, however, slashing fires were still a major cause of wildfires in the Northwest (Elliott 1911).

In California, the debate on light burning continued into the early 1920's (Graves 1920, Show 1920, White 1920). At the time, fire control in these pine forests was relatively easy; forest rangers tied branches onto their horses' tails and walked them through the forest, scattering pine needles from the path of the oncoming low flames (Munger 1917). In the 1920's, the light burning controversy was reviewed by a commission which noted that practicality, not theory, was the issue, and that full protection appeared to be more practical and economical (Bruce 1923). The classic bulletin against light burning (Show and Kotok 1924) lumped effects of summer wildfires with lighter spring or fall burning; by 1928, the light burning controversy had died down (Clar 1969b), but it was to resurface decades later.

Policy Reevaluations

By the mid-1950's, reevaluation of fire as a threat eventually resulted in relatively less slash burning in high severity fire regimes and more underburning in low severity regimes. Foresters in the Douglas-fir region began to doubt the need for compulsory slash burning in the early 1950's, comparing the practice to committing suicide for fear of incurring an accident (Hagenstein 1951). Forest Service research had indicated generally negative impacts from slash burning (Isaac 1930, Isaac and Hopkins 1937) except for hazard reduction (McArdle 1930, Munger and Matthews 1939). Even now, there is limited evidence that prescribed fire west of the Cascades reduces the threat and costs of destructive wildfire (Deeming, in press). In a reaction to environmental concerns about smoke, burning seasons were expanded into the wetter months during the late 1960's (Dell 1969). Complex manuals were developed to predict environmental effects (Cramer 1974). Air quality legislation and regulation over the last 10 years (Clean Air Act Amendments of 1977, PM10 regulations for fine particulate) suggest that slash burning, as well as other uses of fire, will be restricted increasingly in years to come.

In the low severity fire regimes of the eastern Cascades and California, researchers began to provide evidence that a "blanket rule" forbidding fire use in these areas had contributed to increased insect problems, increases in fuel hazards, and undesirable species composition changes (Weaver 1943, Biswell and others 1955). Wildfire effects in these historically low severity fire regimes were beginning to mimic those of high severity fire regimes, as all but the most severe fires were being contained. Light burning resurfaced when the Department of the Interior accepted the Leopold Report (Leopold and others 1963), a wildlife commission report which recognized the important role such fires played in National Park ecosystems. The emergence of other groups in

society advocating use of fire as a tool (environmental preservationists, hunting clubs, gravel mining interests) helped to institutionalize the use of fire as a tool (Lee 1977). The application of prescribed and natural fire in national park ecosystems (Kilgore 1976) and broader use for hazard reduction and wildlife management is now widely accepted by both professionals and the public.

IMPLICATIONS FOR THE FUTURE

People have traditionally viewed wildfire as a threat or a problem rather than an ecological event (Lee 1977). In high severity fire regimes, this threat was dealt with by using fire as a hazard reduction tool after logging. In low severity fire regimes, the "promiscuous" threat was mitigated by removing fire from the ecosystem to the extent possible. Both ecological and social changes have occurred in these fire regimes, with a concomitant redefinition of threats. If the historical paradigm of fire policy reacting to threat continues, some implications for the future can be projected.

High Severity Fire Regimes

Fire is typically an infrequent event in ecosystems with high severity fire regimes, and fire control has been relatively effective. The threat of air pollution in the populated western parts of Oregon and Washington is likely to overshadow the benefits of hazard reduction, and slash burning may tend to become even more restrictive (Agee, in press (a)), in terms of both area burned and emissions per unit area burned (Sandberg 1987). In the future, programs to expand the natural role of fire in wilderness may be the most significant trend. Most of the park and wilderness fire programs are new and have not dealt with a major fire, as such events are infrequent. The 900,000 acre (385,000 ha) fire episode in Yellowstone in 1988 may generate some changes in current policy towards more prescribed burning rather than the use of natural ignitions to accomplish natural area objectives. Support by environmental groups for wilderness fire may waver if smoke or flames from large fires penetrate urban or rural residential areas, which are already becoming sensitive to wood smoke from stoves (Koenig and others 1988). Without forest industry, residential, or environmental group support, wilderness fire policies may evolve to more restrictive and prescriptive rules.

Moderate Severity Fire Regimes

In moderate fire regimes, where fire control is exercised, the average fire may be more severe than in the past, since the only fires that spread do so under severe burning conditions.

The buildup of fuel hazards in these areas occasionally results in large, uncontrollable fires, such as the southern Oregon fires of 1987. This overwhelming of fire control capability has led to a wider range of fire severity and probably more landscape diversity than is usual for smaller fires, where control is possible as soon as severe fire weather ceases.

The moderate fire severity regimes provide the most difficult management problems. The threat of air pollution from hazard reduction will be balanced against the threat of wildfire if hazard reduction is not undertaken. Potential for fuel manipulation through underburning is moderate to low, because of generally narrow prescription windows. Use of prescribed fires is hampered both by low rates of spread under damp conditions and by potentially high rates of spread and intensity under dry conditions.

The large wildfire years, such as 1987 and 1988 in the West, will encourage innovative fuel treatments, but in several years' time the threat of such fires will have dimmed in the public eye, while anxiety about potential prescribed fire control and smoke problems will be freshly renewed each season.

Low Severity Fire Regimes

In low severity fire regimes, forests once subjected to frequent, low severity fires now have less frequent but higher severity fires, such as occurred in the central Sierra Nevada in 1987 and 1988. A computer simulation of historical fire incidence and behavior (van Wagtendonk 1985; fig. 2A) indicates that frequent fires kept potential energy at low levels on the forest floor, whereas with successful fire exclusion potential energy increases and remains high over time. Wildfire occurrence under the latter conditions results in high intensity fires. Prescribed fires (fig. 2B) can be used to reduce this potential energy slowly back to lower, safer levels. In the Pacific Northwest pine-larch-fir type, understory burning is now being implemented on more than 9,000 acres (3600 ha) per year on National Forests of that region (Kilgore and Curtis 1987), but this area is only 0.7 percent of the type. The trend is promising but insufficient at present to combat fuel hazard buildups.

Unfortunately, the 80 years of fuel buildups we have allowed is analogous to deficit spending. The initial political decision to implement a policy of total fire suppression was justified by fire protection costs of the day, which were relatively low in the sparse fuel conditions of those forests. Today's accumulation of fuel can be translated into potential air pollution to be created if it is burned. Undoubtedly, this issue, like those of the past, will be resolved by a social decision on which is the greater threat: wildfire or air pollution.

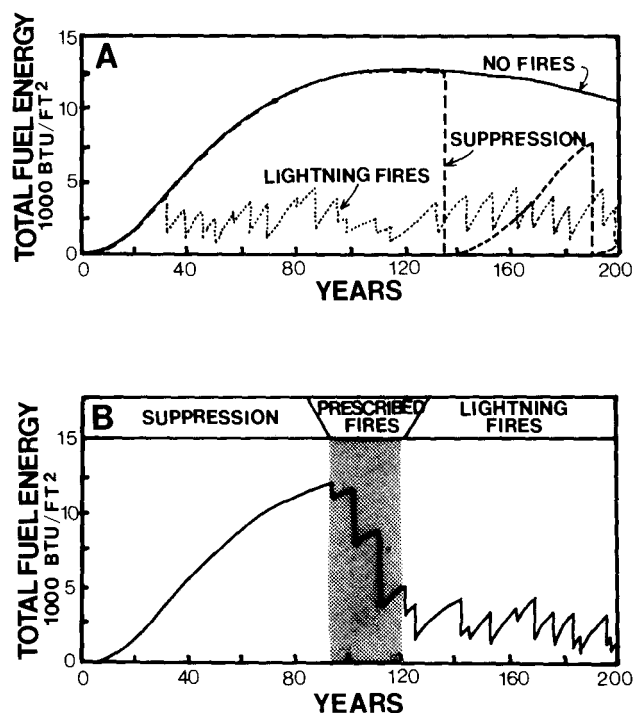


Figure 2---Computer simulation of fuel energy buildup and reduction with FYRCYCL computer program. A: Total fuel energy accumulation under three fire scenarios: Lightning Fires, where the natural role of fire is dominant, No Fires, where all fire is successfully suppressed, and Suppression, where only fires with crown fire potential escape control. B: Management of fuel energy through prescribed fire during the middle period (shaded area) after which lightning fires are allowed to burn (van Wagtendonk 1985). Continuation of prescribed fires beyond the shaded period is another option.

Balancing the Threats

My prognosis is that air pollution will be perceived as a greater threat than wildfire hazard in the coming decade for two reasons: (1) institutions are better organized to deal with air quality, and (2) prescribed fire that creates pollution is more likely to affect more people more often than wildfire, albeit in different ways. Air quality regulatory agencies are well established, and have as goals reduction of air pollution from managed activities. Land management agencies have a less focused, broader mandate, including the balancing of smoke impacts from wild and prescribed fire (assuming that to some extent use of prescribed fire can reduce wildfire smoke occurrence). As well as being quantitatively difficult to balance, control and use of fire are often funded differently. Fuel treatment costs are billed to operating funds, while savings in wildfire suppression costs from

such treatment are not counted as a benefit (e.g., Agee 1984), making treatment difficult to justify operationally.

As rural development creates a constituency for reduction of wildfire hazard for structural protection, the air pollution threat may be overwhelmed by the wildfire threat. However, because prescribed underburning will be creating smoke annually, contrasted to less frequent wildfire disasters, fuel treatment may depend on recurring disasters in order to remain socially acceptable. Even in communities recently affected by wildfire, disaster creates complacency: a perception that either lightning doesn't strike twice (Burton and Kates 1964) or that future vulnerability to fire is reduced by the recent disaster (Gardner and others 1987). Recognition of the social factors driving fire policy and the need for education will help land management professionals understand and influence future policy.

REFERENCES

- Agee, James K. 1984. Cost-effective fire management in national parks. In: Lotan, J.E., and others, eds. Proceedings, Symposium and Workshop on Wilderness Fire. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-182. Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 193-198.
- Agee, James K. A history of fire and slash burning in western Oregon and Washington. In: The Burning Decision: A Regional Symposium on Slash. Seattle, WA: Univ. Washington College of Forest Resources. (in press, a).
- Agee, James K. The historical role of fire in Pacific Northwest forests. Chapter 3 In: Walstad, J. and others, eds. Prescribed fire in Pacific Northwest forests. Corvallis, OR: Oregon State Univ. Press. (in press, b).
- Allen, E.T. 1911. Resume of forest fire legislation governing the North Pacific States. In: Third Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 52-53.
- Allen, E.T. 1912. Burning slash is a question of increasing importance to loggers. In: Fourth Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 39-40.
- Allen, E.T. 1925. A discussion of fires and logged off lands. In: Sixteenth Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 26-27.
- Biswell, H.H.; Schultz, A.M.; Launchbaugh, J.L. 1955. Brush control in ponderosa pine. California Agriculture 9(1): 3, 14.
- Biswell, Harold H.; Kallander, Harry R.; Komarek, Roy; and others. 1973. Ponderosa fire management. Misc. Pub. 2. Tallahassee, FL: Tall Timbers Res. Sta. 49p.
- Boerker, Richard H. 1912. Light burning versus forest management in northern California. Forestry Quarterly 10(2): 184-194.
- Bork, Joyce L. 1985. Fire history in three vegetation types on the east side of the Oregon Cascades. Corvallis, OR: Oregon State Univ.; 94 p. Dissertation.
- Bruce, Donald. 1923. Light burning: report of the California Forestry Committee. Journal of Forestry 21(2): 129-130.
- Burton, Ian; Cates, Robert W. 1964. The perception of natural hazards in resources management. Natural Resources Journal 3(3): 412-441.
- Clar, C. Raymond. 1969a. Evolution of California's wildland fire protection system. Sacramento, CA: Division of Forestry, Department of Conservation; 35 p.
- Clar, C. Raymond. 1969b. California government and forestry II: during the Young and Rolph administrations. Sacramento, CA: Division of Forestry, Department of Conservation; 319 p.
- Cramer, Owen P., ed. 1974. Environmental effects of forest residues management in the Pacific Northwest: a state-of-knowledge compendium. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-24. Portland, OR: Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; (various pagination).
- Deeming, John. Effects of prescribed fire on wildfire hazard considerations. Chapter 3 In: Walstad, J. and others, eds. Prescribed fire in Pacific Northwest forests. Corvallis, OR: Oregon State Univ. Press. (in press).
- Dell, John D. 1969. Lengthening the slash burning season in the Douglas-fir region. Northwest Forest Fire Council 1969: 52-58.
- Elliott, F.A. 1911. Mr. Elliott's address. In: Proceedings, Western Forestry and Conservation Association 1911. Portland, OR; 9-10.
- Fahnestock, George R.; Agee, James K. 1983. Biomass consumption and smoke production by prehistoric and modern forest fires in western Washington. Journal of Forestry 81(10): 653-657.
- Gardner, Philip D.; Cortner, Hanna J.; Widaman, Keith. 1987. The risk perceptions and policy response towards wildland fire hazards by urban home-owners. Landscape and Urban Planning 14(2): 163-172.
- Graves, Henry T. 1920. The torch in the timber. Sunset 44(4): 37-40, 80-82.
- Hagenstein, William. 1951. What should be the State responsibility on unburned restocked areas? In: Western Forestry and Conservation Association. 42nd Annual Meeting; 42-43.
- Hemstrom, Miles A.; Franklin, Jerry F. 1982. Fire and other disturbances of the forests in Mount Rainier National Park. Quaternary Research 18(1): 32-51.
- Hofmann, Julius V. 1922. Discussion of Mr. Joy's comments. In: Thirteenth Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 31-32.

- Hofmann, Julius V. 1924. Natural regeneration of Douglas-fir in the Pacific Northwest. Bull. 1200. U.S. Department of Agriculture; 62p.
- Hoxie, George L. 1910. How fire helps forestry. *Sunset* 25(7): 145-151.
- Isaac, Leo A. 1930. Seedling survival on burned and unburned surfaces. *Journal of Forestry* 28(4): 569-571.
- Isaac, Leo A.; Hopkins, Howard G. 1937. The forest soil of the Douglas-fir region, and changes wrought upon it by logging and slash burning. *Ecology* 18(2): 264-279.
- Joy, George C. 1922. Forest fire prevention in the camps. In: Thirteenth Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 30-31.
- Kilgore, Bruce M. 1976. Fire management in the National Parks: an overview. *Proc. Tall Timbers Fire Ecol. Conf.* 14: 45-57.
- Kilgore, Bruce M.; Curtis, George A. 1987. Guide to understory burning in ponderosa pine-larch-fir forests in the Intermountain West. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-233. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Research Station. Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 39 p.
- Koenig, Jane Q.; Covert, David S.; Larson, Timothy V.; and others. 1988. Wood smoke: health effects and legislation. *The Northwest Environmental Journal* 4(1): 41-54.
- Lamb, Frank H. 1925. To burn, or not to burn. In: Sixteenth Annual Session, Pacific Logging Congress. Portland, OR; 23-24.
- Lee, Robert G. 1977. Institutional change and fire management. In: Mooney, H.A.; Conrad, C.E., eds. *Proceedings of the symposium on the environmental consequences of fire and fuel management in Mediterranean ecosystems*. Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-3. Washington, D.C. Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 202-214.
- Leopold, A.S.; Cain, S.A.; Cottam, C.M.; and others. 1963. Study of wildlife problems in national parks: wildlife management in the national parks. *Transactions of the North American Wildlife and Natural Resources Conference* 28: 28-45.
- Martin, Robert E. 1982. Fire history and its role in succession. In: Means, Joseph E., ed. *Forest succession and stand development research in the Northwest*. Corvallis, OR: Forest Research Laboratory, Oregon State Univ.; 92-99.
- McArdle, Robert E. 1930. Effect of fire on Douglas-fir slash. *Journal of Forestry* 28(4): 568-569.
- McDaniels, E.H. 1939. The Yacolt fire. Portland, OR. Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. Mimeo. 3 p.
- Means, Joseph E. 1982. Developmental history of dry coniferous forests in the central western Cascade Range of Oregon. In: Means, Joseph E., ed. *Forest succession and stand development research in the Northwest*. Corvallis, OR: Forest Research Laboratory, Oregon State Univ.; 142-158.
- Morrison, Peter H.; Swanson, Frederick J. Fire history in two forest ecosystems of the central western Cascades of Oregon. Gen. Tech. Rep. PNW-000. Portland, OR: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; Pacific Northwest Research Station. (in press).
- Munger, Thornton T. 1917. Western yellow pine in Oregon. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Agriculture Bull. 418; 48p.
- Munger, Thornton T.; Matthews, Donald N. 1939. Flashes from "Slash disposal and forest management after clear cutting in the Douglas fir region". Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Expt. Sta. Forest Res. Notes 27. Portland, OR: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 1-3.
- Pickford, S.D.; Fahnestock, G.R.; Ottmar, R. 1980. Weather, fuels, and lightning fires in Olympic National Park. *Northwest Science* 54(2): 92-105.
- Pitcher, Donald L. 1987. Fire history and age structure in red fir forests of Sequoia National Park, California. *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 17(7): 582-587.
- Pratt, M.B. 1911. Results of "light burning" near Nevada City, California. *Forestry Quarterly* 9(3): 420-422.
- Pyne, Stephen J. 1982. *Fire in America: a cultural history of wildland and rural fire*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton Univ. Press; 654p.
- Sandberg, David V. 1987. Prescribed fire versus air quality in 2000 in the Pacific Northwest. In: Davis, James B.; Martin, Robert E., eds. *Proceedings of the Symposium on Wildland Fire 2000*. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 92-95.
- Show, Stuart B. 1920. Forest fire protection in California. *Timberman* 21(3): 88-90.
- Show, S.B.; Kotok, E.I. 1924. The role of fire in the California pine forest. Washington, D.C.: U.S. Department of Agriculture Bull. 1294; 80p.
- Steen, Harold. 1976. *The U.S. Forest Service: a history*. Seattle, WA: University of Washington Press. 356 p.
- van Wagtendonk, Jan W. 1985. Fire suppression effects on fuels and succession in short-fire-interval wilderness ecosystems. In: Lotan, J.E., and others, eds. *Proceedings-symposium and workshop on wilderness fire*. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-182. Ogden, UT: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 119-126.
- Weaver, Harold. 1943. Fire as an ecological and silvicultural factor in the ponderosa pine region of the Pacific slope. *Journal of Forestry* 41(1): 7-15.
- White, Stewart Edward. 1920. Woodsman, spare those trees! *Sunset* 44(3): 115.
- Wilkes, C. 1844. *Narrative of the United States expedition during the years 1838, 1839, 1840, 1841, 1842*. Vol. 5. Philadelphia, PA: Lea and Blanchard; 558p.

Use of Prescribed Fire to Reduce Wildfire Potential¹

Robert E. Martin, J. Boone Kauffman, and Joan D. Landsberg²

Abstract: Fires were a part of our wildlands prehistorically. Prescribed burning reduces fire hazard and potential fire behavior primarily by reducing fuel quantity and continuity. Fuel continuity should be considered on the micro scale within stands, the mid-scale among, and the macro-scale among watersheds or entire forests. Prescribed fire is only one of the tools which can be used to reduce fire hazard, but it can be effective at all scales.

Fire has been a part of many ecosystems, playing a large role in shaping them and leading to the adaptations of many plants and animals to different fire regimes. Without fires, many of the vegetative types and the associated fauna have changed drastically. The type may have become susceptible to changes from biotic or abiotic agents, and may lose its desirable characteristics for many years.

Removal of fire from many of our forest and range types has led to change in species composition and accumulation of excessive biomass; it has set the stage for high-intensity, high-fuel-consumption, stand-removal fires. The purpose of this paper is to discuss the use of prescribed fire to reduce the potential for such fires.

It should be noted that prescribed fires generally also accomplish other land management goals. These include maintenance of stand composition, increase in water quantity and quality, reduction of insect or disease damage,

and increase in esthetic and recreation value. Few prescribed fires could accomplish all of these objectives, but most, when well planned and executed, could accomplish several of them. Today, with our limited operating dollars, multi-objective prescribed fires are the rule rather than the exception.

Prescribed fire is only one way to reduce wildfire potential. Fuels management, which is that branch of fire management dealing with the fuels, begins with vegetation management. Thus, the right vegetation in the right place is the first step in reducing wildfire potential. Biological, chemical, manual, and mechanical means may be used in conjunction with fire to modify fuels. The total job of managing fuels - fuels management - is the art or practice of controlling the flammability and resistance to control of wildland fuels through the means described above in support of land management objectives (Lyon 1984).

Reduction of wildfire potential is best described in terms of modifying potential fire behavior. In turn, fire behavior is influenced by the three elements of the fire behavior triangle-- fuels, weather, and topography. Of the three, the only one we can easily and directly affect is fuel, the biomass, or more specifically, the phytomass. We will first describe the basic properties of fuels which are important to fire behavior and then look at what prescribed fires can do to fuels, and how this reduces the potential for large wildfires and increases our ability to control them.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988. Sacramento, CA.

²Professor of Forestry, University of California, Berkeley, CA; Assistant Professor of Range Science, Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR; Research Chemist, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Bend, OR.

BASIC CHARACTERISTICS OF FUELS

Fuels can be described by six basic characteristics, and these characteristics (Martin and others 1979) are chemistry, particle and density, moisture content, compactness, continuity, and quantity. Only the last two, continuity and quantity, are discussed in this paper, as they are most affected by prescribed burning.

Continuity

Continuity expresses the degree or extent of continuous distribution of fuel particles in a fuel bed (or over the landscape). The parentheses indicate a broader concept of the definition, which I am adding. Continuity affects a fire's ability to sustain combustion and spread (Lyon 1984).

Continuity is important both horizontally and vertically. Surface fires need horizontal continuity to spread unless they can spot by embers dropped ahead of the fire into other fuels. Vertical continuity allows fire to move upward, most notably into the crowns of tall shrubs or trees. When fire moves into tree crowns, spotting distance for embers increases greatly, and fires become more uncontrollable. When one or a few tree crowns burn, we often refer to the phenomenon as torching, whereas when the fire continues to spread in the crowns, we would call it a crown fire.

As compared to other characteristics of fuels, continuity is difficult to measure in ways meaningful to fire spread. In large measure, this is because gaps in fuels have more or less significance depending on the nature of the fire.

Quantity

The amount of fuel per unit of area is an obvious characteristic of fuels in influencing fire behavior. Quantity is generally expressed in tons per hectare or tons per acre, but is also given in units of kilograms per square meter or pounds per square foot. The quantity of fuel must also express whether the fuel is live or dead, herbaceous or woody, and its size class.

REDUCTION OF WILDFIRE POTENTIAL

Prescribed fire affects fire potential primarily by modifying the continuity and quantity of fuels. These characteristics may be changed on a microscale within stands, on a midscale among stands, or on a macroscale throughout an entire forest or watershed.

Both horizontal and vertical continuity are reduced for a period after a burn. The horizontal continuity returns more rapidly, as trees put down more needles and branches. However,

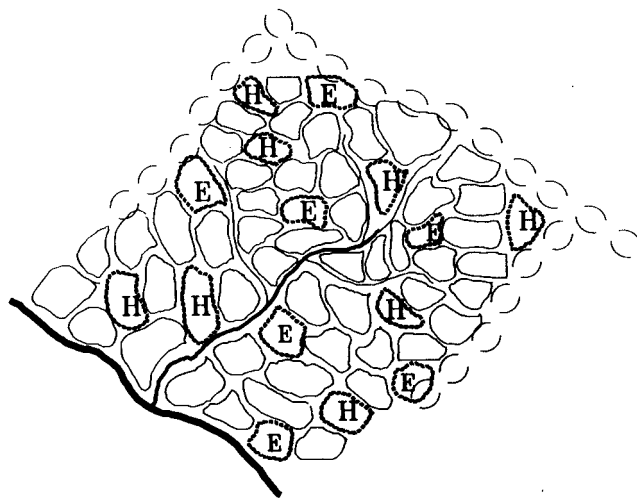


Figure 1.- The pattern of arrangement of high and extreme fire hazard and resistance to control among units of low and medium hazard is the key to reducing wildfire potential at the midscale.

vertical continuity is interrupted for a long period of time, sometimes until the end of stand rotation. Shrubs and understory trees may tend to restore vertical continuity, but the pruning effect of fire on the lower branches of trees will permanently move the crown fuels higher and thus less reachable by surface fires.

Continuity of fuels on a larger scale is also reduced. Within a small drainage, areas of high or extreme fire hazard may be isolated by burning of intervening stands. Seedling and sapling stands generally have crowns which are close to the surface and contiguous with surface fuels. Further, the young stands may be too sensitive to fire to use prescribed burning to reduce fuels there. It would then be important to isolate these stands in such a way as to reduce the potential for wildfire to spread from one to the other (fig. 1).

In fighting a fire, the decision may be not to fight the fire within the high or extreme hazard area but to keep it from spreading into adjacent units. Since only about 20 percent of a stand's rotation time is in the seedling and sapling stage, only about the same percentage of the total forest area would be in this stage. The individual units could be isolated, effectively reducing continuity on the midscale.

Fuel continuity can also be reduced on the macroscale by isolating various

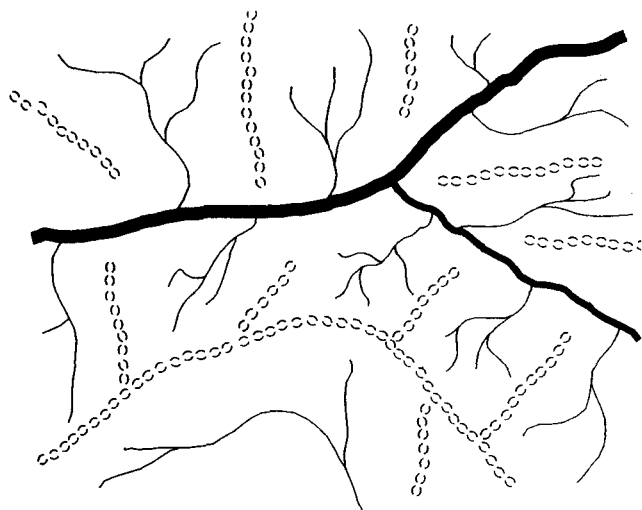


Figure 2.- Reducing continuity on the macroscale can be important in preventing fire spread from watershed to watershed or across a large segment of a forest.

parts of a forest or range by fuel modification areas. I don't use the term fuelbreaks here because these are defined very specifically and are often not effective in stopping high intensity headfires. Fuelbreaks, that is, fuel modification areas 100 to 300 feet wide, may be the beginning of effective fuel modification areas by serving, for example, as the backdrop against which prescribed burning can be done.

Modifying of fuel continuity on the macroscale would use terrain features and roads to isolate drainages from one another (fig. 2). Fuel modification areas follow ridges and streams as well as roads or other human artifacts. The fuels along ridges may already be reduced by rock outcrops or high elevation meadows. Where forests are present, the ridges may represent the lowest quality sites, so reduction in timber growth there to protect the forest would have the least effect on total production.

Areas along streams may be more moist or contain less flammable vegetation, providing a first step in developing a fuel modification area. Where stream bottoms are broad and in meadows or areas dominated by low flammability species, very little additional work may be needed.

In planning prescribed fires, it should be pointed out that reducing fuel continuity on the mid- and macroscale

may not be effective if fuel continuity and quantity are not reduced within stands, as exemplified in the 1987 fire experience. Extreme fire weather and long distance spotting combine to overwhelm fire fighting organizations unless fuel modification has been done within individual stands.

EXAMPLES OF EFFECTS OF PRESCRIBED FIRE ON WILDFIRE POTENTIAL

To illustrate how prescribed fire reduces wildfire potential within stands primarily through reducing fuel continuity and quantity, I'll use prescribed fire sites in Washington, Oregon, and California (fig. 3). The sites vary considerably from each other. However, wildfires occurred in the same or similar stands, giving us the opportunity to compare wildfire behavior in unburned and burned stands. Additional replication is needed before this case study is extrapolated to other locales, although many fire managers and researchers have noted similar fire potential reduction by prescribed fire.

The stands have a wide range of characteristics and histories (Table 1). The Coyote Creek plots were burned three times by Harold Weaver, starting with thickets of pine seedlings (Weaver 1957). The results of his thinning with fire resulted in stands similar to those represented by the hand-thinned stands on the Kelsey and Lava Butte sites, which were burned in the late 1970's. The Lookout and Walker Mountain sites are older pine stands, and the Challenge and Blodgett sites are mixed conifer stands.

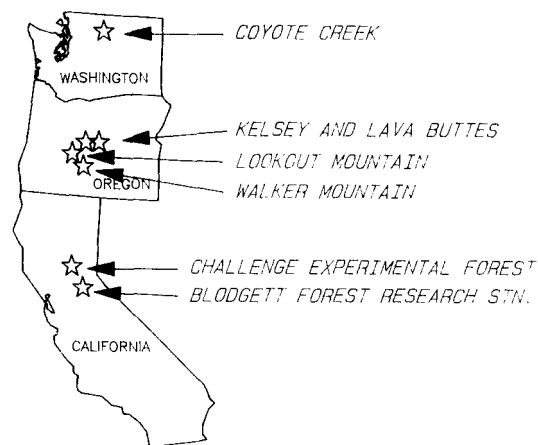


Figure 3.- Units used as examples for reduction of fire potential by prescribed burning are from Washington, Oregon, and California.

Table 1--Characteristics of the sites from which the effects of prescribed burning on wildfire potential were estimated.

Site Feature	Site				
	Coyote Creek	Kelsey Butte	Lava Butte	Lookout/Walker	Challenge/Blodgett
Type	Ponderosa pine Shrub Pine Grass	Ponderosa pine <i>Ceanothus velutinus</i> <i>Arctostaphylos patula</i>	Ponderosa pine <i>Purshia tridentata</i>	Ponderosa pine <i>Ceanothus velutinus</i> Hardwood Grass	Mixed conifer Hardwood <i>Ceanothus integerrimus</i> <i>Arctostaphylos patula</i>
Locale	N.C.WN	C. OR	C. OR	C. OR	N. CA
Site Quality	Low 3 & 4	Low 3 & 4	Low 3 & 4	Medium 2	High 1
Age	60	70	70	150	65
Burned	1942-67	1978	1979	1976-82	1983-84

The differences between the stands point up the possibilities for multiple-fire prescribed burn programs that could reduce hazard and prevent potentially dangerous wildfires. Units are discussed in order from north to south.

Coyote Creek

This area was burned in 1942, 1954, and 1967 by Harold Weaver of the Bureau of Indian Affairs. The burn and control plots were pine thickets, and for the first burn were all less than 5 feet high, as indicated in photographs. Today, ponderosa pine on the burn plots ranges in diameter from 4 to 8 inches, whereas the unburned plots remain as stagnated thickets with stems from about 1 to 4 inches in diameter.

The burned plots have an effective break in vertical continuity with an understory of pinegrass and some shrubs, mostly a wild rose. Wildfires under moderate conditions would do no damage in the stand, and under extreme conditions would do little damage and be easy to control. In the unburned plots, wildfire under any conditions would torch almost all the crowns and present control and spotting problems. The entire stand would be destroyed. In addition to the benefits to tree growth and fire management, the burned stands provide grazing not available in the unburned stands.

The burned stands need further thinning by hand to obtain more ideal spacing and to remove those trees which were scarred during the burning operations.

Kelsey Butte

These plots were burned only once under very moderate conditions because of the high fuel loads, the shrub understory, and the low crowns. The stands had been thinned 8 to 10 years before burning, and the thinning slash persisted in the dry Central Oregon climate. The first burn was designed to reduce the fine fuels and to reduce the vertical fuel continuity, with the idea that the second and third burns would be needed to make the stands reasonably firesafe.

A wildfire ran into the stands before followup burns could be conducted. In the unburned stands, the wildfire torched out most trees and continued to move unchecked. In the burned stands, the fire dropped to the ground with only an occasional tree torching out. The burned plots were used to control one flank of the fire, and a small percentage of the trees survived.

Increment borings of burned and unburned stands indicated no effects on growth from the prescribed burns.

Lava Butte

The Lava Butte plots were burned to study the effects of prescribed burning on nutrients, understory vegetation, and ponderosa pine growth (Landsberg and others 1984). About half were burned for high fuel consumption, removing 80 percent or more of the down and dead fuels and of the litter (01) and duff (02 and 03 layers). The moderate fuel consumption burns consumed around half the fuels, although the results were variable.

Based on observed fire behavior in other areas, the high fuel consumption units could probably survive a wildfire under extreme conditions with moderate damage and almost no torching of trees. Under moderate conditions a wildfire would have little effect on the stand. In contrast, the moderate consumption units would involve some torching and fairly high crown scorch under extreme wildfire conditions, but only moderate damage would occur under moderate wildfire conditions. The unburned controls would be mostly destroyed under both moderate and extreme wildfire conditions, and with many trees torching, spotting, and presenting difficult control problems.

The stands which received moderate and high fuel consumption prescribed burning treatments demonstrated 4 and 20 percent growth reductions in comparison to the unburned control in the first 4 years following burning (Landsberg and others 1984). The duration of the growth differentials is unknown.

Lookout and Walker Mountains

These sites are quite similar and will be covered together. They are older stands on sites which are quite good for Central Oregon ponderosa pine. They are even-aged, probably originating after wildfire. Since they are better sites and higher in elevation, Indian and lightning fires occurred less frequently than on the lower sites, thus allowing for a greater probability of fuel accumulation and of stand-replacement fires.

Fuels reduction by all prescribed burns reduced fuel loads and continuities to the extent that wildfires would do low to moderate damage, depending on conditions, and present only moderate resistance to control. Without prescribed burning, wildfires under moderate conditions

would scorch greater than 50 to 100 percent of the crowns of most trees but present only moderate resistance to control. Under extreme wildfire conditions, crown scorch would be high in all cases, and perhaps up to one-third of the crowns would torch, making control problems more difficult.

Blodgett and Challenge Sites

These are high quality sites, and even though there are differences between them, they are similar in fuel characteristics. Prescribed burning was conducted once or twice to reduce stored shrub seed in the soil and duff and to kill established shrubs and hardwoods, with the aim of reducing competition with a new stand (Kauffman 1987, Kauffman and Martin 1987). The first burns were designed to accomplish either moderate or high duff consumption, whereas the second burns were designed for high fuel consumption.

The stands are of mixed age, and all first burns reduced wildfire potential. On the moderate consumption burn sites, wildfires would be more likely to do stand damage and to torch out crowns with the attendant spotting. High consumption burns and the second burns would lead to successively less wildfire damage and potential fire behavior. In contrast, potential fire behavior on the unburned control would lead to extensive torching and spotting and thus high resistance to control. The 1987 wildfires in California are illustrative of the difficulty in controlling fires in this type.

REFERENCES

- Kauffman, J. Boone. 1987. The ecological response of the shrub component to prescribed burning in mixed conifer ecosystems. Berkeley: Univ. of California; 235 p. Dissertation.
- Kauffman, J. Boone; Martin, Robert E. 1987. Effects of fire and fire suppression on mortality and mode of reproduction of California black oak (*Quercus kelloggii* Newb.). In Plumb, Timothy B., and Pillsbury, Norman H., Technical Coordinators. Proceedings, 1986 Multiple-use management of California's hardwood resource symposium; 1986 November 12-14; San Luis Obispo, CA. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-100. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service,

U.S. Department of Agriculture;
122-126.

DC: Forest Service, U.S. Department
of Agriculture; 250 p.

Landsberg, J. D.; Cochran, P. H.; Finck,
M. M.; Martin, R.E. 1984. Foliar
nitrogen content and tree growth
after prescribed fire in ponderosa
pine. Res. Note PNW-412. Portland,
CA: Pacific Northwest Forest and
Range Experiment Station, Forest
Service, U.S. Department of
Agriculture; 15 p.

Lyon, T. Bentley. 1984. Wildland fire
management terminology. Washington,

Martin, Robert E.; Anderson, Hal E.;
Boyer, William D.; Dieterich, John
H.; Hirsch, Stanley N.; Johnson,
Von J.; McNab, W. Henry. 1979.
Effects of fire on fuels. Gen.
Tech. Rep. WO-13. Washington, DC:
Forest Service, U.S. Department of
Agriculture; 64 p.

Weaver, Harold. 1957. Effects of
prescribed burning in ponderosa
pine. Journal of Forestry
55(2):133-138.

The Effects of Prescribed Burning on Fire Hazard in the Chaparral: Toward a New Conceptual Synthesis¹

Anthony T. Dunn²

Abstract: Prescribed burning for fire hazard reduction in the chaparral is predicated on the belief that young fuels (20 years old and less) are highly resistant to burning. To test this belief, a data base search of large fires in San Diego County between 1940 and 1985 was conducted to locate reburns of young chaparral fuels greater than 1000 acres (400 ha) in extent. Of the 147 fires examined, 17 (11.6 percent) contained at least one area of young fuels that had reburned. The majority of the reburns occurred under severe weather conditions. The finding that young fuels do not necessarily inhibit the spread of large wildfires may have a potentially significant impact on future fuel management planning and prescribed burning policy.

Prescribed burning has become an accepted, economical, and widely used management tool for the reduction of fire hazard. First practiced extensively in the southern pine forests, use of prescribed burning spread to the pine forests of California where it was found to be effective in reducing heavy fuel loading (Biswell 1977). Beginning in the 1940's, the California Department of Forestry (CDF) began applying prescribed burning to the chaparral with the hope of reducing the occurrence of conflagration fires. In the 1970's the U.S. Forest Service (USFS) joined the CDF with its own chaparral prescribed burning program.

Despite the clear success of prescribed burning in forest communities, there is a growing concern among conservationists, researchers, and managers that the practice is not as

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Chaparral Management Consultants, San Luis Obispo, Calif.

effective in chaparral and does not always provide the advertised benefit of reducing fire hazard (Harrell and others 1987). This paper reexamines (from a fire history viewpoint) the major premise upon which prescribed burning policy in the chaparral is based, and provides information that may be helpful in evaluating the effects of prescribed burning on the chaparral and the role it should play in fire management.

CONCEPTUAL BASIS OF CURRENT POLICIES

Essentially, current policies governing prescribed burning for fire hazard reduction in chaparral can be traced back to a single major premise: that young fuels "are among the least flammable of all native vegetation phases" (State of California 1981). This premise is based on the belief that young chaparral fuels (20 years old and less) have lower fuel loadings and lower levels of dead fuels than older stands. Particularly important to prescribed burning policy is the role that dead fuels play in chaparral flammability. Live fuels are much less flammable than dead fuels, and without a large dead fuel component, chaparral is believed to be extremely resistant to burning (Green 1981). As the chaparral ages, it is assumed to accumulate approximately 1 percent of dead fuels (as a proportion of total biomass) per year (Green 1981, Rothermel and Philpot 1973).

Accordingly, the uniform stands of old brush that are believed to have arisen with the advent of fire suppression, with their high levels of extremely flammable dead fuels, are understood to represent an unnatural and highly flammable community that will generate ever larger and more catastrophic wildfires (Dodge 1972, Minnich 1983). Burning these stands is intended to restore the "natural" environment of frequent small fires and gives rise to a mosaic of fuel ages that inhibits the spread of large fires (Minnich 1983, Philpot 1974, Philpot 1977).

However, new research is beginning to challenge these widely held views. Work conducted at the USDA Forest Service Forest Fire Laboratory in Riverside, Calif. has demonstrated that live chaparral fuels are capable of supporting a propagating flame in the absence of any dead fuel component (Cohen and Bradshaw 1986). Demographic studies of older chaparral fuels have shown that these stands, far from being "decadent" or

"senescent," are often quite healthy and vigorous (Montegierd-Loyba and Keeley 1986). Preliminary measurement of the characteristics of older chaparral fuels suggests that levels of dead fuels are not directly related to age (Anderson and others, 1987), and may not show significant changes over extended periods of time (fig. 1)

FIRES IN YOUNG FUELS: A FIRE HISTORY PERSPECTIVE

If young fuels are indeed highly resistant to burning, then instances where large acreages of young fuels burn should be rare. In order to test this belief, a data base search of large fires in San Diego County was conducted using original fire maps compiled by Dunn (1987). In addition, relevant examples of fires occurring outside of San Diego County have been included in the discussion. For the purpose of this paper, "large fires" are those 300 acres (120 ha) and greater. Though these fires account for only about 1 percent of all wildfires, they consume about 70 percent of the acreage burned (State of California 1983, 1984).

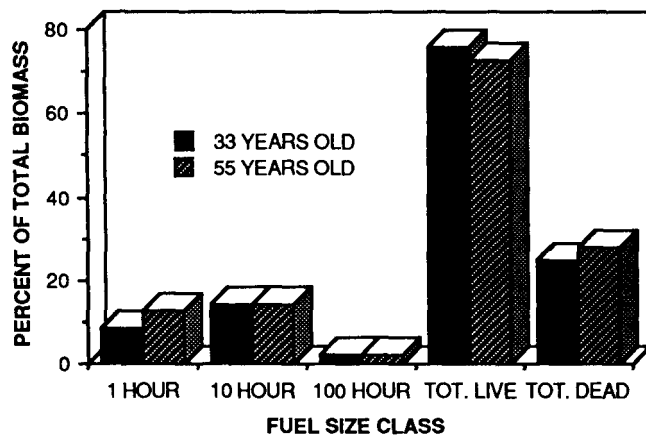


Figure 1--Fuel characteristics of chamise (*Adenostema fasciculatum*) at the North Mountain Experimental Forest. Data for 33-year-old fuels (sampled 1964-65) from Countryman and Philpot (1970); data for 55-year-old fuels (sampled 1986) on file, Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Riverside, Calif.

Study Location and Methods

The nondesert area of San Diego County covers approximately 1,574,000 acres (629,600 ha), not including the 'nearly 500,000 acres (200,000 ha) of urban and agricultural areas within the county. The climate of the area is typically Mediterranean, with cool, wet winters and extended summer drought. Elevations range from sea level to over 6500 feet (1980 m), with precipitation levels generally following elevation; from 10 inches (250 mm) on the coast to over 40 inches (1000 mm) in the Palomar Mountains (Krausmann 1981). Vegetation varies greatly over short distances, but generally follows rainfall and temperature gradients, with coastal scrub on the coastal mesas, chamise and mixed chaparral in the foothills and backcountry areas, oak woodland in valleys and at higher elevations, and mixed conifer forests above about 5000 feet (1500 m) (Beauchamp 1986). Chaparral associations are far and away the most prevalent type of vegetation, covering nearly a million acres (400,000 ha).

Original fire reports and perimeter maps were collected for all large fires in San Diego County for the period of 1910-85. Since the vast majority of backcountry areas in the county fall under either USFS or CDF protection, these agencies were the primary sources of fire history information. Copies of the original fire reports for the Cleveland National Forest were obtained from the Emergency Command Center in El Cajon. Original fire reports kept by the CDF were obtained both from the CDF Fire Prevention Office in Sacramento and from the Monte Vista Ranger Unit in El Cajon. Aerial photos were also used in a number of instances to either provide maps of fires for which none could be found or to confirm the extent of fires where the existing maps were of questionable quality. In all, 548 verifiable large fires were identified in San Diego County between 1910 and 1985, for a total of 1,751,231 acres (700,492 ha) consumed in all fuel types.

The data base search was set up to locate reburns of young chaparral fuels using the following criteria: (1) reburns must have occurred no earlier than 1940; (2) reburned areas must be 1000 acres (400 ha) or larger; (3) the period between

fires must be 20 years or less; and (4) fuel types must be primarily chaparral.³

The criteria for reburns was set at 1000 acres (400 ha) in order to minimize the potential effect of poorly defined fire perimeters. There were numerous instances of smaller reburned areas, including fires of 300-999 acres (120-400 ha) occurring entirely within the perimeters of larger fires; these were not included in the analysis. Only fires from 1940 onward were included in the search,

³Vegetation type data was obtained from USDA Forest Service (1934, 1969) and from unpublished 1934 Vegetation Type Map survey field maps on file at the Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Berkeley, Calif.

because older fire maps were often less reliable than those after 1940. The extent of one fire included in the search (the 1970 Laguna fire) was verified by large-scale aerial photographs taken shortly after the fire.⁴ Areas consumed by reburns were calculated using a Tectronix digitizer.

Study Results and Discussion

Since the lower limit for area reburned was defined as 1000 acres (400 ha), only fires of that extent and larger were included in the search. In the period of 1940-85 there were 147 fires in

⁴Photographs on file, San Diego County Department of Public Works, Survey Records Division, San Diego, Calif.

Table 1.--Reburns of young chaparral fuels in San Diego County. Fuel types are as follows: 1) chamise chaparral; 2) mixed chaparral; 3) oak woodland; 4) coastal scrub.

FIRE NAME	DATE	TOTAL		ACREAGE (HA)		FUEL AGE	FUEL TYPE ¹	GENERAL WEATHER ²
		ACREAGE (HA)		REBURNED				
Hauser Mt.	7/12/1940	7000	(2800)	1820	(728)	15	1,2	SW Flow
El Cajon Mt.	7/7/1942	2963	(1185)	2030	(810)	13	1,4	SW Flow
West Hauser	8/22/1942	4100	(1640)	1540	(615)	17	1,2	SW Flow
Potrero	9/22/1943	3200	(1280)	1760	(700)	15	1	?
Miner	8/27/1944	³ 43520	(17410)	23400	(9360)	16	1,2	SW Flow?
Morales	10/24/1945	5500	(2200)	3950	(1580)	16	1,3	Santa Ana
Harper	7/1/1947	17390	(6960)	1180	(470)	6	2	SW Flow?
Glenclyff	9/3/1948	1630	(650)	1260	(500)	20	1	?
Conejos	8/16/1950	63406	(25360)	4140	(1655)	16	1	SW Flow?
Bronco Flats	10/4/1953	9250	(3700)	1540	(615)	5	2	Santa Ana
Bronco Flats	10/4/1953	9250	(3700)	6980	(2790)	10	1	Santa Ana
Pine Mt.	9/8/1956	6970	(2790)	1000	(400)	6	1	NW Flow?
Inaja	11/24/1956	43904	(17560)	1130	(450)	13	1	Santa Ana
Chocolate	9/6/1957	3890	(1555)	1345	(540)	7	1,2	SW Flow
Woodson	10/30/1967	30000	(12000)	1840	(735)	9	1	Santa Ana
Pine Hills	10/30/1967	7030	(2810)	3190	(1275)	11	1,2,3	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	6930	(2772)	17	1	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	1235	(495)	17	4,1	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	1080	(430)	18	1	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	2150	(860)	20	1,4	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	1200	(480)	20	4,1	Santa Ana
Laguna	9/26/1970	175420	(70170)	5300	(2120)	20	4,1	Santa Ana
Miller	6/30/1970	8000	(3200)	4120	(1650)	15	1,4	SW Flow

¹Fuel types listed in order of prevalence.

²Actual synoptic weather types are often difficult to determine without upper air data. General weather influences were estimated based on the general direction of spread of the fires.

³28,160 acres (11,264 ha) in San Diego County.

San Diego County in this size range. These fires accounted for 45.9 percent of all large fires and 92.3 percent of the acreage consumed by large fires. (Though no actual comparison was made, it is estimated that these 147 fires accounted for approximately 0.5 percent of the fires in all size classes and consumed approximately 65 percent of the total acreage burned in the county during this period.) Of this total, the search turned up 23 instances of reburned chaparral fuels in 17 fires (table 1). Thus, 11.6 percent of all fires greater than 1000 acres (400 ha) burned more than 1000 or more acres of young chaparral fuels. These 17 fires burned a total of nearly 418,000 acres (167,000 ha), or roughly 25 percent of the acreage consumed by all fires in the county between 1940 and 1985. The 1970 Laguna fire alone burned through six separate areas of young fuels greater than 1000 acres (400 ha) in extent, plus a number of smaller areas of young fuels. All told, the Laguna fire burned over 26,000 acres (10,400 ha) of fuels 20 years old or less, about 15 percent of its total area (fig. 2).

General Weather Conditions

Twelve of the 23 instances of reburning occurred under Santa Ana weather conditions. Another 6 to 8 occurred under "southwest flow" conditions. The "southwest flow" is a very general weather classification in which surface winds blow onshore from the west or southwest, and is the most common summer weather influence in southern California. It includes the subtropical high aloft condition (Schroeder and others 1964) during which many of the largest fires in the state have occurred. Unfortunately, upper air maps, which were generally not available, are necessary to differentiate the subtropical high aloft condition from other southwest flow types. The Santa Ana condition, in which surface high pressure exists over the Great Basin area, generates some of the most extreme burning conditions in the world. High winds and low humidities are endemic to this weather type. Fires occurring under these two major weather types, combined, have accounted for nearly 50 percent of the acreage consumed by large fires in San Diego County since 1910 (Dunn 1987).

Six of the 11 largest fires in San Diego County between 1940 and 1985 burned at least 1000 acres (400 ha) of young chaparral fuels. These fires, of course,

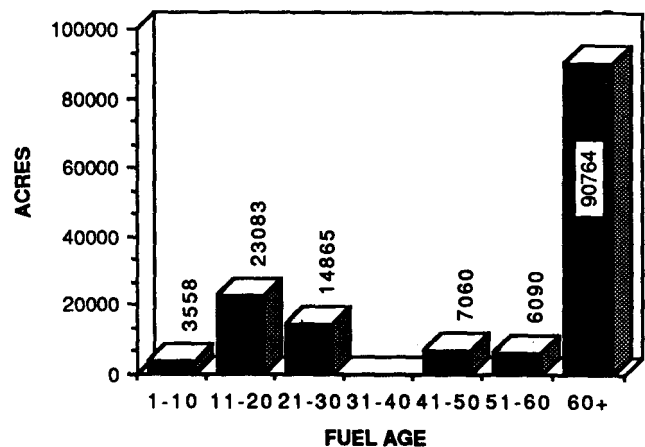


Figure 2--Distribution of fuel age classes consumed during the 1970 Laguna fire.

generally occurred under the severest burning conditions. However, reburns also occurred in relatively small fires. It is difficult, therefore, to evaluate the flammability of young fuels based on the data available. It remains clear, nonetheless, that young chaparral fuels will burn readily under the conditions that generate large wildfires. A good example is the Pine Hills fire of 1967 (fig. 3), which originated in forest and chaparral fuels 40 or more years old. Pushed by a "moderately intense" Santa Ana condition, the Pine Hills fire blackened nearly 3200 acres (1280 ha) of chaparral

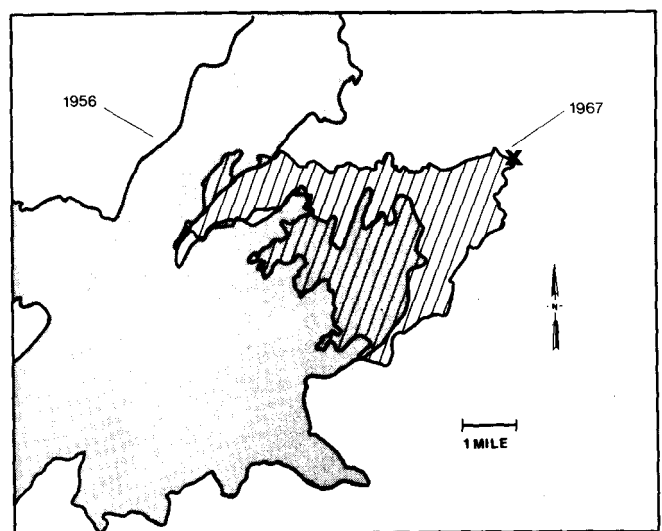


Figure 3--Perimeters of the 1956 Inaja and 1967 Pine Hills fires.

and oak woodland that had last burned in the 1956 Inaja fire. When the Santa Ana winds died down on the second day of the fire, southwesterly upslope winds developed, pushing the fire front back into the burned area and halting its advance into the 11-year-old fuels. (Schroeder and Taylor 1968).

Location of Origin of Fires in Reburns

Of the 23 recorded instances where large areas of young fuels reburned, 19 originated in older fuels and then spread into young fuels. Only in two instances did fires clearly originate in young fuels. In the other two instances, it was unclear in which age class the fire began. Though it is impossible to make a statistical statement based on 23 burns, it appears that most reburns occur in fires that originate in older age classes. In the two fires which began in young fuels, one (the 1985 Miller fire) began in grass fuels and carried into the chaparral during a severe subtropical high aloft condition which spawned a dozen other large fires in the state. Severe weather conditions were also present during the 1981 Oat fire in Los Angeles County, which also began in grassland fuels (Radtke 1982). The Oat fire was driven by strong Santa Ana winds into 11-year-old chaparral fuels and consumed over 17,000 acres (6,800 ha) in less than 11 hours. All told, 99.6 percent of the area burned in the Oat fire supported fuels 11 years old or less.

Effect of Young Fuels on Large Fires

Though prescribed burning may provide increased opportunities for fire suppression by decreasing fire intensities (Harrell and others 1987), there is some question as to whether young fuels, whether they burn or not, actually do much to inhibit the spread of large fires. The interaction of the 1985 Wheeler fire in Ventura County with 2-year-old fuels left by the 1983 Matilija fire is a case in point. The Wheeler fire consumed nearly 108,000 acres (43,200 ha) during a severe subtropical high aloft condition and was the largest fire in California that year (Dunn and Piirto 1987). Eighty-five percent of the area burned by the fire supported chaparral fuels.

The Matilija fire began as a prescribed burn in mixed chaparral fuels, projected to cover about 500 acres (200 ha). However, the fire escaped to cover 4600 acres (1840 ha) before it was finally

contained. The Wheeler fire first encountered the Matilija burn at about the time it began its period of most rapid spread, pushed by temperatures exceeding 100° and humidities around 25 percent. Though approximately 75 percent of the 2-year-old fuels resisted reburning, they posed little barrier to the spread of the Wheeler fire, which split into two fronts and went entirely around the Matilija burn (fig. 4). In 11 hours, the Wheeler fire nearly doubled in size and continued burning for 12 more days before it was declared controlled.

The question must therefore be asked whether burning parcels of 500 or even 5000 acres (200-2000 ha) has much effect on reducing the hazard of truly large fires. Though prescribed burning may inhibit the spread of fires under moderate conditions, the practice may do little to affect the large fires that occur under severe conditions; those fires, like the Wheeler fire, that consume the majority of the acreage burned and do the most damage.

CONCLUSIONS

Large fires occurring under severe conditions are clearly capable of burning through or entirely around areas of young chaparral fuels. The fact that these fuels do indeed burn and do not necessarily inhibit the spread of large fires may have a significant impact on fuel management planning and prescribed burning policy. A closer look needs to be taken at the actual benefits provided by prescribed burning for fire hazard reduction and the conditions under which these benefits occur. Prescribed burning provides benefits for wildlife habitat and watershed management and, used in conjunction with other suppression features such as fuelbreaks, roads and fuel type boundaries, may yield benefits in fire suppression. However, whatever benefits prescribed burning may provide, alone it will not stop intense wildfires. Prescribed burning policy must be formed with this reality in mind.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This study was supported in part by a grant from The Conservation Agency.

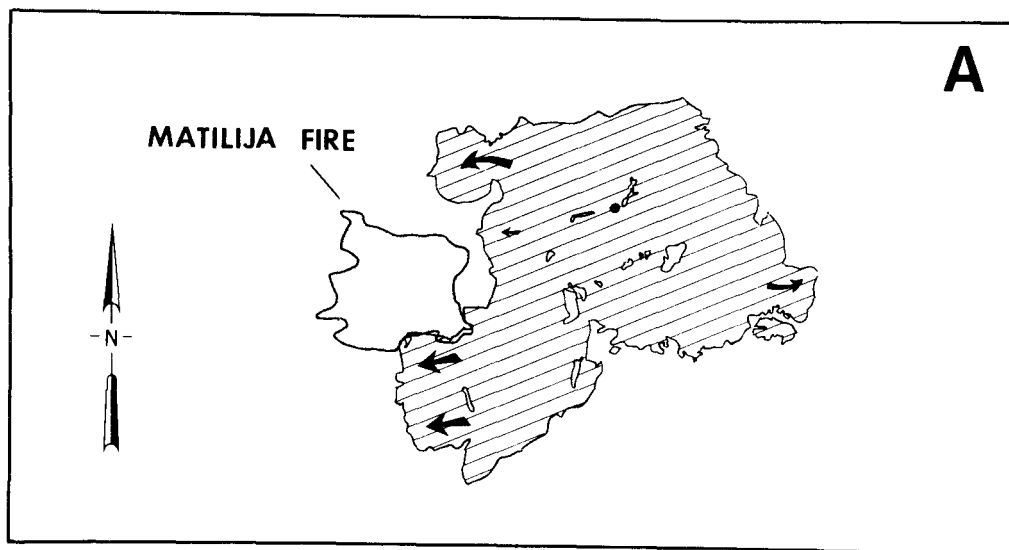
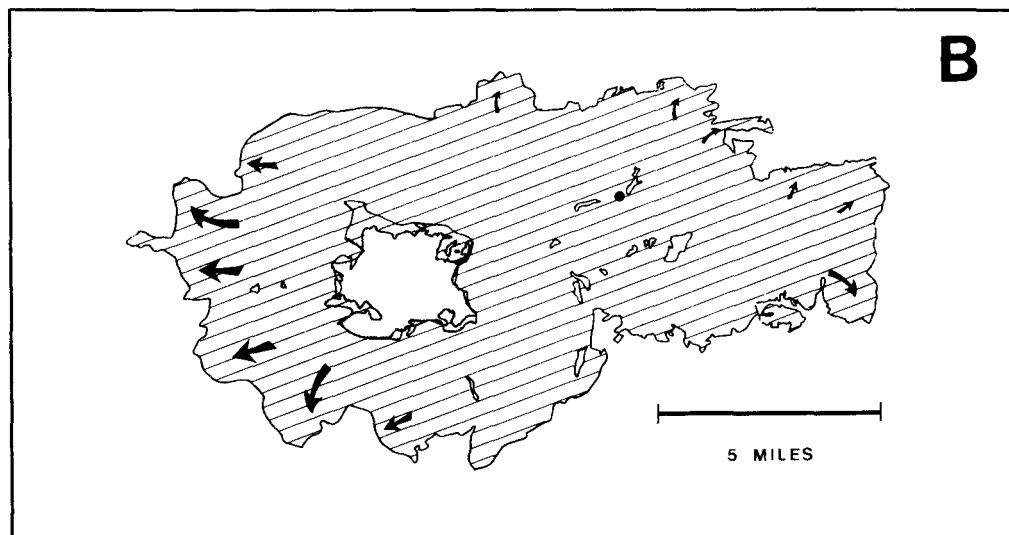


Figure 4--Two stages of the Wheeler fire: A, 1000 hours, July 3, 1985. Current size: 30,410 acres (12,164 ha); B, 2100 hours, July 3, 1985. Current size: 59,490 acres (23,796 ha). Arrows indicate areas of active fire spread. Adapted from Dunn and Piirto (1987).



REFERENCES

- Anderson, Earl B.; Paysen, Timothy E.; Cohen, Jack D. 1987. Chamise as a wildland fuel--Another look. Unpublished draft supplied by the authors.
- Biswell, Harold H. 1977. Prescribed burning as a management tool. In: Mooney, H.A.; Conrad, C.E., eds. Proceedings of the symposium on the environmental consequences of fire and fuel management in Mediterranean ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-3. Washington, DC: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 151-162.
- Beauchamp, R. Mitchell. 1986. A flora of San Diego County, California. National City, CA: Sweetwater River Press; 241 p.
- Cohen, Jack; Bradshaw, Bill. 1986. Fire behavior modeling--A decision tool. In: Koonce, A.L., ed. Prescribed burning in the midwest: State-of-the-art: Proceedings of a symposium; 1986 March 3-6; Stevens Point, WI. Stevens Point, WI: University of Wisconsin; 1-5.
- Countryman, Clive M.; Philpot, Charles W. 1970. Physical characteristics of chamise as a wildland fuel. Res. Paper PSW-66. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 16 p.
- Dodge, Marvin. 1972. Forest fuel accumulation--A growing problem. Science 177(4044): 139-142;

- Dunn, Anthony T. 1987. An atlas of large fires in San Diego County, California, 1910-1985. Unpublished report on file, Monte Vista Ranger District Office, California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, El Cajon, CA; 74 p. 469 maps.
- Dunn, Anthony T.; Piirto, Douglas. 1987. The Wheeler fire in retrospect: Factors affecting fire spread and perimeter formation. Unpublished report on file, Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Riverside, CA; 110 p.
- Green, Lisle R. 1981. Burning by prescription in the chaparral. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-51. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 36 p.
- Harrell, Richard D.; Cohen, Jack; Delfino, Ken and others. 1987. The effects of chaparral modification on resources and wildfire suppression. Unpublished activity review on file, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Berkeley, CA; 14 p.
- Krausmann, William J. 1981. An analysis of several variables affecting fire occurrence and size in San Diego County, California. San Diego, CA: San Diego State University; 152 p. M.S. thesis.
- Minnich, Richard A. 1983. Fire mosaics in Southern California and northern Baja California. *Science* 219(4590): 1287-1294.
- Montygierd-Loyba, T.M.; Keeley, J.E. 1986. Demographic patterns of the shrub *Ceanothus megacarpus* in an old stand of chaparral in the Santa Monica Mountains. In: DeVries, J.J., ed. *Proceedings of the chaparral ecosystems research conference*; 1985 May 16-17; Santa Barbara, CA. Davis, CA: California Water Resources Center, University of California; 123-127.
- Philpot, Charles. 1974. The changing role of fire on chaparral lands. In: *Symposium on living with the chaparral*. San Francisco: Sierra Club; 131-150.
- Philpot, Charles. 1977. Vegetative features as determinants of fire frequency. In: Mooney, H.A.; Conrad, C.E., eds. *Proceedings of the symposium on the environmental consequences of fire and fuel management in Mediterranean ecosystems*. Gen. Tech. Rep. WO-3. Washington, DC: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12-16.
- Radtke, Klaus. 1982. The Oat fire of October 31-November 1, 1981. Unpublished report on file, County of Los Angeles, Department of Forester and Fire Warden, Los Angeles; 22 p. 1 map.
- Rothermel, Richard; Philpot, Charles. 1973. Predicting changes in chaparral flammability. *Journal of Forestry*. 71(10) : 640-643.
- Schroeder, Mark J.; Glovinsky, Monte; Hendricks, Virgil, F. and others. 1964. Synoptic weather types associated with critical fire weather. Washington, DC: Weather Bureau, U.S. Department of Commerce and Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 492 p.
- Schroeder, Mark J.; Taylor, Bernadine B. Inaja fire--1956, Pine Hills fire--1967...similar yet different. Res. Note PSW-183. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 7 p.
- State of California. 1981. Chaparral management program: Final environmental impact report. Sacramento, CA: California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, The Resources Agency; 152 p.
- State of California. 1983. 1982 Wildfire activity statistics. Sacramento, CA: California Department of Forestry, The Resources Agency; 169 p.
- State of California. 1984. 1983 Wildfire activity statistics. Sacramento, CA: California Department of Forestry, The Resources Agency; 169 p.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1934. Vegetation type map: Ramona quad. Berkeley, CA: California Forest Experiment Station.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1969. Soil-vegetation and timber stand maps, Cleveland National Forest. Washington, DC.

Cost-Effective Fire Management for Southern California's Chaparral Wilderness: An Analytical Procedure¹

Chris A. Childers and Douglas D. Piirto²

Abstract: Fire management has always meant fire suppression to the managers of the chaparral covered southern California National Forests. Today, Forest Service fire management programs must be cost effective, while wilderness fire management objectives are aimed at recreating natural fire regimes. A cost-effectiveness analysis has been developed to compare fire management options for meeting these objectives in California's chaparral wilderness. This paper describes the analytical procedure using examples from a study currently being conducted for the Los Padres National Forest, and discusses some preliminary results.

The southern California National Forests (Los Padres, Angeles, San Bernardino, and Cleveland) were originally established to protect the area's chaparral watersheds from fire, but now bear many additional demands and values. For example, over 35 percent of the Los Padres National Forest is designated or proposed wilderness. The goal of fire management in Forest Service wilderness is the restoration and continuance of natural fire regimes (USDA Forest Service 1986). Fire is a natural component of chaparral ecosystems. But, restoring fire's natural role will be difficult and expensive given past fire suppression policies and present urban-wildland interface conditions. Forest managers are now charged with restoring this natural fire regime in a cost-effective manner.

Prescribed lightning fire management, prescribed burning, and the use of "appropriate suppression responses" are legal wilderness fire management options (USDA Forest Service 1984). Prescribed lightning fire management is the use of highly detailed prescriptions to monitor and manage lightning fires. The prescriptions include environmental conditions, air quality constraints, fire and weather histories, limitations on size and intensity, probability that the fire will

remain within acceptable size limits, safety of firefighters and the public, and availability of suppression forces if the fire leaves prescription and must be suppressed. Prescribed burning is similar to prescribed lightning fire management except that Forest Service land managers ignite the fires on their own time schedule when burning conditions are optimal (which often means out of the natural fire season).

Any fire not classified as a prescribed fire is a wildfire and must receive an appropriate suppression response. But, Forest Service policy no longer requires this response to be intensive suppression efforts aimed at keeping the fire as small as possible (a control response), as a wildfire can now be contained or confined. Containment is to surround a fire with minimal control lines and utilize natural barriers to stop its spread. Confinement is to limit a fire's spread to a predetermined area principally by the use of natural barriers, preconstructed barriers, and environmental conditions (USDA Forest Service 1984).

Southern California Forest managers are planning to continue intensive suppression efforts on wildfires and to maintain chaparral wilderness fire regimes through prescribed burns (USDA Forest Service 1988). However, appropriate suppression responses or lightning fire management might be more cost-effective approaches (that is, might reduce the costs and impacts of fire suppression and allow more acres to burn under natural conditions). This paper has three main objectives:

1. To describe a cost-effectiveness analysis (CFA) to compare fire management options for California's chaparral wilderness.
2. To illustrate its use through examples from a study being undertaken for the San Rafael and Dick Smith Wilderness Areas on the Los Padres National Forest.
3. To discuss some of the preliminary findings of the Los Padres Analysis.³

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Graduate Research Assistant and Associate Professor of the Natural Resources Management Department, respectively, California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, Calif.

³The Los Padres CEA is currently being conducted through a McIntire Stennis grant from the Natural Resources Management Department at Cal Poly, San Luis Obispo, and in cooperation with the Los Padres National Forest. The final results of this CEA will be available by April, 1989 from the authors.

BACKGROUND

Several economic models have been developed to evaluate fire management programs (Saveland 1986; Mills and Bratten 1982; USDA Forest Service 1987). Most of these models are intended for large-scale fire management planning and cannot evaluate the effects of anything less than intensive suppression responses. Furthermore, many are based on the "cost plus net value change" (C + NVC) economic efficiency criterion.

For example, the National Fire Management Analysis System (NFMAS--USDA Forest Service 1987) is used for fire management planning by all National Forests. NFMAS develops fire occurrence probabilities from forestwide fire occurrence histories, then uses computer models of fire behavior and suppression efforts to determine average annual suppression costs and burned areas for different fire management budget levels and management emphases (for example, allocating more dollars for fuels management than for suppression forces or prevention programs). From burned area estimates, net resource value changes caused by fire (NVCs) are calculated based on acreage burned by intensity level. The budget level and management emphasis which minimizes the sum of fire management costs and NVCs is considered the most efficient.

This type of analysis is inappropriate for wilderness fire management planning for several reasons. First, basing fire occurrence rates on large area fire histories misrepresents the fire regime of small, remote wilderness areas. The greatest cause of fire on the Los Padres is arson, while almost 80 percent of the fires in the Dick Smith and San Rafael Wilderness Areas during the past 25 years were remote lightning-caused fires, often occurring under less than extreme fire weather conditions (Los Padres fire reports from 1963-87).

Second, expected cost and burned area values are derived from fire containment computer programs. Two different programs are available, but neither is capable of evaluating the effects of any suppression response other than control.

Third, current limitations of Cost + Net Value Change (C + NVC) evaluations make it inadequate for wilderness fire management planning. C + NVC is a cost-benefit economic efficiency analysis. Cost-benefit analysis is a comparison of the costs of meeting an objective against the returns or benefits. In theory, economic efficiency is achieved when the costs equal the benefits, or by the minimization of the sum of the costs and benefits (as in C + NVC). To be complete, a cost-benefit analysis must include a measure of all of the costs and all of the benefits (Williams 1973). To define the change in a resource's value caused by fire, the value of the resource itself must be defined. Currently, C + NVC evaluations include values for most primary forest resources such as timber, minerals, and forage. Net Value Changes (NVCs) have also been placed on many

wilderness outputs such as water, fish and wildlife habitat, and recreational use. But, these resources are only secondary outputs, or by-products of wilderness (Saveland 1986). Without a measure of the primary value of the resource--wilderness itself in this case--a cost-benefit analysis will be incomplete, and very likely misleading (that is, the effects of fire on these by-products is not the same as its effects on a wilderness ecosystem).

Despite these problems, most of the work that has been done on the economics of wilderness fire is based on C + NVC (Condon 1985, Mills 1985). One exception is an economic evaluation of fire management options for a portion of the Frank Church--River of No Return Wilderness Area (Saveland 1986). This analysis is a cost-effectiveness comparison of four different fire management programs. The costs of each alternative are the expected annual suppression costs. And, "effectiveness" is the approximation of the average "natural" annual burned area based on what fire history studies reveal:

Plant communities require a certain amount of fire, just as they require a certain amount of precipitation Altering the average annual burned area would be like altering the average annual rainfall (Saveland 1986).

Though Saveland's analysis was for a different fire regime, his definitions and much of his methodology are appropriate for California's chaparral.

COST-EFFECTIVENESS ANALYSIS

A cost-effectiveness analysis (CEA), in its truest form, is a comparison of the costs of different alternatives, where each alternative will meet the desired objectives, or have the same effects. There are five key elements of a CEA: the objectives; the alternatives; the costs; the model; and a criterion for ranking the alternatives (Quade 1967).

The Objective

The main objective of wilderness fire management is to allow lightning fire to play, as nearly as possible, its natural ecological role in restoring the natural fire regime. Research suggests that the natural fire return interval for chaparral is about 30 years (Minnich 1983, Byrne 1979). The fire records of the Los Padres (1911-1987) suggest that the chaparral burns every 45 years (USDA Forest Service 1988). The 45-year rotation was chosen for this study. Using the 45-year return interval, an average of over 5,000 acres (2024 ha) of the 231,500 acre (93,687 ha) study area would have to burn annually.

The Alternatives

Four alternatives were chosen for the Los Padres CEA. Alternative 1 is the Forest Service's

past policy: Control all wildfires regardless of cause, and attempt to meet annual burned area objectives through prescribed burning. Alternative 2 is the fire management strategy proposed in the Los Padres' Land Management Plan: Contain all fires which occur under low intensity and control all moderate to high intensity fires, while pursuing an active prescribed burning program (USDA Forest Service 1988). Alternative 3: confine all low intensity starts, contain moderate to high intensity starts, and control only the starts which occur under extreme fire weather conditions. Alternative 4: the same as 3 with the addition of an approved plan for prescribed lightning fire management. Alternatives 3 and 4 would be augmented by a smaller prescribed burning program to meet average annual burned area objectives, since more acres will have been burned by wildfires and lightning caused prescribed fires.

The Costs

All measurable variable costs must be included in a CEA. Fixed costs, such as those for staffing lookouts or firefighting units, do not have to be included in the analysis as long as they remain the same for each alternative. For example, the appropriate suppression force staffing levels for the Los Padres were determined through NFMAS and by budget constraints. These levels are based on an average of over 100 fires per year, while less than 2 fires a year occur in the case study area. Therefore, wilderness fire suppression strategies will not affect forestwide personnel requirements. The variable costs that must be considered are annual suppression costs, NVCs, and costs of any prescribed burns.

The Model

The model is a simplified representation of the real world which includes all of the relevant features. The role of the model is to predict the costs of each alternative and the extent to which each would meet management objectives (Quade 1967). Decision trees can be used to evaluate alternative fire management programs in the face of uncertainties about future fire occurrences, weather, behavior, and sizes (Hirsch et al. 1981). Decision trees develop expected values, which are probability weighted averages of all possible outcomes. Probabilities are derived from fire history records for fire management planning. Cost and burned area figures can be drawn from historic fire management records, records of adjacent or comparable fire management programs, or some form of fire gaming if no historic or comparable records are available. Every wildfire is a unique event and past fire occurrences cannot be considered predictors of future fires. Thus, "expected values" are not predictions (actual future values may or may not be similar), but they do provide relative values for comparison. Therefore, decision trees make an appropriate model for our CEA.

A Criterion

The criterion for ranking alternatives is dependent upon the agency's goals and objectives. In wilderness fire management planning, many different rankings are possible. Prescribed lightning fire management might be justified even if it was more costly than intensive suppression. For example, the National Park Service considers acres burned under natural conditions more important than the cost of a fire management program (Agee 1985). Both cost and burned area are important considerations for Forest Service wilderness fire management programs, so both values must be developed.

THE LOS PADRES EXAMPLE

The decision tree for Alternative 1 of the Los Padres study (table 1) illustrates the values and probabilities which must be developed for a wilderness fire management CEA. A decision tree must be completed for each alternative, using the same probabilities, but with different suppression responses, and thus different cost and burned area values. The probabilities for each branch of the trees were calculated from the last 25 year fire history of the San Rafael and Dick Smith Wilderness Areas (including the proposed 16,500 acre--6,680 ha--addition to the San Rafael Wilderness Area).

For the first branch of the trees, all 44 fires (34 lightning- and 10 person-caused fires) were mapped by point of origin. Representative fire locations (R.L.s) were chosen to represent each historic fire (fig. 1). The probability of a fire occurring at each R.L. was based on the number of fires represented by that R.L. For example, 13 fires are represented by R.L. 1, thus 13/44, or 0.296 is the probability of a fire occurring under conditions represented by R.L. 1. The second branch was the probability of occurrence by cause. These probabilities were dependent upon the fires represented by that R.L. For example, 5 lightning- and 8 person-caused fires were represented by location 1, thus the probability of an R.L. 1 fire being caused by lightning is 5/13, or .385.

For the third branch, the 1400-hr weather observations from nearby weather stations were retrieved for the day of ignition of each historic fire and the following 30 days to develop month-long weather patterns. Weather patterns were divided into groups, based on the Santa Barbara Ranger District's prescribed burn weather parameters:

	Low	<u>Optimum</u>	<u>High</u>
Fuel stick			
1 hour	8	6	5
10 hour	14	9	7
100 hour	18	13	9
Live fuel moisture	110	70	60
Relative humidity (pct)	50	30	25
Wind speed (mi/hr)	0	5	13
Temperature (degrees F)	60	75	85

These parameters represent a window of environmental conditions which would allow for safe management of a prescribed fire, but still meet burned area objectives. Environmental conditions must remain within these parameters throughout the life of a fire for it to still be "in prescription." Prescriptions must be modified for site specific conditions and burn objectives, but these general parameters were used to distinguish fires burning under "good" conditions (low to moderate fire intensity level) and fires burning under "bad" conditions (high to extreme intensity). Four weather patterns were distinguished: (A) weather that started within prescription parameters and continued within these parameters for at least two weeks (a good-good pattern); (B) weather that started within prescription, but soon moved out of prescription (a good-bad pattern); (C) weather that started

out of prescription, but soon cooled to within prescribed conditions (a bad-good pattern); and (D) weather that started out of prescription and stayed out (a bad-bad pattern). These patterns were then used to calculate the probability of lightning- and person-caused fires occurring under each pattern (table 1). For example, 15 of the 34 lightning fires occurred under "good-good" weather patterns so the probability is 0.441.

Once probabilities have been calculated, cost and burned area values must be developed for probability weighting. These values should represent the range of potential fire costs and sizes. Saveland (1986) used average costs and sizes drawn from similar fire management programs on adjacent wilderness lands. To date, no contain or confine suppression responses, lightning fire management, or prescribed burns have been

Table 1--The decision tree for Alternative 1 of the Los Padres CEA, representing the control of all fires.

ALTERNATIVE 1 (1.76 fires)	REPRESENTATIVE LOCATION	CAUSE	WEATHER PATTERN ¹	SUPPRESSION RESPONSE ²	GAMED SIZE (acres)	EXPECTED	GAMED COST (dollars)	EXPECTED
						ANNUAL BURNED AREA (acres)		ANNUAL COST (dollars)
	R.L. 1 (.296)	Lightning (.385)	A(.441)	CR	0.5	0.0	6,351	562
			B(.118)	CR	10.0	0.2	7,230	171
			C(.147)	CR	118.0	3.5	74,942	2,210
			D(.294)	CR	40.0	2.4	32,238	1,901
		Person (.625)	A(.100)	CR	0.5	0.0	6,351	207
			B(.200)	CR	10.0	0.7	7,230	471
			C(.200)	CR	118.0	7.7	74,942	4,880
			D(.500)	CR	40.0	6.5	32,238	5,348
	R.L. 2 (.341)	Lightning (.933)	A(.441)					
			B(.118)					
			C(.147)					
			D(.294)					
		Person (.067)	A(.100)					
			B(.200)					
			C(.200)					
			D(.500)					
	R.L. 3 (.364)	Lightning (.938)	A(.441)					
			B(.118)					
C(.147)								
D(.294)								
Person (.062)		A(.100)						
		B(.200)						
		C(.200)						
		D(.500)						
(preliminary) TOTALS:						(21ac/yr)	(\$15,650/yr)	

¹Weather patterns are divided into four groups based on prescribed burn parameters: A = good-good weather pattern; B = good-bad weather pattern; C = bad-good weather pattern; D = bad-bad weather pattern.

²Suppression response options include: control (CR); contain (CA); confine (CF); or prescribed lightning fire management (Px).

attempted in southern California wilderness. Thus, a fire gaming approach was taken.

Fire gaming is the prediction of representative fire sizes by fire management professionals. Predictions are based on the interactions of estimated fire behavior conditions and given suppression force responses (Harrod and Smith 1983). It is an acceptable technique to predict final fire sizes and costs, and has been used for Forest Service fire management planning in the past (Joseph and Gardner 1981). Gaming accuracy is dependent upon the abilities and knowledge of the fire gamers (Harrod and Smith 1983). The Los Padres fire management personnel participated in fire games for the 1980 National Forest budgeting process. A 1982 fire started near a gamed location and under similar weather conditions. The resulting 825-acre (335-ha) fire was very similar in both costs and size to the gamed fire. The same gaming team (as many of the members as possible) was reassembled to game representative fires for our study.

Fire gamers include the Forest's Fire Management Officer (F.M.O.), the Assistant F.M.O., the Fuels Management Officer, the recently retired Fire Prevention Officer ("Budget 80" games leader), and two District F.M.O.s (one recently retired). All but the Forest F.M.O. were involved in the 1980 games so little training was necessary.

Gaming materials include 15-minute topographic maps and aerial photographs of the R.L.s and adjacent areas, Mylar (clear plastic) overlays, representative weather patterns (one pattern from each of the four categories was chosen for each R.L.), a list of the resources that would be dispatched initially to each R.L. (based on the Forest's current dispatch plan), a fire history map which includes all fires 300 acres (121 ha) or greater that occurred in the study area since records were started, and assorted tabulation sheets to record resources used, hours, miles of travel, and other suppression costs that would be encountered during the life of each "gamed fire" (Harrod and Smith 1983).

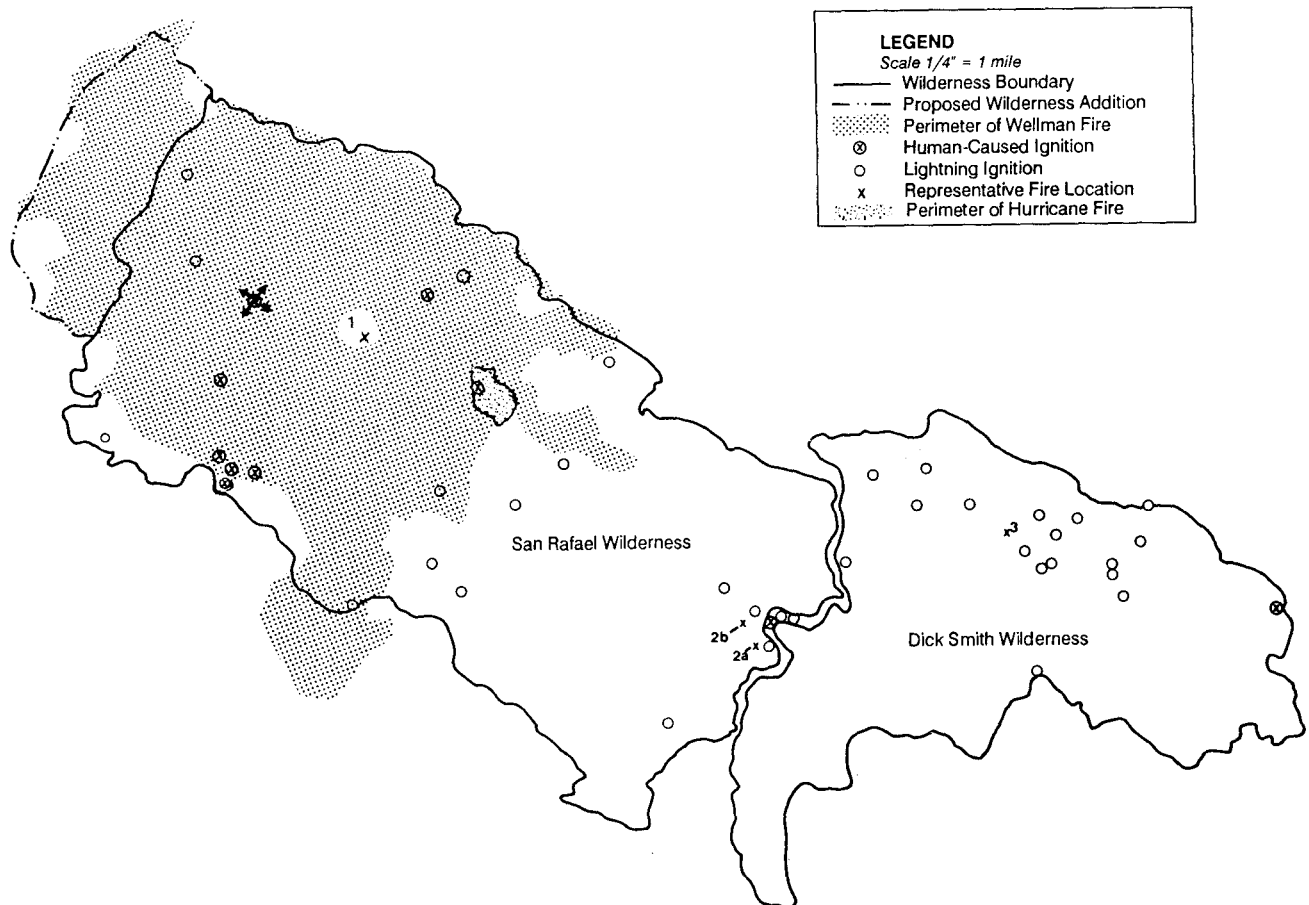


Figure 1--The last 25 year fire history of the Dick Smith and San Rafael Wilderness Areas and the corresponding representative fire locations.

Actual games consisted of first mapping an overlay of the free-burning fire spread (without any suppression efforts) from time of ignition to report and then for a series of time periods thereafter. Fire spread rates were determined from the computer program "Firecast" (Cohen 1983) based on slope and fuel conditions at the R. L., and the given weather pattern. Spread rates were subjectively modified by garners to account for changes in fuel conditions, local weather patterns, diurnal weather changes, and changes in topography as fires spread. Four weather patterns were gamed at each location. Fires started under "good" weather conditions were then gamed four times: controlled, contained, confined, and managed as a prescribed fire. Fires starting under "bad" conditions were only controlled and contained since these fires would be out of prescription, and good weather would be necessary to confine fires in these unbroken fuelbeds.

PRELIMINARY RESULTS

The results of the fire gaming for R.L. 1 and some preliminary gaming results for R.L. 2 are presented in table 2. The R.L. 1 values were then run through the appropriate decision tree for their use and preliminary expected values for average annual cost and burned area were calculated (table 3). For example, all fires were controlled in Alternative 1, thus the control gaming results were used throughout this tree (table 1). Alternative 2 results represent the containment of both fires which started under good weather conditions and the control of the two which started under bad conditions. Alternative 3 results represent the confinement of the first two fires and the containment of the latter two. Alternative 4 results were calculated similar to the third, except that 25 percent of the low intensity lightning caused fires (both good conditions) were considered prescribed fires.

Table 3 also compares each alternative's cost per area managed and average annual cost per

Table 3--Average annual cost, cost per area managed, average annual burned area, and average annual cost per area burned for four alternative fire management programs for Representative Fire Location 1 of the Dick Smith and San Rafael Wilderness Areas¹

	Average annual cost	Cost per acre (ha) managed	Average annual burned acre (ha)	Average cost per burned acre (ha)
Historical (before suppression)			1500+ (607+)	
Alternative 1	\$15,650	\$0.23 (\$0.57)	21.0 (8.5)	\$745 (\$1841)
Alternative 2	\$15,096	\$0.22 (\$0.55)	21.0 (8.5)	\$719 (\$1776)
Alternative 3	\$13,898	\$0.20 (\$0.50)	153.1 (62.0)	\$91 (\$224)
Alternative 4	\$13,908	\$0.20 (\$0.50)	153.1 (62.0)	\$91 (\$224)

¹Representative Fire Location 1 represents 29.6 percent of the case study fires, thus figures are calculated from 29.6 percent of the 231,500 acre (93,687 ha) site, or 68,500 acres (27,722 ha).

burned area for fires represented by R.L. 1. The figures for cost per area managed are based on 68,500 acres (27,722 ha), or 29.6 percent of total wilderness.

NVCs are determined by the size and intensity level of each gamed fire. The Los Padres currently calculates these values for all 300+ acre (121 ha) fires. Only three gamed fires burned more than 300 acres at R.L. 1 and these were in a "low valued" watershed. Thus, the NVC's for R.L. 1 do not have much effect on our preliminary expected annual costs. NVCs will be

Table 2--Final size and cost figures for gamed fires.

	CONTROL		CONTAIN		CONFIN		Px Lightning Fire	
	Size (acres)	Cost (\$)	Size (acres)	Cost (\$)	Size (acres)	Cost (\$)	Size (acres)	Cost (\$)
Representative fire location 1								
Good-good weather pattern	0.5	6,351	0.5	3,883	4.0	2,919	4.0	3,207
Good-bad weather pattern	10.0	7,230	10.0	4,365	457.0	6,135	457.0	6,622
Bad-good weather pattern	118.0	74,942	270.0	45,791		N/G		N/G
Bad-bad weather pattern	40.0	32,238	390.0	39,086		N/G		N/G
Representative fire location 2 ¹								
Good-good weather pattern	0.5	2,903	0.5	2,548	99.0	3,038	738.0	28,697
Good-bad weather pattern	66.7	36,759	780.0	41,367	² 2300+	100,000+		

¹Cost figures for representative fire location 2 have not been formally reviewed by the fire garners, thus they are subject to minor changes. However, the relationships between responses will probably not change.

²The confine fire game for good-bad weather at R.L. 2 has not yet been completed, but the fire will be over 2,300 acres and will probably cost over \$100,000. The prescribed fire game has not been started.

important cost considerations when more valuable watersheds become involved.

DISCUSSION

The values presented in table 3 are only preliminary results as they represent only one R.L. And, R.L. 2 results cannot be run through the decision trees until all of the games for that R.L. have been completed. The values in table 3 are provided to illustrate calculation techniques and some of the results that can be developed through this type of CEA. Expected annual suppression costs and burned areas will be much higher when the decision trees are completed, and the relationships between the alternatives will probably change. Therefore, comparisons of these preliminary values are difficult to justify since they are based on such a small database (one series of games).

Despite this small database, some patterns have become evident. Many fire management personnel consider the use of confinement or prescribed lightning fire management impossible in decadent chaparral fuelbeds (for example, two fire garners before our games began). Both responses were successful at R.L. 1 (the least expensive response under good-good weather and only slightly more expensive than containment under good-bad). This R.L. is covered by fairly young (22-year-old) mixed chaparral. The relatively light fuels and extraordinarily high humidities in both good weather patterns helped confine the fires. This pattern is not being repeated at R.L. 2, where confinement and prescribed lightning fires are becoming the most expensive responses. These results suggest that confinement or prescribed lightning fire management will not be cost effective, at least until much more of these decadent fuelbeds are broken up by younger fuel mosaics and our ability to reliably forecast weather conditions increases.

Containment was feasible under moderate conditions at R.L. 1 (little more than half of the cost of control under good-good weather, and the least expensive response under good-bad), and this pattern is continuing at R.L. 2 (though it was slightly more expensive than control under the moderate intensity, good-bad fire at R.L. 2). Containment was also the least expensive response under the highest intensity fire gamed thus far (bad-good weather at R.L.1), which suggests that containment could provide some substantial fire suppression savings on fires in these wildernesses. This pattern will be closely monitored in future games, as more data will be necessary for validation of this finding.

Expected annual burned areas illustrated the anticipated pattern of more area burned under the less intensive suppression responses. The annual expected burned area for alternatives 3 and 4 is somewhat low. But, this can be attributed to the young fuels and high humidities which led to moderate burning conditions. Gamed fire sizes for

confinement and prescribed lightning fires are becoming much higher at R.L. 2, and the higher pattern is probably more representative of these wildernesses.

Some unanticipated, but valuable observations of these early fire games are not directly related to our CEA. The garners--all "old-school" firefighters--originally raised questions about the feasibility of containing or confining chaparral fires. Our games compelled these fire managers to consider what they would do when required to use these responses in the field, either through policy or when suppression forces are not available.

Another important finding of our preliminary games is the value of the Forest's pre-attack manuals. During the 1960's and early 1970's, the Los Padres was divided into "pre-attack blocks". Each block was mapped, marked, and signs were posted designating potential dozer lines, hand lines, helispots, water sources, fire camp locations, and other valuable fire suppression information. These plans have recently been discarded by many fire management staffs, but have proved invaluable to the garners for the confinement and containment responses. This suggests that if appropriate suppression responses are ever to be utilized on the Los Padres, these manuals should be updated and made more readily available to fire management personnel. Even if control remained the most appropriate suppression response for the Forest, up-dated pre-attack manuals would be valuable tools for prescribed burn managers.

SUMMARY

In summary, cost-effectiveness analysis is appropriate for wilderness fire management planning. Decision trees help us predict future fire occurrence potentials, and intensive gaming efforts can help us predict fire sizes and costs associated with the implementation of appropriate suppression responses and prescribed lightning fire management. These values are important to land managers who are now faced with the cost-effective management of natural fire regimes in chaparral wilderness. This type of analysis is especially valuable for southern California land managers who have little field experience with any fire management program other than intensive suppression efforts and off-season prescribed burning, especially given the risks associated with fire in volatile chaparral ecosystems. Fire games are not only providing a valuable evaluation of appropriate suppression responses and prescribed lightning fire management, but are also proving educational to "old school" fire management personnel and illustrating some potentially cost effective alternatives to intensive suppression efforts.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the following persons, all with the Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture: Santa Lucia and Santa Barbara Ranger District Fire Management Officers Chet Cash, and Tom Goldenbee (recently retired), Los Padres National Forest Fire Prevention Officer Dennis Ensign (recently retired), Forest Fuels Management Officer Harold Cahill, and Forest Assistant Fire Management Officer Lonnie Briggs for their extensive time commitments to fire gaming; Economist Eric Smith of the Regional Office, San Francisco, CA. for technical counsel; Economist Armando Gonzalez-Caban of the Forest Fire Laboratory, Riverside, CA. for technical counsel and review; Santa Barbara Ranger District Fuels Management Officer Jim Shackelford for technical review; and Jane Cochrane of the Los Padres' Business Management Staff for extensive editorial review. This project was funded by a McIntire Stennis grant from the Natural Resources Management Department, California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo.

REFERENCES

- Agee, James K. 1985. Cost-effective fire management in National Parks. In: Lotan, James E.; Kilgore, Bruce M.; Fischer, William C.; Mutch, Robert W. tech. coord. Proceedings, symposium and workshop on wilderness fire. 1983. Nov. 15-18. Missoula, MT. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-182. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture; 193-198.
- Byrne, Roger. 1979. Fossil charcoal from varved sediments in the Santa Barbara Channel: an index of wildfire frequencies in the Los Padres National Forest. Unpublished report, Res. Agreement PSW-47. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 110 p.
- Cohen, Jack. 1983. Firecast fire behavior program. Riverside, CA: Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.
- Condon, Michael. 1985. Economic analysis for wilderness fire management: a case study. In: Lotan, James E.; Kilgore, Bruce M.; Fischer, William C.; Mutch, Robert W. tech. coordinators. Proceedings, symposium and workshop on wilderness fire. 1983. Nov. 15-18. Missoula, MT. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-182. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture; 199-205.
- Harrod, Mike; Smith, Eric. 1983. Fire gaming for low resolution planning--a review of concepts and procedures. Unpublished report by the Fire Management Planning and Economics Unit; Riverside, CA: Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 38 p.
- Hirsch, Stanley N.; Radloff, David L.; Schopfer, and others. 1981. The activity fuel appraisal process: instructions and examples. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-83. Fort Collins, CO: Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Stn. Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture. 46 p.
- Joseph, Chris; Gardener, Philip. 1981. The use of fire gaming in forest fire management planning. Unpublished draft report, Fire Management Planning and Economics Unit, Riverside, CA: Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 106 p.
- Mills, Thomas J. 1985. Criteria for evaluating the economic efficiency of fire management programs in park and wilderness areas. In: Lotan, James E.; Kilgore, Bruce M.; Fischer, William C.; Mutch, Robert W. tech. coord. Proceedings, symposium and workshop on wilderness fire. 1983. Nov. 15-18. Missoula, MT. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-182. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture; 182-190.
- Mills, Thomas J.; Bratten, Frederick W. 1982. FEES: design of a fire economics evaluation system. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-65. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture. 26 p.
- Minnich, Richard A. 1983. Fire mosaics in southern California and northern Baja California. Science 219(4590):1287-1294.
- Quade, Edward A. 1967. Introduction and Overview. pp. 1-16. In Goldman, Thomas A., Ed. Cost-effectiveness analysis: new approaches in decision making. New York, N.Y.: Frederick Praeger, Inc.; 1-16.
- Saveland, James M. 1986. Wilderness fire economics: the Frank Church-River of No Return Wilderness. In: Lucas, Robert C. Proceedings of the National Wilderness Research Conference: current research. 1985. July 23-25; Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-212. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service; U.S. Department of Agriculture; 39-48.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1984. Forest Service Manual, Title 5100. Fire management. Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1986. Forest Service Manual, Chapter 2320. Wilderness Management. Washington, D.C.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1987. Forest Service Handb. 5109.19, Fire management analysis and planning handbook. Washington, DC.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1988. Los Padres National Forest land and resource management plan. Goleta, CA.
- Williams, Allan. 1973. Cost-benefit analysis: bastard science? and/or insidious poison in the body politick. In: Wolfe, J.N. Cost benefit and cost effectiveness. New York: George Allen and Unwin, Ltd.; 236 p.

Demography: A Tool for Understanding the Wildland-Urban Interface Fire Problems¹

James B. Davis²

Abstract: Fire managers across the nation are confronting the rapidly developing problem created by movement of people into wildland areas, increasing what has been termed the wildland-urban interface. The problem is very complex from the standpoint of fire planning and management. To plan and manage more effectively, fire managers should identify three types of interface areas, each with its own unique set of demographic factors, local land use, and fire protection problems. By examining and understanding how future trends will affect fire protection tactics and strategy in each of the interfaces, managers should be able to plan ahead--to be proactive rather than reactive in relations with the public and its leaders. To do this, however, fire managers should understand how population dynamics--demographics--influences the area that they manage.

The American people, it seems, are as mobile and restless as the desert sands. One has only to read an article on population dynamics (demographics) to appreciate how rapidly the nation's population changes. If we are to do a good job managing the forested land in what has been generally termed the "wildland-urban interface" we need to know something about these changes and how they may affect our future plans.

Almost all of us concerned with wildland management are becoming familiar with the wildland urban interface area concept. We may have seen the growing problem throughout the nation where there has been a dramatic increase during the past 10 to 15 years in the number of people moving into the wildlands (Davis 1986). While the trend toward rural living has reflected the public's appreciation of rural

land values, it has also greatly increased the number of primary residences, second homes, and retirement homes located in proximity to the nation's forests, woodlands, and watersheds (Davis and Marker ¹⁹⁸⁷; Hughes 1987a). In some areas of the nation, mobile homes seemingly spring up overnight. Vast areas of the United States now contain high-value properties intermingled with native vegetation.

Although the fire problem is often spectacular, these developing areas have other management problems that we are just beginning to appreciate. These include limited timber harvesting options, recreation pressure, and such serious threats as pollution and erosion (Rice 1987; Walt 1986). Changing patterns of population distribution have important implications for the way we manage our forests today and the way we must plan to manage them in the future. However, to understand the implications of these patterns, we first need to define the wildland-urban interface. The term can mean different things to different people.

TYPES OF INTERFACE

Almost every part of the nation has a wildland-urban interface fire problem. Interface areas can range from deserts where a flush of flammable growth follows a rain to undeveloped park land inside a major metropolitan area. Three types, each with its own demographic characteristic and land management problems have been defined (NW/UFPC 1987).

- 0 Mixed Interface or Intermix
- 0 Classic Interface
- 0 Occluded Interface

Not only are the variety and density of vegetation and size and spacing of homes and other structures variable and complex in these different interfaces, but the location and movement of people are different from one to the other, and their population trends change rapidly over time and frequently in different directions (Rogue 1985).

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Research Forester, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Riverside, California.

The intermix

The intermix ranges from single homes or other buildings scattered throughout the wildland area to medium-sized subdivisions. Typical are summer homes, recreation homes, ranches, and farms in a wildland setting. Usually these are isolated structures surrounded by large areas of vegetation-covered land, but, this is not always true. Wintergreen, a development in the Blue Ridge Mountains of Virginia, contains 600 homes and 1,000 condominium units, yet the nearest large town or city is 40 miles away (Graff 1988). When a fire starts, the individual homes are very hard to protect because few fire agencies can provide a fire truck or two for each house that may be threatened in a major fire.

The classic interface

By far the greatest number of people live in (and are currently moving into) what can be called the classic interface. This is the area of "urban sprawl" where homes, especially new subdivisions, press against the wildland (Hughes 1987b). Fires starting in adjacent wildland areas can propagate a massive flame front during a wildfire, and numerous homes are put at risk by a single fire which sometimes overwhelms fire protection forces and water supplies. Typical examples include California's San Gabriel Mountains, Colorado's Eastern Front, and New Jersey's Pine Barrens.

The occluded interface

An occluded interface is characterized by isolated areas of wildland within an urban area. The same demographic trends that influence the classic interface affect this one. As cities grow together to make a super city, islands of undeveloped land are left behind (Engels 1985). Sometimes, these are specifically set aside as natural parks. Again, they may be steep, difficult places that are unsuitable as building sites. Frequently they present a fire threat to adjacent homeowners.

The type of intermix is not always clearcut. Small towns and villages may contain both classic and intermix areas depending upon how the "downtown" tends to mix with wildland vegetation at the city's fringes.

Variability in Fire Protection Responsibility

The fire problem is much complicated by a patchwork of legal and organizational requirements and constraints for fire protection

(Irwin 1987). For example, some States have specific legal requirements for the protection of structures in the wildland. Others have no legal responsibility and neither train their personnel nor purchase the specialized equipment needed for structure protection. Many agencies with thousands of acres of wildland within their jurisdictions may be unprepared to fight a wildland fire effectively.

Most Californians are aware of the southern California fire problem. Examples are the Bel Air Fire in 1961 in which 484 homes were destroyed; and the 1980 "Panorama Fire" in which 286 homes were burned and four people killed. However, the worst interface disaster confronted by modern fire protection agencies occurred during the Maine fires of 1947. In a series of late fall fires, 16 persons lost their lives and 2,500 were made homeless: nine communities were leveled or practically wiped out, and four other communities suffered extensive damage. One witness describes the roads as "crowded with people, livestock, cars, teams, and wheelbarrows fleeing before the fire." At one town--Bar Harbor--fleeing residents had to be rescued by Coast Guard, Navy, and private boats in a Dunkerque-like operation (Wilkins 1948).

The problem is truly national in scope--Florida's Palm Coast Fire in which 99 homes were lost (Abt and others 1987) and a 1987 fire near Spokane in which 24 homes were lost are recent examples. The worst year in this decade from a structure fire standpoint was 1985. By the end of the year, over 83,000 wildfires had burned almost 3 million acres, destroyed or damaged 1,400 structures and dwellings, caused the deaths of 44 civilians and firefighters, and cost the Federal, State, local fire agencies, and private industry over 400 million dollars in firefighting costs (NW/UPFC 1987).

With the more or less steady increase in population, we can only expect the loss to increase unless specific concrete steps are taken to change the situation. The nationwide concern for this problem cannot be over-emphasized. In addition to many States, the USDA Forest Service considers it a "major issue" and has joined in a partnership with U.S. Fire Administration and National Fire Protection Association in sponsoring the national "Wildfire Strikes Home" initiative.

DEMOGRAPHY

Demography is the discipline that seeks a statistical description of human population and its distribution with respect to (1) structure (the number of the population; its composition

by sex, age, and marital status; statistics of families, and so on) at a given date, and (2) events (births, deaths, marriages and termination of marriage) that take place within the population over a given period (Pressat 1972).

The demography of the wildland-urban interface

Who are the new interface residents? The people moving into the interface are a varied group. In one locality the newcomers were found to include five categories (Herbers 1986; Sweeney 1979):

- 0 Commuters, more and more of whom are willing to travel long distances from a mountain setting to jobs in urban areas.
- 0 The retired, who want to trade in urban problems such as crime and smog for a remote and more peaceful home in the mountains or foothills.
- 0 Younger dropouts from the urban rat race. Many of these with families want to raise their children in a simpler, less pressured lifestyle, away from the problems of city schools and rush-hour traffic jams.
- 0 Older, more successful corporate executives who wish to exchange long hours spent in often well-paying jobs for even longer hours spent launching their own small businesses.
- 0 The poor, who may find that it is the only place they can afford to live. Often a home (or mobile home) in the wildland is far less expensive than similar accommodations in more developed places.

Part of the reason for this growth is that the postwar "baby boom" generation has reached the age of achieving a relatively high level of education and affluence. Growing up during the "ecological revolution" of the 1960's and early 1970's, many in this group are attracted to the interface as a good place to own a home and raise a family (Herbers 1986). Forest Service planners seeking acceptance of their forest plan know that this group has characterized itself as being concerned with environmental issues.

Other major reasons include improved transportation and communication. Superhighways and interstate routes have enabled people to live in outlying areas and commute to a job in the city (Bradshaw 1987; Engels and Forstall 1985; Long and others 1983). Some people believe they can escape crime and pollution problems by moving to a more rural setting. However, as suburban areas age--particularly the

classic and occluded interfaces--they may take on the characteristics of the inner city, with its poverty and ethnic problems (Newitt 1983). It is very important for a wildland manager to identify the demographic mix of people and tailor management strategies accordingly. The manager must also be aware of projections and trends in order to deal effectively with these diverse publics.

Trends

For most of our history, this nation's cities have grown at the expense of rural areas. However, from the mid-1940's to the late 1970's there was a widespread reversal of this trend. Hastened by the baby boom, there was a population shift from urban to nonmetropolitan (suburban and rural) living. The result has been a major increase in the number of people who have moved into or adjacent to our nation's forests and woodland areas (Kloppenborg 1983; Scapiro 1980). In these areas, urban development interfaces (or intermixes) with wild or undeveloped land. Most people have moved into this area for the amenity values or for economic reasons unrelated to traditional rural land uses, such as forestry or farming.

California Example

As a close-at-home example of these trends, California has long appealed to American movers (Sanders 1987). By the late 1960's, however, the number of States from which California gained migrants had fallen, and it began to lose migrants to Oregon, Washington, and Nevada, as well as to Oklahoma and Virginia. Between 1975 and 1980, California had net losses in migration exchanges with all 10 of its western migration partners. But this net loss of 420,000 people to these 10 other States was offset by a net gain of 534,000 people from the rest of the country, chiefly from the Northeast and Midwest.

Not long ago Oregon residents sported bumper stickers asking Californians to visit but not to stay. Now such fears have been allayed because Oregon is once again exporting people to California. Between 1984 and 1985, California gained migrants from Oregon and Washington, reflecting the decline in the logging industry and rising unemployment in the Northwest.

So far in the 1980's, only 2 of California's 10 migration partners in the West continue to be net importers of Californians. Between 1984 and 1985, these 10 States sent a net of 19,000 people to California. This is a mere trickle, however, compared to the 420,000 migrants that California lost to these States between 1975 and 1980.

Demographic projections aside, local populations respond to the ebb and flow of local

economics. Falling lumber prices and farm losses can wipe out a decade of demographic momentum, while a new business can rekindle a stagnant population. Keeping up with these changes is vital to local planners, school administrators--as well as the forest or fire manager (Sternlieb and others 1982).

DEMOGRAPHY AS A PLANNING TOOL

How can demography help us predict these change so that we can plan ahead for them? While projections of the need for governmental services, including fire protection, road construction, and water development may be well developed in the classic and occluded interfaces because of the proximity of metropolitan areas; however, this is rarely true for the intermix. Fire managers should have this information so that they can plan and budget for their organizations. They should know how population projections and land development plans relate to critical fuels and steep terrain so they can work "before the fact" with community planners and land developers. They should know something about the ethnic and cultural background of anticipated new residents so they can better tailor prevention efforts.

Data useful for demographic analysis exists only rarely in official statistics in the specific form that it is needed. The peculiar character of the specific problems raised frequently requires the collection of appropriate information through special inquiries or surveys. This is particularly true of the small towns comprising the intermix.

Sources of Information

For the United States, there are two primary sources of demographic data. The first of these is the comprehensive reports of the census population, which tabulates data assembled each 10 years since 1790. The latest of these enumerations was made in 1980, and most of the published results have been made available (Kennedy and others 1987).

The population census provides a portrait at a given instant of a population that is constantly changing under the influence of the events--births, deaths, and migrations--that occur in it. Thus the census measures the size of the population by sex, age, marital status, education and so on at the date of the census. The various kinds of information that have been collected can be combined in many ways, and they can concern an entire country, or some given part of the country (region, State, county, or city). Little by little, the field of investigation has been extended to include groupings much smaller and more specific than the usual national or regional aggregates. These broader studies cover not only small

administrative or other units (cities, villages, natural regions), but also human categories that are not territorially well defined (for example wildland-urban residents). The Census Bureau is now gearing up for the 1990 survey--its largest ever.

The second fundamental source are the annual publications issued by the National Center for Health Statistics, which tabulates data on births and deaths. Departments of public health in most of the States also publish vital statistical data for their respective States, some of them slightly earlier and in somewhat greater detail than those given in the reports issued by the National Center for Health Statistics. For more general demographic material, the Statistical Abstract of the United States, issued annually by the Government Printing Office, is a convenient and reliable source of information.

How demographic information will be used

The most dramatic innovation of the 1990 census is the automated mapping system known as TIGER (Topologically Integrated Geographic Encoding and Referencing), which will enable the Census Bureau, working with the U.S. Geological Survey, to develop computerized maps covering the entire United States (Keane 1988). The TIGER process uses geographical information system (GIS) technology, that translates the intersection of boundaries of one type of information--census related information for example--with information from another geographic feature. It will be possible to overlay population density maps with vegetation type, slope class, and aspect to produce fire risk and hazard maps. The next step will be development of population projection models that will predict risk and hazard 5 or more years into the future. Next will be the use of one of several existing fire spread models to overlay the population projection, with areas that will have a statistical probability of burning in future fires. Thus, a fire manager will be able to display to local policy and planning officials detailed information on the areas likely to be threatened by future wildfires and the homes and population that will be at risk unless mitigation measures are taken.

Land managers will be able to use GIS developed maps, containing demographic information, to predict where a growing population will impact on their fire protection strategies and timber, recreation, and other land management plans.

Demographic training and skills

Demographers are trained to conduct surveys, estimate small-area populations, and prepare demographic reports. Most are employed

to make market surveys and projections for retail business--the location of a new shopping center for example (Stephen 1988). Demographers should have a strong background in statistics and computer modeling, and the ability to "crunch" large amounts of data. They should be well aware of the great wealth of existing information. Many are familiar with geographic information systems, a field that the Forest Service is rapidly applying. Computer skills should include both computer programming, including writing new programs for specific analysis, and expertise in using statistical packages such as SPSS and SAS.

By examining and understanding how future population trends will affect fire protection tactics and strategy in each of the interfaces, managers should be able to plan ahead-to be proactive rather than reactive in relations with the public and its leaders in managing the wildland-urban interface and its forestry and fire problems.

REFERENCES

- Abt, Robert; Kelly, David; Kuypers, Mike. 1987. The Florida Palm Coast Fire: an analysis of fire incidence and residence characteristics. *Fire Technology* 23(3): 186-197.
- Bogue, Ronald J. 1985. The population of the United States, historical trends and future projections. New York: The Free Press; 350 p.
- Bradshaw, Ted K. 1987. The intrusion of human population into forest and rangelands of California. In: Proceedings of the wildland fire 2000 symposium, 1987 April 27-30; South Lake Tahoe, CA. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-101. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 15-21.
- Davis, James B. 1986. Danger zone: the wildland/urban interface. *Fire Management Notes* 47(3): 3-5.
- Davis, Jim; Marker, John. 1986. The wildland/urban fire problem. *Fire Command* 54(10): 26-27.
- Engels, Richard A.; Forstall, Richard L. 1985. Metropolitan areas dominate growth again. *American Demographics* 7(4): 23-39.
- Graff, John. [Personal communication.] 1988. Riverside, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.
- Herbers, John. 1986. The new heartland. Times Books. New York: Random House Inc.; 228 p.
- Hughes, Joseph B. 1987a. Development in the Pine Barrens: a design for disaster. *Fire Management Notes* 47(4): 24-27.
- Hughes, Joseph B. 1987b. New Jersey, April 1963: Can it happen again? *Fire Management Notes* 48(1): 3-6.
- Irwin, Robert L. 1987. Local planning considerations for the wildland structural intermix in the year 2000. In: Proceedings of the wildland fire 2000 symposium, 1987 April 27-30; South Lake Tahoe, CA. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-101. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 38-46.
- Keane, John. 1988. The big count. *Government Executive* 20(4): 13-17.
- Kloppenburger, Jack. 1983. The demand for land. *American Demographics* 5(1): 34-37.
- Kennedy, John M.; DeJong, Gordon F.; Lichter, Daniel T. 1987. How to update county population projections. *American Demographics* 9(2): 50-51.
- Newitt, Jane. Behind the big-city blues. 1983. *American Demographics* 5(6): 27-39.
- NW/UFPC. Wildfire strikes home. 1987. Report of the National Wildland/Urban Fire Protection Conference. Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association; 90 p.
- Pressat, Roland. 1972. Demographic analysis. New York: Aldine-Atherton; 498 p.
- Rice, Carol L. 1987. What will the western wildlands be like in the year 2000? future perfect or future imperfect. In: Proceedings of the wildland fire 2000 symposium, 1987 April 27-30; South Lake Tahoe, CA. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-101. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 26-31.
- Sanders, Alvin J.; Long, Larry. 1987. New Sunbelt migration patterns. *American Demographics* 9(1): 38-41.
- Schapiro, Morton Owen. 1980. Filling up America: an economic-demographic model of population growth and distribution in the 19th-century United States. Greenwich, CN: JAI Press Inc.; 425 p.
- Smith, T. Lynn; Zopf, Paul E. Jr. 1976. Demography: principles and methods. Port Washington, NY: Alfred Publishing Co; 615 p.
- Stephen, Elizabeth H. 1988. How to hire a demographer. *American Demographics* 10(6): 38-40.
- Sternlieb, George; Hughes James W.; Hughes, Connie O. 1982. Demographic trends and economic reality: planning and marketing in the '80s. Center for Urban Policy Research. State University of New Jersey; 154 p.
- Sweeney, Joan. 1979. Sierra lure--urban dropouts bring urban problems. Los Angeles Times. 1979 March 25.
- Walt, Harold R. 1986. Problems in the urbanized forest. *The Christian Science Monitor*. 1986 March 17.
- Wilkins, A. H. 1948. The story of the Maine forest fire disaster. *Journal of Forestry* 46(8): 568-573.

Controlled Burns on the Urban Fringe, Mount Tamalpais, Marin County, California¹

Thomas E. Spittler²

Abstract: The California Department of Conservation, Division of Mines and Geology provided technical assistance to the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection in assessing potential geologic hazards that could be affected by proposed prescribed burns on Mt. Tamalpais. This research yielded the following conclusions: (1) landsliding and surface erosion have contributed to the denudation of Mount Tamalpais; (2) Debris flows and surface erosion could affect property and the environment on and below the mountain; (3) The removal of chaparral will reduce the stability of the slopes; and (4) Prescribed burning may reduce the risk and lessen the destructive effects of wildfire and may therefore have significantly less impact on both landsliding and surface erosion than the probable wildfire event modeled by the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection.

The last conclusion is based on the following considerations: controlled burns separated in time and space would expose smaller slope areas to the effects of rainfall than would a wildfire; a hot wildfire would damage the soil much more than a cool controlled fire; slope-damaging fire-fighting measures, such as tractor-constructed fire trails, would not be needed for controlled burns; and areas of geologic concern, such as colluvial-filled hollows, will be included in the development of the prescription for controlled burns on Mount Tamalpais.

Mount Tamalpais, the highest point in Marin County, lies just 20 km. north of San Francisco (fig. 1). The slopes of the mountain rise steeply free the encroaching urbanization of Mill Valley, Larkspur and Kentfield. These slopes support a dense stand of decadent chaparral that poses a significant fire hazard to the surrounding area (Perry 1984).

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Engineering Geologist, California Department of Conservation, Division of Mines and Geology, Santa Rosa, California.

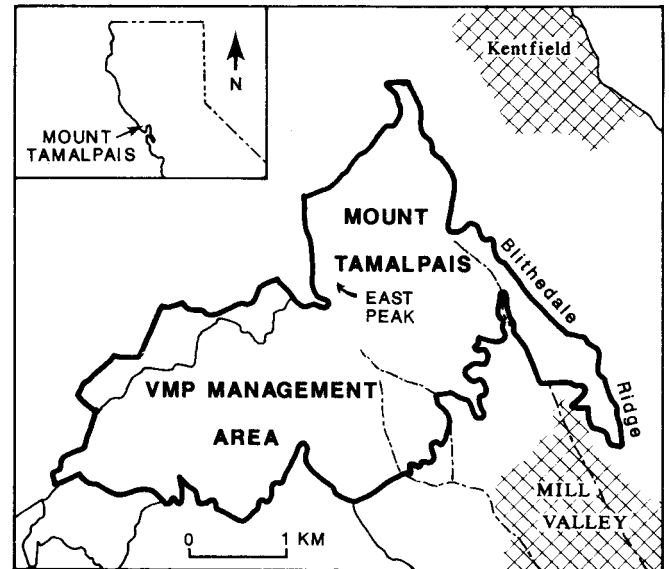


Fig. 1 Location map showing the boundaries of the Mount Tamalpais Vegetation Management Plan area and its relation to urbanizing areas of Marin County.

The Marin County Fire Department, in cooperation with the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, has developed a plan to reduce the threat of catastrophic wildfires through the use of prescribed burns on the south-facing slopes of Mount Tamalpais on lands managed by the Marin Municipal Water District and the Marin County Open Space District. These agencies do not, however, wish to reduce the wildfire hazard by increasing the hazards of erosion, flooding, and debris flow activity to unacceptable levels. Therefore, technical assistance was requested from the California Department of Conservation, Division of Mines and Geology to assess geologic hazards, particularly erosion and slope stability, that could be affected by proposed Vegetation Management Program controlled burns.

The primary goal of the prescribed burns is to create a mosaic of age and size classes of chaparral vegetation on the south face of Mount Tamalpais to limit the wildfire hazard (Selfridge 1966a). Four multiple burn areas, totaling 300 ha in size, are designed to break up brush fields that threaten life and property in the town of Mill Valley (Selfridge 1986a).

Within these multiple burn areas, 20 to 35 percent of the vegetation, approximately 80 ha, are anticipated to be burned in the next year the project is active. This represents 8 percent of the 1000 ha area managed by the Marin Municipal Utilities District and the Marin County Open Space District.

The initial burns will be in the winter or early spring, when live fuel moistures are high, to allow for better fire control (Selfridge 1986b). Once the extreme fire hazard is reduced, controlled burning will take place during favorable weather conditions in the fall (Selfridge 1986b). Fall burns are desirable because they mimic natural conditions and would pose less of a threat to endangered plant and animal species. The ultimate goal of the vegetation management project on Mount Tamalpais is to burn approximately 5 percent of the chaparral vegetation each year to maintain a 20 year rotation of the fire climax species (Nehoda 1988). In this context, the review by the Division of Mines and Geology addresses the entire management area.

GEOLOGIC SETTING

Bedrock

Mount Tamalpais is underlain by the Marin Headlands terrane of the Franciscan Complex (Blake and others 1984). Bedrock exposed in the proposed burn area is a weakly metamorphosed lithic sandstone with serpentinite along fracture zones (Wright 1982). The sandstone beneath East Peak is very hard and strong and is cemented by authigenic tourmaline. This tourmalinized sandstone is recognizable within sane transported old landslide masses (Rice 1986). The serpentinite is highly sheared, very weak, and has failed as earth flows, slumps, and debris slides on relatively gentle slopes.

Colluvium

Colluvium accumulations in bedrock hollows are a main source of debris flow landslides (Reneau and Dietrich 1987). On Mount Tamalpais, the dominant colluvium is poorly consolidated with sandstone clasts supported by a poorly sorted sandy matrix. This is the type of material that is highly prone to failure by debris flow events (Ellen and Fleeting 1987).

Most of the areas of colluvium accumulation on Mount Tamalpais can be identified by their surface morphologies, however, some of the colluvium-filled, pre-existing topographic lows are not reflected in the surface topography (Wright 1982). These obscure hollows were identified by using false color infrared aerial photographs taken during the summer. Because of the greater moisture

capacities of colluvium compared with the surrounding soil, plants growing over the hollows are not stressed by water deficiencies to the same degree as those over bedrock. This difference in plant stress causes the strong differences in the reflectances of near infrared radiation (Glass and Slemmons 1979) that was used to identify the obscure, colluvium-filled bedrock hollows. All of the identified colluvium deposits larger than approximately 1 ha, both those that are exhibited in the surface topography and those that are not, are shown on fig. 2.

A few small areas were observed where the colluvium consists almost entirely of serpentine detritus. For geotechnical purposes, the serpentine colluvium was included with either the serpentinite or the serpentine-derived landslide deposits over which it lies.

Landslides

Rotational landslides, earthflows, debris slides, and debris flows (nomenclature from Varnes 1978) were identified in the Mount Tamalpais Vegetation Management Plan burn area (fig. 2). Features with physiomorphic properties that are associated with rotational sliding, but which have been modified by erosion, are the most extensive in the area. These large, apparently deep-seated features are interpreted to be related to an earlier, very wet climate.

Earthflows have affected the serpentinite and serpentine colluvium in the western portion of the Vegetation Management Plan area. Portions of the individual earthflows are prone to reactivation in response to accumulated soil moisture, whether the area is burned or not.

Debris slides of unconsolidated rock, colluvium, and soil that have moved downslope along relatively shallow failure planes were identified as affecting both the Franciscan Complex sandstone and the serpentinite. Most of the mapped debris slides are along roads and trails where cut banks are continuing to ravel. In a few locations, sidecast fill and portions of the underlying soil and colluvium have failed. Debris slides were also identified in steep areas well away from cut or fill slopes. Unlike the large, deep ancient rotational landslides that may be thousands or even tens of thousands of years old, the surface morphology of a debris slide rapidly degrades by erosion. The debris slides mapped on fig. 2 are either active or recently active.

The most abundant type of landslide mapped in the Mount Tamalpais Vegetation Management Plan burn area is the debris flow. Debris

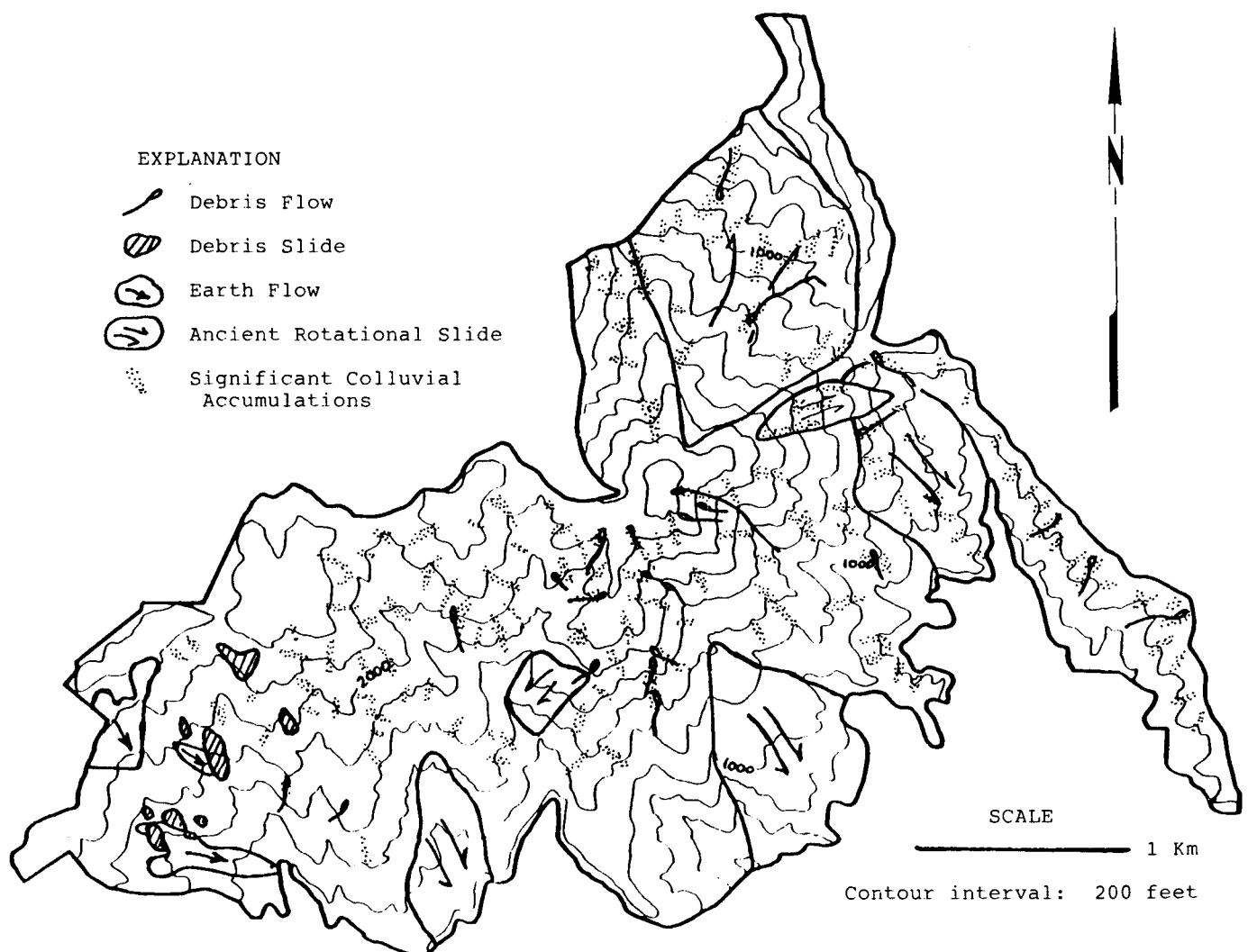


Fig. 2 Map of landslides and colluvium deposits within the Mount Tamalpais Vegetation Management Plan

flows, often termed debris avalanches when velocities are greater than about 10 miles per hour (Varnes 1978), are shallow landslides that fail as muddy slurries during periods of intense precipitation (Campbell 1975). Many researchers -- for example, Dietrich and Dunne (1978) and Lehre (1981) -- have recognized that most debris flows start in swales or hollows at heads of small hillside drainage courses. These are areas where the potential source material (loose colluvium) and ground water accumulate, resulting in focused high pore-water pressures in weak materials (Reneau and others 1984).

Three debris flows on the east face of East Peak originated on hiking trails where surface water was intercepted and diverted into the swales. The debris flows that are mapped on fig. 2 are almost all products of a major storm which occurred from January 3 through January 5, 1982.

Lehre (1981) measured erosion and sediment discharge in a small watershed on the western slope of Mount Tamalpais and concluded that debris slides and flows account for most of the sediment yield there. Sediment that is mobilized during years without extreme flow events generally returns to storage, chiefly on the lower parts of slopes and in channel and gully beds and banks. Large net removal of sediment occurs during storm events with recurrence intervals greater than 10 to 15 years (Lehre 1981). Most of the stream channels on Mount Tamalpais have transported sediment without resulting in severe aggradation.

THE EFFECTS OF FIRE ON SLOPE STABILITY AND EROSION

The primary effect of a fire is the removal of vegetation. Where slopes are steep and soils are cohesionless, as on Mount Tamalpais, stems and trunks of vegetation and organic litter support loose clasts, preventing them from rolling downslope. Burning removes the mechanical support, allowing material to dry ravel. Wells (1981) quotes USDA Forest Service research that dry ravel is responsible for over half of all sediment movement on many slopes.

A major effect of fire on chaparral soils is the production of a water-repellent layer beneath the soil surface. DeBano (1981) noted that chaparral plant communities produce a degree of water repellency under normal conditions because organic substances are leached from the plant litter and coat sand and coarse-grained soils (the surface area-to-volume ratio of fine-grained soils limits the effectiveness of the production of water repellency). The water-repellent material under unburned chaparral stands is only partially effective in restricting infiltration. When wildfire sweeps through a chaparral stand, the soil temperatures may reach 840°C (DeBano 1981). This volatilizes the organic water-repellent materials which follow temperature gradients downward into the soil. The vaporized substances then condense on mineral soil particles and produce an extremely water-repellent layer. The 1- to 5-centimeter-thick layer of soil that overlies the water-repellent zone is highly permeable and erodible.

Following a high-intensity fire, the effective water storage capacity of the soil mantle is estimated to be reduced by 20 times or more (Wells 1981) and rainfall quickly exceeds the soil's storage capacity. The excess water that cannot penetrate through the hydrophobic layer saturates the surficial wettable layer, which may fail as small-scale debris flows (Wells 1987). This material, in addition to the surface rill and gully wash, rapidly runs off into stream channels.

Peak flows in stream channels downslope of burn areas may occur with less of a delay from rainfall peaks than those in unburned watersheds. Flood peaks are often much higher and more capable of eroding stored sediment. The high flows of sediment-charged water can erode large quantities of material and transport it as debris torrents (debris flows that are initiated in stream channels as opposed to colluvium-filled hollows).

Landsliding, principally debris flows, has also been shown to increase in frequency after vegetation is removed from met-stable slopes (Rice and Foggin 1971). The maximum incidence

of landsliding occurs several years after a fire because of the time it takes for the soil-reinforcing root biomass to decay and for the water-repellent layer to be disrupted and permit infiltration.

One additional negative environmental effect of wildfire that has received little attention is the damage to the soil caused by fire suppression efforts. During a major wildfire, earth moving equipment is used to build fire trails. These trails are often several tractor blades wide and may trend directly down steep slopes. It is fairly common for fires to jump individual lines, often requiring the excavation of many parallel downslope firebreaks. Each of these disrupted areas is often significantly more prone to erosion than the burned hillslopes adjacent to them. Additionally, erosion control structures, such as waterbars, are often placed where they divert water onto unstable slopes.

Sediment derived from burned areas is routed through drainages. If a channel is capable of carrying the additional load, the excess sediment is transported to an area of long-term deposition. If, on the other hand, the material eroded from burned slopes exceeds the carrying capacity of the stream, the sediment will settle out, aggrade the channel, and cause additional erosion and sedimentation.

EFFECTS OF FIRE SUPPRESSION

Fire suppression has been successful on Mount Tamalpais since the Great Mount Tamalpais Fire of 1929 burned 117 houses in Mill Valley. Fuel management has not been practiced during this time, resulting in the current critical fire hazard conditions. When the age class of chaparral vegetation is over 20 years, as is the case in the Vegetation Management Plan area on Mount Tamalpais, the live-to-dead plant ratio -- and therefore the potential for burning -- increases (Perry 1984). The accumulation of fuel in areas where fire suppression has been practiced also results in fires that are unprecedented in size, intensity, and environmental damage when compared to unmanaged areas (Dodge 1972). Minnich (1983) compared adjacent portions of southern California, where fire suppression has occurred, with northern Baja California, where there has been little or no wildfire control. Although approximately 8 percent of the chaparral acreage was burned by wildfires in both areas during his study, in Baja California the fires occurred as many small events that were distributed in time throughout each summer, while in southern California, a few large, often catastrophic fires burned in the late summer and fall.

The stream channels on Mount Tamalpais evolved during the time when small wildfires produced a mosaic of age classes of chaparral vegetation. The carrying capacity of some of these channels would likely be overwhelmed if a large storm event were to occur following a catastrophic wildfire. Flood damage during the winters after the wildfire occurred could likely extend below the limits of the burn.

PRESCRIBED BURNING EFFECTS

Prescribed burns have the same types of impacts as wildfires on erosion and slope stability, but the intensity and areal extent of these impacts is much less. Prescribed burns can be small and separated in time and space. This results in a far lower exposure of soil to precipitation during any one time interval. Prescribed burns can be designed to prevent side slopes from being denuded from ridgetop to canyon bottom. Dry ravel may occur, but only a portion of the dry ravel on the side slopes will travel any significant distance downslope. Water-repellent conditions do not develop to the same degree under prescribed burn conditions, and changes in the particle size distribution reported by Wells (1981) are less pronounced. This is particularly true if burns are conducted when soils are wet. The low-intensity burns may induce hydrophobic soils, but only a thin layer of erodible material is likely to lie above a discontinuous water-repellent zone. Also, the use of heavy grading equipment on slopes, such as occurs when fighting wildfires, is much less likely to occur if an area is burned under prescribed conditions.

A controlled burn of only a portion of a watershed will have less of a potential for producing damaging peak flood events or surface erosion than would a complete removal of vegetation by a wildfire. As described above, prescribed burns do not produce the continuous water-repellent layer found beneath wildfire areas. Therefore, much of the post-fire rainfall infiltrates into the soil and does not rapidly run off. Smaller quantities of sediment are likely to erode more frequently from areas managed through controlled burns as compared to less frequent post-wildfire floods which may trigger catastrophic erosional events.

CONCLUSIONS

Fire is a natural part of a chaparral landscape. Where fires have been suppressed for a long period of time, such as on Mount Tamalpais, the effects of the ultimate wildfire event may be large. Removal of the vegetation, fire damage to the soil, and ground disturbance by fire suppression equipment will all contribute to a situation where post-fire

floods and debris flows could pose a severe risk to lives and property downslope of the wildfire area. These conditions may also decrease slope stability in many areas. The proposed controlled burning program should lessen the potential for off-site damage due to floods, debris flows, and landslides from Mount Tamalpais.

REFERENCES

- Blake, M. C., Jr.; Howell, D. G.; and Jayko, A. S. 1984. Tectonostratigraphic Terranes of the San Francisco Bay Region. In: Blake, M. C., Jr., ed. Franciscan Geology of Northern California. Pacific Section Society of Economic Paleontology and Mineralogy; 43:5-22.
- California Department of Conservation, Division of Mines and Geology. 1986. Hazards from "Mudslides"... Debris Avalanches and Debris Flows in Hillside and Wildfire Areas. Sacramento, CA: Division of Mines and Geology Note 33:2 p.
- Campbell, Russel H. 1975. Soil Slips, Debris Flows, and Rainstorms in the Santa Monica Mountains and Vicinity, Southern California. U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 851. Washington DC: U. S. Department of the Interior, Geological Survey; 51 p.
- DeBano, Leonard F. 1981. Water Repellent Soil :A State-of-the-art. General Technical Report PSW-46. Berkeley CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service; 21 p.
- Dietrich, W. E.; Dunne, T. 1978. Sediment Budget for a Small Catchment in Mountainous Terrain. Zeitschrift Fur Geomorphologie Supplement band 29:191-206.
- Dodge, Marvin. 1972. Forest Fuel Accumulation -- A Growing Problem: Science Volume 177(4041):139-142.
- Ellen, Stephen D.; Fleming, Robert W. 1987. Mobilization of debris flows free soil slips, San Francisco Bay region, California. In: Costa, John E.; Wieczorek, Gerald F., eds. Debris Flows/Avalanches: Process, Recognition, and Mitigation. Bolder, CO: Geological Society of America Reviews in Engineering Geology VII:31-40.
- Glass, C. E.; Slemmons, D. B. 1978. Imagery in Earthquake Engineering. Miscellaneous Paper S-73-1, State-of-the-art for Assessing Earthquake Hazards in the United States. Vicksburg, MS: U.S. Army Engineer Waterways Experiment Station; 11:221 p.

- Lehre, Andre K. 1981. Sediment Budget From a Small California Coast Range Drainage Basin Near San Francisco. In: Davies, Timothy R. H.; Pearce, Andrew J., eds. Proceedings of a symposium on erosion and sediment transport in Pacific Rim steeplands. 1981 January; Christchurch, New Zealand. Paris: International Association of Hydrological Sciences Publication 132:123-139.
- McIlvride, William A. 1984. An Assessment of the Effects of Prescribed Burning on Soil Erosion in Chaparral. Davis, CA: Soil Conservation Service, U. S. Department of Agriculture; 101 p.
- Minnich, Richard A. 1983. Fire Mosaics in Southern California and Northern Baja California. Science 219(4590):1287-1294.
- Perry, Donald G. 1984. An Assessment of Wildland Fire Potential in the City of Mill Valley and the Tamalpais Fire Protection District, Mill Valley, California, Based on Fuel, Weather, Topography, and Environmental Factors. Unpublished Technical Report supplied to the City of Mill Valley and the Mount Tamalpais Fire Protection District; 89 p.
- Reneau, S. L.; Dietrich, W. E.; Wilson, C. J.; Rogers, J. D. 1984. Colluvial Deposits and Associated Landslides in the Northern San Francisco Bay Area, California, USA. Proceedings of IV International Symposium on landslides. Toronto, Ontario; Canadian Geotechnical Society 1:425-430.
- Rice, R M.; Foggin, G. T., III. 1971. Effects of High Intensity Storms on Soil Slippage on Mountainous Watersheds in Southern California. Water Resources Research, 7(6):1485-1496.
- Rice, Salem. 1986. California Division of Mines and Geology (retired), Mill Valley, California. [Conversation].
- Selfridge, James B. 1986a. Battalion Chief, Marin County Fire Department. Prescribed Burn Plan [California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection contract with Marin County Fire Department, Contract No. 15-001/005-85-VMP]. 11 p.
- Selfridge, James B. 1986b. Battalion Chief, Marin County Fire Department. Letter to Frances Brigmann, Open Space Planner, Marin County Open Space District. October 27, 1986.
- Varnes, David J. 1978. Slope Movement Types and Processes, In: Schuster, Robert L.; Krizek, Raymond J., eds. Landslides, Analysis and Control. Washington, DC: National Academy of Sciences, Transportation Research Board Special Report 176:11-33.
- Wells, Wade G., II. 1981. Same Effects of Brushfires on Erosion Processes in Coastal Southern California. In: Davies, Timothy R. H.; Pearce, Andrew J., eds. Proceedings of a symposium on erosion and sediment transport in Pacific rim steeplands. 1981 January; Christchurch, New Zealand. Paris: International Association of Hydrological Sciences Publication 132:305-323.
- Wells, Wade G., II. 1987. The effects of fire on the generation of debris flows in southern California. In: Costa, John E.; Wieczorek, Gerald F., eds. Debris Flows/Avalanches: Processes, Recognition, and Mitigation. Boulder, CO: Geologic Society of America Reviews in Engineering Geology VII:105-114.
- Wright, Robert H. 1982. Geology of Central Marin County, California. Santa Cruz, CA: University of California, Dissertation; 204 p.

Synthesis and Summary: Land Use Decisions and Fire Risk¹

Theodore E. Adams, Jr.²

Rapidly changing land use patterns are having a significant impact on watershed management and the included elements of fuel management and fire protection. The complexity of watershed management was defined in the Watershed Management Council's publication prepared for the first conference. This publication, California's Watersheds, emphasized that all land use activity has an impact, that individual impacts can be cumulative and even synergistic. In California, the impact of development on fire effects and fire protection is a grand example.

In my summary, I will not follow the schedule of individual papers presented. I will, instead, structure the review and my comments to emphasize the impact of demographics and population growth on fuel management and fire protection, concerns stated or implied in all presentations.

Jim Davis described the application of demography, the study of population characteristics, to the analysis and prediction of fire management problems. In so doing, he suggested that demography and the social sciences might be more important than new technology to land managers and fire protection agencies.

In Cooperative Extension, we assessed the character of populations in several Mother Lode counties to help us design better information delivery systems. These counties were among 10 that represent less than 10 percent of the state's land mass and, in 1980, represented less than 3 percent of the population. However, in 75 percent of this 10-county area, the population growth rate is at least three times that of the state as a whole. The area represents watershed resources that present major management and fire protection problems.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Extension Wildlands Specialist, Department of Agronomy and Range Science, University of California, Davis.

A preliminary analysis of the population, based on questionnaires, indicated that the average age of respondents is 54 years. Two-thirds have some college and nearly one-third have a Bachelor's or higher degree. Slightly less than half grew up in a city or a town. Half of the remainder had a rural childhood, but they did not grow up on a farm or ranch. Slightly less than two-thirds have owned their property for less than nine years. As a group, this audience appears to be middleaged, well educated, with a predominantly urban or nonfarm background, and they have owned their rural property for a relatively short time. These characteristics are not peculiar to California. A similar evaluation appears in *Wildfire Strikes Home*, the report of the National Wildland/Urban Fire Protection Conference published in 1987.

Added to the problem of changing land use patterns is the variability in fire protection responsibility. Agencies responsible for structural protection often are not trained to handle wildfire situations; agencies such as the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (CDF) and U.S. Forest Service often find themselves ill prepared to address structural fire protection in wildlands situations. This problem was discussed in the report *Wildfire Strikes Home*, which describes the disastrous fire season of 1985 and documents the costs in lives and property that resulted from lack of preparedness in communities across the country where the interface (or intermix) exists. During 1985, 44 people died from fire-related causes, 1,400 structures and homes were destroyed or damaged, and nearly \$.5 billion was spent in fire suppression. The bill for all costs and damages amounted to more than \$1 billion. Given the projected growth in rural areas, losses can only increase unless a concerted effort is made to address the problem. Locally, the Forty-Niner Fire near Grass Valley in Yuba County and the Miller Fire near Vacaville in Solano County, fires that occurred in California this summer, are examples of what can be expected. The Forty-Niner Fire destroyed more than 100 homes and structures.

As Jim points out, growth is occurring for a variety of reasons related to the perceived quality of life and a desire by urbanites to escape urban problems. However, as rural com-

munities grow, urban-related problems emerge, often aggravated by the physical setting, and frequently become watershed and fire management problems.

Currently, technology represents a major part of fire management programs, and use of prescribed fire is a consideration in development of new policy. Both Bob Martin and Tom Spittler discussed the value of this important tool for protection. They described the technical use of fire and the use of fire for fuel management driven by socioeconomic concerns and changing demographics.

The extent of the use of prescribed fire deserves attention. On State Responsibility Areas in California, CDF is burning less than 50,000 acres (123,000 hectares) annually using this tool under the Chaparral Management Program (CMP). This is considerably less than the targeted 120-150,000 acres (296-370,000 hectares) discussed in the Program EIR. In many areas, the acreage burned may prove inadequate from a fire protection standpoint.

Tony Dunn pointed out the inadequacies of current prescribed fire programs created as a deterrent to large wildfires in San Diego County. Current prescribed fires burn too little acreage to create an effective age class mosaic. Under severe fire weather conditions, wildfires burn through small acreages of young fuels. He emphasizes that young fuels may provide increased opportunities for fire suppression by decreasing fire intensities, but the scale created must be greater. Tony's analysis might be applied to the entire state.

He concludes by saying that prescribed fire, as currently used, can be effective only when considered as an adjunct to other measures such as fuel breaks, roads, and changes in fuel type. However, the value of fire as a tool to enhance wildlife habitat and promote watershed management gives it an intrinsic value that can be exploited when fire protection is a consideration.

Fire as a management tool cannot be used without caution. Limits on its employment are imposed by several constraints, not the least of which is urbanization of wildlands. But other, less obvious limits exist, and one of these is social tolerance for fire and the smoke it produces. Air pollution is a major environmental concern, and smoke from agricultural burning, industrial sources, and home fireplaces is being regulated.

Jim Agee addressed the issue of smoke pollution in his presentation. He suggested that the social environment in which fire ecosystems exist has had a more significant impact on fire policy than the physical-biological environment. Continued evolution of fire as a management tool

probably will be controlled by air pollution concerns, the impact of smoke from prescribed fire on air quality. The prediction is that air pollution will be perceived as a greater threat than wildfire. This will occur for two reasons: (1) air quality is more easily dealt with because of existing organizational structure, and (2) smoke from prescribed fire will probably affect more people more often than smoke from wildfire. Social acceptance of prescribed fire may depend on recurring disasters.

Jim also pointed out that funding for control and use of fire occurs differently and contributes to the problem; fuel treatment is billed to operating (budgeted) funds, and losses foregone from wildfire are not counted as benefits. (However, in California, the CDF acknowledges the fire protection value of prescribed fire in computing costs and benefits of a CMP burn.)

Public perceptions of wildfire and its impacts also complicate the use of fire as a management tool. People wrongly assume that wildfire will not occur twice in the same place, and that the occurrence of a wildfire reduces future vulnerability.

Jim concluded by emphasizing that social factors and the level of public understanding drive development of fire policy. This must be recognized by land managers and fire protection personnel in the development of future policy.

Future fire management policies must be flexible to respond to both changing demographics and social pressure. Alternatives to current and projected strategies must be developed to insure effective response to growing fire risk. This might be done by examining selected scenarios as is being done for wildfire management in Southern California chaparral wilderness.

As reported by Chris Childers, evaluation of the cost-effectiveness of fuel management and fire suppression strategies for chaparral wilderness is being accomplished through fire gaming. To date, the most valuable part of this exercise has been the experience gained by fire fighters who have had to consider their responses to different management strategies.

Gaming is essentially reactive and assumes a set of rules. However, at the interface and under the pressure of changing land use patterns, fire management agencies cannot easily define those rules. For gaming to be effective, rules for development must be established. Lack of such rules has forced the adoption of limited strategies.

The CDF, with responsibility for protection of one-third of the state, has been forced by rural development to set as its Primary objective the protection of homes and structures. As described by Rich Schell and Dianne Mays, this

objective is complicated and hazardous to achieve because state laws and local ordinances do not effectively address the need for defensible space. Unlike other disasters, wildfire does not receive the attention from planners that is given to other accepted forms of disaster.

CDF funding is based on wildland fire protection needs, not population growth and development. Program deficiencies must be addressed by application of fire protection standards through local planning and design.

In Dianne's presentation, she emphasized that CDF must be involved in local planning to help mitigate the impacts of growth and development. Fire protection expertise is needed to ensure adoption of measures providing adequate defensible space. The key is planning for and building in a basic level of protection around structures that would include adoption of minimum standards for specific elements of a fire protection program. This and related needs were emphasized by Hal Malt in his luncheon presentation.

Legislation establishing minimum fire-safe standards for greenbelts, water supplies, and building materials was passed by the California Legislature this year. Legislation like this, SB-1075, often is necessary, but it is reactive to the problem. Planning for fire protection is at its best when it is proactive and recognizes trends.

This year the California Legislature passed, but the Governor failed to sign, legislation that would have required updating of county general plans. Counties would have been required to develop and implement policies in the Safety, Land Use, and Conservation Elements for mitigation of the wildfire threat. CDF would have

been authorized to provide its expertise in the process.

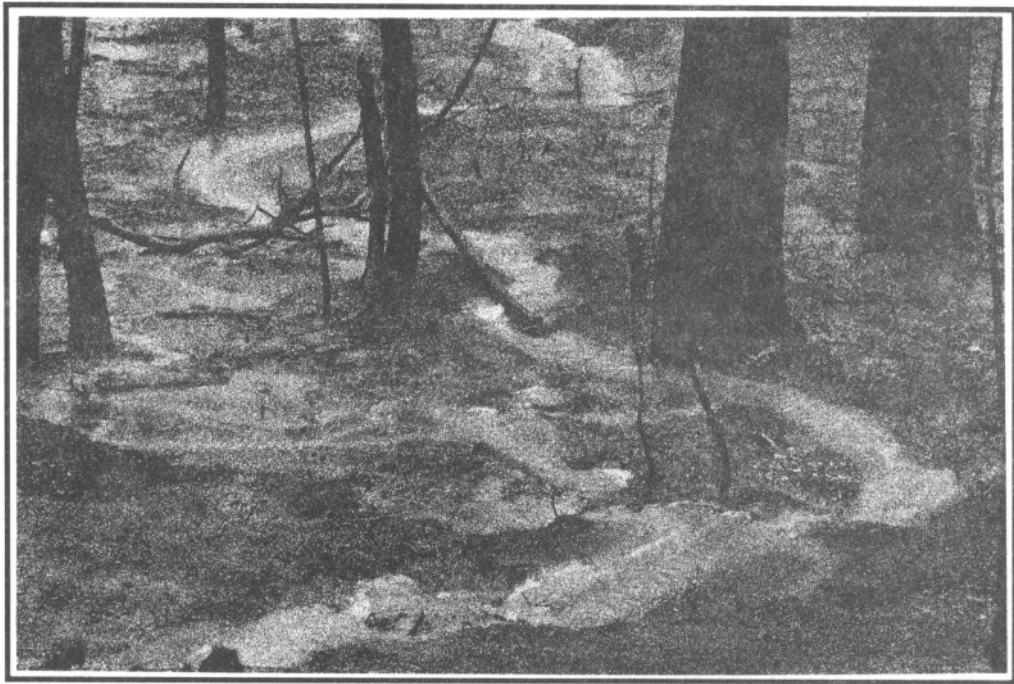
At this time, there is, perhaps, too great an emphasis on technology (building materials, greenbelts, prescribed burning) as the primary solution to fire risk. This observation is based on public perceptions and politics that are forcing adoption of strategies that may not allow aspects of technology to adequately support reduction of the threat from wildfire.

Human behavior is part of the problem. People are not enthusiastic about strategies that include zoning and density requirements. This has been shown through surveys. The surveys also revealed that people are generally unwilling to bear direct costs for hazard mitigation. These responses suggest that people may expect disaster relief that the future cannot guarantee.

While developing rules to define fire gaming plans, it will be necessary to direct effort towards modification of human behavior. As Jim Agee pointed out, the social environment is an important consideration. This means an educational program to raise public awareness and develop support for needed change.

I believe it is fair to assume that those of us in management, service, and educational programs must, in the future, focus less on technical solutions to physical-biological problems in the field of watershed management and more on the problems generated by socioeconomic concerns. It appears that demography must become one of our studies and that sociology along with psychology will be useful tools, as well. These "new" tools will help us find out how far apart are the bars of our cage and how best to modify this confinement.

Effects of Fire on Watersheds



Effects of Fire on Chaparral Soils in Arizona and California and Postfire Management Implications¹

Leonard F. DeBano²

Abstract: Wildfires and prescribed burns are common throughout Arizona and California chaparral. Predicting fire effects requires understanding fire behavior, estimating soil heating, and predicting changes in soil properties. Substantial quantities of some nutrients, particularly nitrogen and phosphorus, are lost directly during combustion. Highly available nutrients released during a fire are deposited on the soil surface where they are immobilized or lost by erosion. Information on the effect of fire on physical, chemical, and biological soil properties provides a basis for discussing short- and long-term consequences of postfire rehabilitation treatments on total nutrient losses, changes in nutrient availability, decreased infiltration rates, and erosion. Arizona and California chaparral show both similarities and differences.

Chaparral occurs mainly in Arizona and California. It covers 1.3 to 1.5 million ha as a discontinuous band across Arizona in a northwest to southeast direction (Hibbert and others 1974). California chaparral, and associated woodlands, cover about 5 million ha extending from Mexico north to the Oregon border (Wieslander and Gleason 1954; Tyrrel 1982).

Prescribed burns and wildfires occur frequently throughout chaparral in Arizona and California. In California, wildfires can occur during any month of the year, although they are most severe during Santa Ana winds in late summer and fall. Most severe fire conditions in Arizona are in spring and early summer before summer rains start and then again during late fall after the summer monsoon season has ended. Prescribed burning can be done in both types throughout the year, although most burns are conducted during

periods of less severe burning conditions. Because both wild and prescribed fires occur frequently throughout chaparral, land managers are continually asked to assess fire effects on different resources while developing postfire rehabilitation plans. The objectives of this paper are to (1) compare Arizona and California chaparral, (2) outline an approach for assessing fire effects in chaparral soils, (3) present a detailed summary of fire effects on soil properties in chaparral, and (4) discuss postfire management concerns.

ARIZONA AND CALIFORNIA CHAPARRAL

Both California and Arizona chaparral originated from Madro-Tertiary geoflora during the Cenozoic era (Axelrod 1958). The two types separated during the mid-Pliocene Epoch in response to major topographic-climatic changes, which produced the present climates in both ecosystems. Greatest climatic differences between the two regions are in amount and distribution of precipitation. Arizona chaparral receives about 400-600 mm precipitation annually, distributed bimodally with approximately 55 percent occurring during the winter from November through April, and the remaining 45 percent during summer convection storms in July through September (Hibbert and others 1974). California chaparral developed under a Mediterranean-type climate, which receives about 660-915 mm precipitation annually, primarily during the cool winters, the summers being hot and dry (Mooney and Parsons 1973). This difference in climate is reflected in the growth patterns of the two chaparral ecosystems. Growth in California chaparral occurs primarily during winter and spring, contrasted to a spring and summer growing season for Arizona chaparral. Differences in plant genera and species also exist between Arizona and California chaparral. Arizona chaparral is devoid of the "soft chaparral" or coastal chaparral communities [composed of black sage (*Salvia* spp.) and buckwheat (*Eriogonum* spp.)] and chamise chaparral (*Adenostoma* spp.), both of which are common in California (Horton 1941). Several genera, however, are common to both Arizona and California [e.x.: oak (*Quercus*), ceanothus (*Ceanothus*), and mountainmahogany (*Cercocarpus*)]. Several species found in the Lower Sonoran desert--catclaw acacia (*Acacia*

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Principal Soil Scientist, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Tempe, Ariz.

greggi Gray), catclaw mimosa (*Mimosa biuncifera* Benth), mesquite (*Prosopis juliflora* Swartz DC)--extend into the Arizona chaparral (Knipe and others 1979). Also, postfire successional patterns differ slightly between the two ecosystems in that dense stands of short-lived deervetches (*Lotus* spp.) and lupines (*Lupinus* spp.) are sometimes present in immediate postfire seral stages in California chaparral, but are absent in Arizona.

Comparative information on aboveground biomass and soil nutrients in Arizona and California chaparral is sketchy, although published data show similar amounts of total nitrogen (N) and phosphorus (P) in litter and soils, indicating both ecosystems have adapted similarly to edaphic and climatic limitations of their respective environments (DeBano and Conrad 1978; Mooney and Rundel 1979; Pase 1972; DeBano, unpublished data³). Comparative data available on readily extractable ammonia- and nitrate-N in unburned soils show the upper soil layers under Arizona chaparral contain higher concentrations of ammonia-N (5-20 •g/g) than California chaparral (1-2 •g/gm), but both ecosystems containing similar nitrate-N (1-2 •g/gm) (Christensen and Muller 1975; DeBano and others 1979a; DeBano, unpublished data³). Nitrogen and phosphorus are limited in both ecosystems, and vegetation growth responds to these fertilizers (Hellmers and others 1955; DeBano, unpublished data³).

Although differences in vegetation composition, successional patterns, climate, and soil nutrients exist between Arizona and California chaparral, it is unlikely that these differences substantially affect the general relationships and conclusions concerning fire effects presented below. Similarity of fire behavior probably overwhelms any inherent differences present in the two ecosystems. Known quantitative differences between the two systems will be indicated where data are available.

ASSESSING FIRE EFFECTS

Predicting fire effects in soils is a three-stage procedure; namely: (1) characterizing fire intensity, (2) relating fire intensities to soil heating, and (3) predicting changes in chemical, physical, and biological soil properties in response to different soil heating regimes. Characterizing fire intensity and its relationship to soil heating will be discussed briefly, but more detail is published elsewhere (DeBano 1988).

³Data on file, Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Tempe, Ariz.

Characterizing Fire Behavior and Intensity

Large differences in fire behavior commonly experienced between prescribed burns and wildfires in most forest ecosystems makes data on fire effects studies in forested ecosystems of limited value when predicting fire effects in chaparral. The reason for this being that wildfires in forests spread rapidly through the crowns of standing live and dead trees. As a result, large amounts of canopy (leaves, twigs, and in some case boles) are consumed along with substantial amounts of surface needles and leaf litter. This releases large amounts of thermal energy very rapidly, causing substantial soil heating. In contrast, prescribed fires in forests behave much differently, because they are designed to burn much cooler, thereby consuming only part of the surface needles and litter. These are often referred to as "cool" fires. However, fire in chaparral is carried through the shrub canopy during both wild and prescribed fires. As a result, fire intensity and the resulting soil heating during prescribed burns compared to wildfires in chaparral are not as great as occurs between these two types of fire in forests. For example, only minimal soil heating occurs during a cool burning prescribed fire in forests compared to low intensity fires in chaparral (fig. 1A, B).

Although canopy consumption occurs during prescribed burning in chaparral, fire intensities in chaparral vary considerably and, as a result, produce different amounts of soil heating (fig. 1B, C). Marginal burning conditions produce less intense fires, which consume only part of the canopy, leaving substantial amounts of unburned litter on the soil surface. Although not all the canopy may be consumed during a fire, the remaining tops will die and contribute to dead fuel loading for a future fire. Recently improved aerial ignition techniques have allowed successful prescribed burning to be done during marginal, and safer, burning conditions, which also reduces the impact of fire on the underlying soil. The availability of new research information along with these modern ignition techniques allows managers to develop burning prescriptions, which can minimize fire intensity, and thereby reduce the fire effects on chaparral soils.

Predicting Soil Heating

Fire intensity can be characterized in several ways, but those indices related to rate of combustion and amount of aboveground biomass and litter consumed during a fire are probably most applicable for assessing soil heating. Heat produced during burning is both dissipated upward into the atmosphere and radiated downward toward the soil and litter surface. If heat radiates directly on dry soil not having a litter layer,

the heat will be transmitted slowly into the soil. When thick litter layers are present, secondary combustion can occur in the litter, further contributing to soil heating.

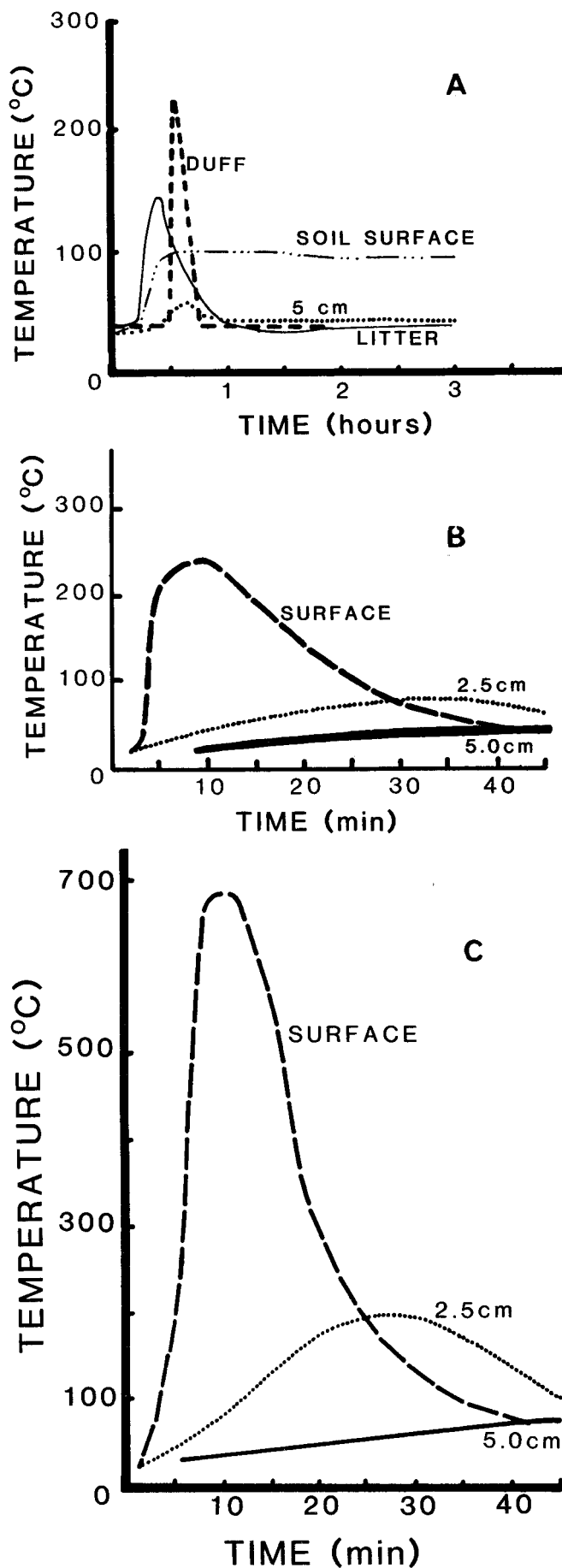
Soil heating can best be illustrated by a conceptual model depicting a soil profile being exposed to surface heating by energy radiated downward from the burning canopy. Although most of the energy generated during combustion is lost upward into the atmosphere, a small, but significant, quantity is absorbed at the soil surface and transmitted downward into the soil. It has been estimated that about 8 percent of the total energy released during a chaparral fire is transmitted into the underlying soil (DeBano 1974). Heat impinging on surface of a dry soil is transferred by particle-to-particle conduction and convection through soil pores. Heat transfer in wet soils is mainly by vaporization and condensation of water. Dry soil is an excellent insulating material, and heat is conducted into the underlying soil slowly. In contrast, wet soil conducts heat more rapidly at temperatures below the boiling point of water. Differences in heat capacity of dry and wet soil also exist, with wet soils absorbing more heat per degree of rise in temperature than dry soils, because water has a greater specific heat capacity than mineral soil.

Although abundant information is available on fire intensities in different vegetation types, only a few attempts have been made to develop mathematical models relating fire intensity to soil heating (Albini 1975; Aston and Gill 1976). These models have not been particularly successful and, as a result, semi-quantitative methods are being used instead. One such method for chaparral involves classifying fire intensity as light, moderate, or intense, based on the visual appearance of burned brush and litter (Wells and others 1979). After burning intensity has been placed in one of the above classes, soil heating can be estimated from curves developed by DeBano and others (1979b). These soil temperatures can then be used to predict changes that will be produced in different soil properties. Currently a slightly different approach is being developed for estimating N and P losses. This method is based on the relationship developed by Raison and others (1984) between nutrient loss and percent consumption of organic matter.

EFFECT OF HEATING ON SOILS

The spatial distribution of soil properties in a typical soil profile makes some properties

Figure 1--Soil and litter temperatures during A, a cool-burning prescribed forest fire; B, a low-intensity prescribed fire in chaparral; and C, a chaparral fire approaching wildfire intensities (DeBano 1979).



more vulnerable to surface heating than others. For example, living organisms and soil organic matter are concentrated at or near the soil surface and decrease exponentially with depth. Therefore, organic matter is directly exposed to heat radiated downward during a fire. As a result, soil chemical, physical, and microbiological properties most strongly related to organic matter are most susceptible to being changed by soil heating. For example, soil structure, cation exchange capacity, available nutrients, and microbial activity are all highly dependent upon organic matter, which begins changing chemically when heated to 200° C and is completely destroyed at 450° C (Hosking 1938). Cation exchange capacity of a soil depends not only on humus, but also on clay colloids. Humus is concentrated at, or near, the soil surface and thereby directly exposed to heating. In contrast, clay formed by pedogenic processes is usually concentrated deeper in the soil profile, although sometimes clays are found near the surface. Soil organic matter is also important for maintaining aggregate stability and soil structure, which in turn affects infiltration and other hydrologic properties of soils such as water repellency. Soil chemical properties most readily affected are total and available forms of N, P, and sulfur (S); and cation exchange capacity. Microbiological properties regulating input, loss, and availability of nutrients may also be significantly changed by soil heating. These include organic matter decomposition, N-fixation, and nitrification.

Soil Chemical Properties and Plant Nutrients

Fire acts as a rapid mineralizing agent that releases plant nutrients from organic fuel materials during combustion and deposits them in a highly available form in the ash on the soil surface (St. John and Rundel 1976). Large amounts of some nutrients such as N, S, and P can be volatilized during a fire (Raison and others 1984; Tiedemann 1987). Over 150 kg/ha of total N has been reported lost during a chaparral fire (DeBano and Conrad 1978). Cations such as calcium (Ca), magnesium (Mg), potassium (K), and sodium (Na) are not volatilized, although small amounts can be transferred from the site in smoke (Clayton 1976).

Although large amounts of total N and P are lost during burning, extractable ammonium-N and P are increased in the ash and upper soil layers (Christensen and Muller 1975; DeBano and others 1979a). Ammonium-N is highest immediately after burning, but is quickly converted to nitrate-N by nitrification. A study in Arizona showed ammonium-N in surface 0-2 cm layer was increased from 6 to 60 •g/g, nitrate-N remained at about 2 •g/g, and extractable P increased from 6 to 16 •g/g during a prescribed fire (DeBano, unpublished data³). Similar responses have been measured in California chaparral, but the levels of ammonium-N and nitrate-N are generally less

(Christensen and Muller 1975; DeBano and others 1979a). Available N and P produced during the fire increase the supply of available nutrient in the soil until plants become established and are able to utilize them. The elevated levels of available N and P found immediately after burning decrease to prefire levels in about 1 year.

Soil Physical Properties

Soil physical properties dependent on organic matter, such as soil structure and infiltration, are directly affected by fire. The destruction of soil structure reduces pore size and restricts infiltration. More importantly, burning decreases soil wettability (DeBano 1981). During fires, organic matter in the litter and upper soil layers is volatilized. Most of the volatilized organic matter is lost upward in the smoke, but a small amount moves downward into the soil and condenses to form a water-repellent layer that impedes infiltration. Downward movement of vaporized materials in soil occurs in response to steep temperature gradients present in the surface 5 cm of soil. The degree of water repellency formed depends on the steepness of temperature gradients near the soil surface, soil water content, and soil physical properties. For example, coarse-textured soils are more susceptible to heat-induced water repellency than finer textured clay soils. Water-repellent layers can totally restrict infiltration and produce runoff and erosion during the first rainy season following fire (DeBano 1981; Wells 1981).

Soil Microbiology and Seed Mortality

Soil heating directly affects microorganisms by either killing them directly or altering their reproductive capabilities. Indirectly, soil heating alters organic matter, increasing nutrient availability and stimulating microbial growth. Although the relationship between soil heating and microbial populations in soil is complex, it appears that duration of heating, maximum temperatures, and soil water all affect microbial responses (Dunn and others 1979, 1985). Microbial groups differ significantly in their sensitivity to temperature; they can be ranked in order of decreasing sensitivity as fungi>nitrite oxidizers>heterotrophic bacteria (Dunn and others 1985). Nitrifying bacteria appear to be particularly sensitive to soil heating; even the most resistant *Nitrosomonas* bacteria can be killed in dry soil at 140° C and in wet soil at 75° C (Dunn and others 1979). Physiologically active populations of microorganisms in moist soil are more sensitive than dormant populations in dry soil.

Soil heating during a fire affects postfire germination of seeds in the litter and upper soil layers. Germination of seeds produced by some chaparral brush species is stimulated by elevated temperatures during fire (Keeley 1987). Both

maximum temperatures and time of exposure affect survival and germination of ceanothus seeds (Barro and Poth 1988). As for microorganisms, lethal temperatures for seeds are lower in moist soils than in dry.

MANAGEMENT IMPLICATIONS

Postfire rehabilitation needs to address both short- and long-term fire effects on total nutrient losses (particularly N), changes in nutrient availability, decreased infiltration rates, and erosion.

Nutrient Losses

Although several plant nutrients are lost directly during combustion and by erosion following fire, N is most important because larger amounts are lost, and it is the most limiting nutrient in chaparral ecosystems (Hellmers et al. 1955). Therefore, postfire rehabilitation planning must consider mechanisms available for replenishing N to assure long-term productivity.

The amount of N lost during burning will vary depending upon the amount of aboveground biomass, litter, and soil organic matter pyrolyzed during a fire. Studies in California chaparral showed that 150 kg/ha of N were lost by volatilization and an additional 15 kg/ha by erosion after fire (DeBano and Conrad 1976, 1978). This loss represented about 11 percent of the N in plants, litter, and upper 10 cm of soil before burning. If this amount had been lost from the site during each fire over the many millennia during which chaparral vegetation has been evolving, and no mechanism existed for replenishing it, then the site would be completely devoid of N.

Several mechanisms are available for restoring N lost during a fire. These include input by bulk precipitation and N-fixing plants and microorganisms. Bulk precipitation is estimated to restore about 1.5 kg/ha annually, which is not sufficient to restore the N lost if it is assumed chaparral burns every 25 to 35 years (Ellis and others 1983). The annual input of N may be substantially greater in localized areas having large amounts of airborne N pollutants present such as the Los Angeles Basin. For example, Riggan and others (1985) found annual inputs of 23.3 and 8.2 kg/ha of N as canopy throughfall and bulk precipitation, respectively.

An important source of N replenishment appears to be by N-fixing microorganisms. It was initially thought that short-lived, nodulated legumes--deervetches and lupines--may replace a large amount of N lost during fire (DeBano and Conrad 1978). However, recent estimates of N-input by these legumes was only about one-half

that gained from precipitation (Poth and others 1988). Nitrogen fixation by asymbiotic organisms is also low, amounting to about 1 kg/ha annually. It now appears that the most likely source of ecosystem N is biological N-fixation by actinomycete-nodulated shrubs such as birchleaf mountainmahogany and perhaps ceanothus (*Ceanothus leucodermis*). However, a paradox still exists regarding N loss during a fire, production of highly available N, and the role of N-fixing legumes in restoring N after fire. Although large amounts of total N are lost, high concentrations of available N are present on the soil surface immediately following burning. The problem is further complicated because N-fixation by legumes is suppressed by high concentrations of available N. Furthermore, poorly aerated soil may lead to denitrification, which further increases N losses resulting from fire. Therefore, it becomes important in postfire planning to favor establishment of N-fixing shrubs, which can effectively fix N after the high levels of available N released during the fire have been immobilized. Both ammonium-N and nitrate-N generally drop to prefire levels within a year following fire.

Another postfire rehabilitation treatment that can affect N-fixation is competition among introduced plants used for erosion control, and native plants. For example, reseeding annual grasses may compete with either short-lived legumes immediately after fire or, more importantly, with seedling establishment of longer term N-fixers--mountainmahogany and ceanothus--or even sprouting species (Conrad and DeBano 1974). Undesirable competition by reseeded grasses after fire would probably affect N replenishment in California chaparral more adversely than in Arizona because short-lived legumes are absent immediately after fire in Arizona. Longer term effects of grass on shrubs should be similar in the two ecosystems because both ecosystems contain both mountainmahogany and ceanothus.

Nutrient Availability

The question frequently arises whether there is a need to fertilize as part of postfire rehabilitation. Fertility assessment trials show burned soils have a greater available N supply than unburned soils (Vlams and others 1955). Similarly, N fertilizer responses were not detectable on field plots immediately following fire (DeBano and Conrad 1974). Postfire responses to P fertilizers are more variable because some soils can rapidly fix available P produced during burning (Vlams and others 1955; DeBano and Klopatek 1988). The preponderance of research results seems to indicate that fertilization is probably not a desirable treatment immediately following burning. In fact, fertilization may have a depressing effect on N fixation because additional amounts of highly available N are added to already high

levels produced by burning. Also, the high levels of available N following fire could lead to increased denitrification in poorly aerated soils. The advisability of P fertilization is less clear but it may, be of little advantage in those soils that irreversibly fix available P. In summary, fertilizing in the "ash" is not a recommended postfire treatment, and fertilizers should not be applied for at least 1 year following burning.

Erosion

There are limited opportunities for preventing, or reducing, erosion on chaparral soils burned during wildfire conditions. Grass reseeding has been widely used in postfire rehabilitation. The usefulness of ryegrass reseeding for postfire erosion reduction has not been clearly established because of the limited opportunities for grass to become established before active erosion occurs during the first year following fire. It is also extremely difficult to design studies clarifying the relationship between grass establishment and erosion because of the high variation encountered under field conditions (Barro and Conard 1987). Ryegrass competition may also indirectly interfere with establishing native plants following fire and, as a result, contribute to long-term erosion. Establishment of a dense grass cover on burned sites may also increase the volume of fine dead fuels by the end of the first growing season, thereby making these areas more susceptible to ignition and early reburns.

The judicious use of prescribed fire could potentially provide a viable technique for minimizing erosion resulting from wildfires. Prescribed fire is being advocated as a tool in southern California for reducing wildfire severity by creating uneven-age stands that break up continuous fuel loads necessary for sustaining large-scale wildfires (Florence 1987). Replacing intense, widespread wildfires with cooler burning prescribed fires would reduce fire impacts on soils. Not only would plant nutrient loss be reduced, but burning under cooler conditions and over moist soils would reduce the severity of water repellency and postfire erosion (DeBano 1981). This management concept is also consistent with developing brush-grass mosaics for water augmentation in Arizona chaparral (Bolander 1982).

CONCLUDING COMMENTS

Both wild and prescribed fires occur frequently in Arizona and California chaparral. Although these two ecosystems evolved into different floristic entities, they share many common attributes in their response to fire. From limited comparative data for Arizona and California, it appears that fire has a similar effect on physical, chemical, and biological soil properties in both ecosystems.

Soil chemical, physical, and microbiological properties most strongly interrelated with organic matter are most susceptible to being changed by soil heating. Soil structure, cation exchange capacity, available nutrients, and microbial activity are all highly dependent upon organic matter, which is completely destroyed at 450° C. Fire also acts as a rapid mineralizing agent releasing plant nutrients from organic fuels during combustion and depositing them in a highly available form on the soil surface. Substantial amounts of N, S, and P can be lost during combustion. Replenishment of N losses is an important part of postfire rehabilitation planning. Treatments interfering with postfire establishment of N-fixing plants should be avoided; particularly important is the competition between reseeded grasses and naturally occurring N-fixing plants.

Burning increases the availability of most plant nutrients. Although total N is lost, available ammonium-N and P increase substantially as a result of burning. High levels of available plant nutrients immediately after burning make fertilizing for at least 1 year following fire impractical.

In the final analysis, the judicious use of prescribed fire has an important role in managing chaparral ecosystems in both Arizona and California. Prescribed fire can be used as a technique for reducing the probability of catastrophic wildfires. Improved wildlife habitat, better access, and increased water production also result from well-planned prescribed burning programs. Certain precautions must be taken during postfire treatments, however, to assure the continued long-term productivity of these ecosystems.

REFERENCES

- Albini, Frank A. 1975. An attempt (and failure) to correlate duff removal and slash fire heat. Gen. Tech. Rep. INT-24. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 16 p.
- Aston, A.R; Gill, A.M. 1976. Coupled soil moisture, heat and water vapour transfers undersimulated fire conditions. Australian Journal of Soil Research 14(1): 55-66.
- Axelrod, Daniel I. 1958. Evolution of the Madro-tertiary geoflora. Botanical Review 24(7): 433-509.
- Barro, Susan C.; Conard, Susan G. 1987. Use of ryegrass seeding as an emergency revegetation measure in chaparral ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-102. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.
- Barro, Susan C.; Poth, Mark. 1988. Differences in seed heat survival of sprouting and seeding chaparral Ceanothus species. Unpublished draft supplied by author.

- Bolander, Donald H. 1982. Chaparral in Arizona. In: Conrad, C.E., and Oechel, W.C., tech. coords. Proceedings of the symposium on dynamics and management of Mediterranean-type ecosystems; 1982 June 22-26; San Diego, CA. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-58. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 60-63.
- Christensen, Norman L.; Muller, Cornelius, H. 1975. Effects of fire on factors controlling plant growth in *Adenostoma* chaparral. *Ecological Monographs* 45(1): 29-55.
- Clayton, James L. 1976. Nutrient gains to adjacent ecosystems during a forest fire: an evaluation. *Forest Science* 22(2): 162-166.
- Conrad, C. Eugene; DeBano, Leonard F. 1974. Recovery of southern California chaparral. In: Proceedings of ASCE National Meeting on Water Resources Engineering; 1974 January 21-25; Los Angeles, CA: American Society of Civil Engineers Meeting Preprint 2167; 14 p.
- DeBano, L.F. 1974. Chaparral soils. In: Proceedings of the Symposium on living with the Chaparral. 1973 March 30-31; University of California, Riverside, CA. San Francisco, CA: Sierra Club Special Publication; 19-26.
- DeBano, L.F. 1979. Effects of fire on soil properties. In: California forest soils. Priced Publication 4094. Berkeley, CA: Division of Agricultural Sciences, University of California; 109-118.
- DeBano, Leonard F. 1981. Water repellent soils: a state-of-the-art. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-46. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 21 p.
- DeBano, Leonard F. 1988. Effect of fire on the soil resource in Arizona Chaparral. Unpublished draft.
- DeBano, Leonard F.; Conrad, C. Eugene 1974. Effect of a wetting agent and nitrogen fertilizer on establishment of ryegrass and mustard on a burned watershed. *Journal of Range Management* 27(1): 57-60.
- DeBano, L.F.; Conrad, C.E. 1976. Nutrients lost in debris and runoff water from a burned chaparral watershed. In: Proceedings of the Third Federal Inter-Agency Sedimentation Conference; 1976 March; Denver CO. Washington, DC: Water Resource Council; 3-13 to 3-27.
- DeBano, L.F.; Conrad, C.E. 1978. The effects of fire on nutrients in a chaparral ecosystem. *Ecology* 59(3): 489-497.
- DeBano, Leonard F.; Klopatek, Jeffrey M. 1988. Phosphorus dynamics of pinyon-juniper soils following simulated burning. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 52(1): 271-277.
- DeBano, Leonard F.; Eberlein, Gary E.; Dunn, Paul H. 1979a. Effects of burning on chaparral soils: I. Soil nitrogen. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 43(3): 504-509.
- DeBano, Leonard F.; Rice, Raymond M.; Conrad, C. Eugene 1979b. Soil Heating in chaparral fires: effects on soil properties, plant nutrients, erosion, and runoff. Res. Paper PSW-145. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 21 p.
- Dunn, Paul H.; Barro, Susan C.; Poth, Mark. 1985. Soil moisture affects survival of microorganisms in heated chaparral soil. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry* 17(2): 143-148.
- Dunn, Paul H.; DeBano, Leonard F.; Eberlein, Gary E. 1979. Effects of burning on chaparral soils: II. Soil microbes and nitrogen mineralization. *Soil Science Society of America Journal* 43(3): 509-514.
- Ellis, Barbara A., Verfaillie, Joseph R.; Kummerow, Jochen. 1983. Nutrient gain from wet and dry atmospheric deposition and rainfall acidity in southern California chaparral. *Oecologia* 60(1): 118-121.
- Florence, Melanie. 1987. Plant succession on prescribed burn sites in chamise chaparral. *Rangelands* 9(3): 119-122.
- Hellmers, H.; Bonner, J.F.; Kelleher, J.M. 1955. Soil fertility: A watershed management problem in the San Gabriel mountains of southern California. *Soil Science* 80(3): 189-197.
- Hibbert, Alden R.; Davis, Edwin A.; Scholl, David G. 1974. Chaparral conversion potential in Arizona: Part I: Water yield response and effects on other resources. Res. Paper RM-126. Fort Collins, CO: Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experimental Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 35 P.
- Horton, Jerome S. 1941. The sample plot as a method of quantitative analysis of chaparral vegetation in southern California. *Ecology* 22(4): 457-468.
- Hosking, J.S. 1938. The ignition at low temperatures of the organic matter in soils. *Journal of Agricultural Science* 28(3): 393-400.
- Keeley, Jon E. 1987. Role of fire in seed germination of woody taxa in California chaparral. *Ecology* 68(2): 443.
- Knipe, O.D.; Pase, C.P.; Carmichael, R.S. 1979. Plants of the Arizona chaparral. Gen. Tech. Rep. RM-64. Fort Collins, CO: Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experimental Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 54 p.
- Mooney, H.A.; Parsons D.J. 1973. Structure and function of California chaparral-An example from San Dimas. In: diCasta, F. and Mooney, H.A., ed. *Ecological Studies, Analysis and Synthesis*. Vol. 7; 83-112.
- Mooney, H.A.; Rundel, P.W. 1979. Nutrient relations of the evergreen shrub, *Adenostoma fasciculatum*, in the California chaparral. *Botanical Gazette* 140(1): 109-113.
- Pase, Charles P. 1972. Litter production by oak-mountainmahogany chaparral in central Arizona. Res. Note RM-214. Fort Collins, CO: Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experimental Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 7 p.

- Poth, Mark; Dunn, Paul H.; Burk, Jack H. 1988. Does legume N₂ fixation balance the chaparral nitrogen budget?" Unpublished draft supplied by author.
- Raison, R.J.; Khanna, P.K.; Woods, P.V. 1984. Mechanisms of element transfer to the atmosphere during vegetation fires. *Canadian Journal of Forestry Research* 15(1): 132-140.
- Riggan, Philip J.; Lockwood, Roberta N.; Lopez, Ernest N. 1985. Deposition and processing of airborne nitrogen pollutants in Mediterranean-type ecosystems of Southern California. *Environmental Science and Technology* 19(9): 781-789.
- St. John, Theodore V.; Rundel, Philip W. 1976. The role of fire as a mineralizing agent in a Sierran coniferous forest. *Oecologia* 25(1): 35-45.
- Tiedemann, A.R. 1987. Combustion losses of sulfur from forest foliage and litter. *Forest Science* 33(1): 216-223.
- Tyrrel, Robert R. 1982. Chaparral in southern California. In: Conrad, C.E. and Oechel, W.C., tech. coords. *Proceedings of the symposium on dynamics and management of Mediterranean-type ecosystems*; 1982 June 22-26; San Diego, CA Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-58. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 56-59.
- Vlamis, J.; Biswell, H.H.; Schultz, A.M. 1955. Effects of prescribed burning on soil fertility in second growth ponderosa pine. *Journal of Forestry* 53(2): 905-909.
- Wells, C.G.; Campbell, R.E.; DeBano, L.F.; and others. 1979. Effects of fire on soil: A state-of-knowledge review. Gen. Tech. Rep. W0-7. Washington, D.C.: Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 34 p.
- Wells, Wade G. II. 1981. Some effects of brushfires on erosion processes in coastal southern California. In: *Erosion and sediment transport in Pacific Rim steepplands*. 1981 January; Christ Church, New Zealand. Sponsored jointly by the Royal Society of New Zealand, New Zealand Hydrological Society, IAHS, and the National Water and Soil Conservation Authority of New Zealand. *International Association of Hydrologic Publication Sciences* 132; 305-342.
- Wieslander, A.E.; Gleason, Clark H. 1954. Major brushland areas of the coast ranges and Sierra-Cascade foothills in California. Misc. Paper No. 15. Berkeley, CA: California Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 9 p.

Soil Hydraulic Characteristics of a Small Southwest Oregon Watershed Following High-Intensity Wildfires¹

David S. Parks and Terrance W. Cundy²

Abstract: The Angel Fire of September, 1987 caused extensive damage to second growth forest in the south fork drainage of Cow Creek, 55 km northeast of Grant's Pass, Oregon, USA. The fire was characterized by a high-intensity burn over areas of steep topography. The areal distribution of soil hydraulic properties in a small, tributary watershed following high-intensity wildfire is examined using tests of infiltration capacity, saturated hydraulic conductivity, and soil moisture characteristics. Also, measures of soil water-repellency are determined. Soil hydraulic properties are evaluated for logged and forested slopes up to 30 degrees. Results indicate a relatively small effect of high-intensity wildfire on the generation of water-repellent soils and the hydrologic response of this watershed.

This study characterized the soil hydraulic properties of a small watershed in southwest Oregon that experienced high intensity wildfire. Of particular interest is the degree to which the wildfire produced water-repellent soils.

STUDY SITE

The study site (fig. 1) is in southwest Oregon, 55 km northeast of Grant's Pass. It consists of a 1.3 km², first and second-order drainage on the south fork of Cow Creek. The site ranges in elevation between 975 and 1340 m with maximum slope angles approaching 30 degrees.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Research Assistant, and Associate Professor, respectively, College of Forest Resources, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington.



Figure 1--Study Site Location

Vegetation within the study area is Douglas fir and mixed pine forest with an understory of grasses, ferns, forbs, and shrubs. Vegetation on the study site has been largely removed by road building, logging, and wildfire.

Soils in the study basin can generally be described as stony clay-loam, derived from moderately competent serpentine bedrock. In forested areas, the soil is covered with an organic litterlayer of 1.5 to 7.5 cm.

SAMPLING PLAN

Soil samples were taken from four areas (Fig. 2), consisting of a forested erosion pin plot, a logged erosion pin plot, an undisturbed forested control area and an area of mixed landcover types. All sites except the control site were burned by wildfire in September 1987; fieldwork was conducted February 25-28, 1988.

Field inspection of the soils showed no obvious hydrophobic layer; accordingly, sampling was confined to the upper 10 cm of the soil profile.

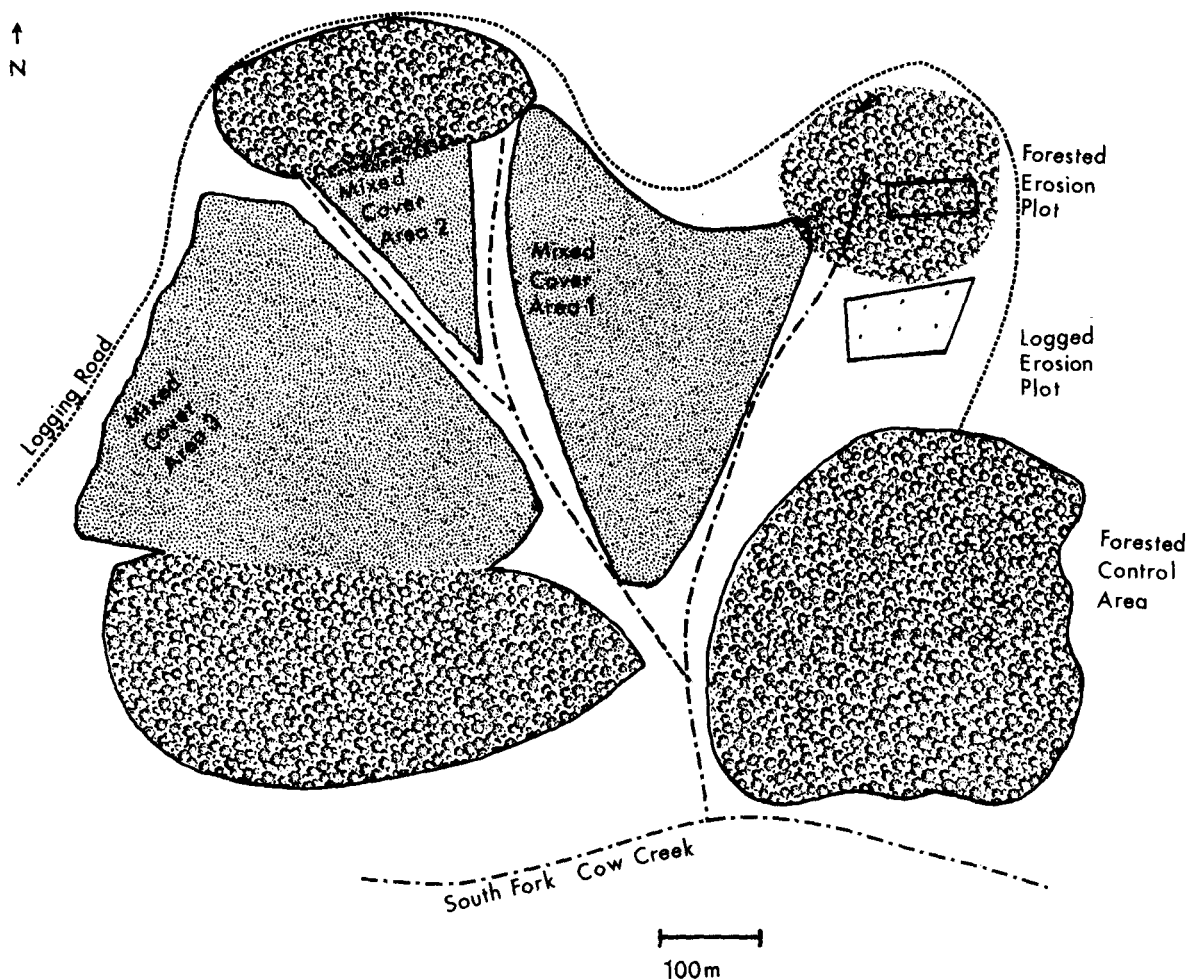


Figure 2--Study basin diagram showing sampling areas.

The two erosion pin plots were sampled on their perimeter at 10-m intervals. The control site was randomly sampled, as was the mixed landcover area.

The soil sampling procedure used a gravity soil corer that retrieves a soil cylinder of 68.7 cm³ (5.4 cm diameter x 3 cm height). Infiltrometer measurements were limited to the two erosion pin plots.

METHODS OF ANALYSIS

Field Measurements

Infiltration capacity was measured using a single-ring ponding infiltrrometer (Hills 1970). The ring was 10.2 cm in diameter and a constant head of 1.27 cm of water was used. Field data consist of time (t) versus cumulative infiltration (F) in cm.

Laboratory Measurements

Parameters measured by laboratory experiment included bulk density, saturated water content, saturated hydraulic conductivity, water drop penetration, and soil moisture-capillary pressure changes.

Bulk density (gm/cm³) was determined by drying the cores at 105° C for 24 hours and weighing. Bulk soil volume of the samples was 68.7 cm³.

Saturated water content was determined by saturating the soil cores with water for 24 hours. The cores were then removed from the water, allowed to drain for 30 minutes, and weighed. Moisture contents are reported as volume of water per bulk volume of soil.

Saturated hydraulic conductivity (cm/hr) was determined using a constant head device with 3 cm of water depth.

The desorption soil moisture-capillary pressure curves were determined with a pressure plate. Soil water content at 0, 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.5, 1, 3, 10 and 15 bars were determined by progressively weighing and drying the cores. Data (fig.3) are reported as volume of water per volume of bulk soil versus pressure.

Water drop penetration is a test of the water repellency of soils. Letey (1968) describes the test, which consists of applying a small quantity of water to the soil and measuring the time until the water is absorbed. We conducted the test using oven-dried soils and applying 1 cm³ of water. Absorption times are reported in seconds.

RESULTS AND CONCLUSIONS

Results of the laboratory analyses are shown in table 1. Values for all areas and transects sampled were compared statistically to those from the control plot, using a two-sample t-test for means and an F-test for variances (Snedecor and Cochran 1967). As can be seen from table 1, there are few statistically significant differences. The majority of the significant differences are in variances and seem to reflect an overall homogenization of burned sites compared to the unburned control; in nearly all cases the variance of properties measured in the burned sites was less than that measured on the control.

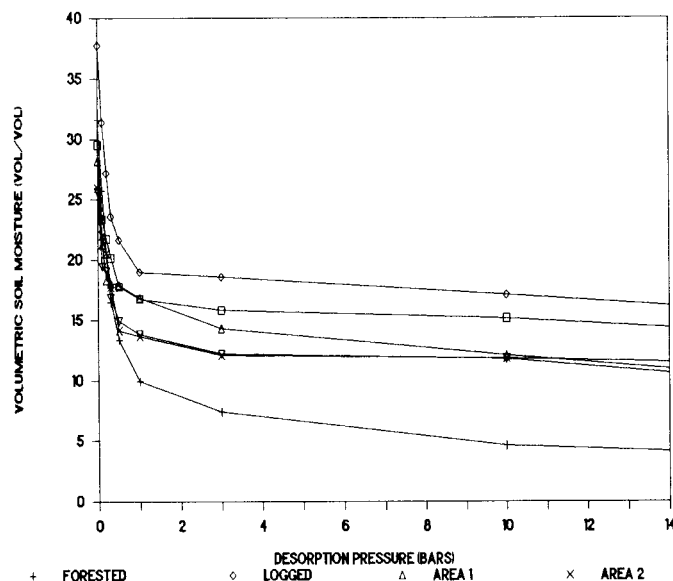


Figure 3-- Median capillary pressure changes by location

Control Area

Saturated hydraulic conductivities measured in this area are the highest measured in the study basin with a mean of 78.9 cm/hr. These data also point out the extreme variation characteristic of this property; the coefficient of variation is near unity.

Bulk density values for the control area are the highest measured in the basin with an average of 1.04 gm/cm³, though only slightly larger than the other areas sampled. Saturated water contents for the control area had a mean value of 41.4, near the middle of the values for the other areas, and a standard deviation of 8.65, the second highest value overall.

Soil water-capillary pressure curve data measured for the control area show a relatively strong ability of the soil to hold water under tension, and may be a result of the high clay content of the soil underlying the surface organic layer in this area.

Statistics of water drop penetration times for the control area are found in table 1. While these values are not high when compared to those for extremely water-repellent soils, they do indicate a moderate degree of water repellency (DeBano 1981). The infiltration capacity of the control area exceeds rainfall intensities and should yield little surface runoff.

Surface erosion on the control area should be minimal and most likely be a result of windthrow and resulting soil disturbance. Landsliding may contribute sediment to streams if the subsurface flow of water is sufficient to cause saturation of the soil mass.

Forested Erosion Plot

Results of the field infiltration tests are given in table 1. The infiltration rates are generally quite high (150+ cm/hr for the short times tested) and quite variable between runs (infiltration capacities at different points for the same time vary by a factor of 2 to 5). Excavation around the infiltrometers following the test showed the flow from the infiltrometer was largely downhill and occurred above a clayey horizon found at an approximated depth of 3 to 9 cm.

Hydraulic conductivity is high and extremely variable (nearly two orders of magnitude); this is consistent with the ring infiltration measurements made on the site and the hydraulic conductivities from the control site. While the hydraulic conductivities are approximately one-third less on this plot than the control plot, they are not statistically different than

Table 1--Summary statistics by sample location

Sample sites	¹ N	² Ks	³ Bd	⁴ SWC	⁵ IR	⁶ WDPT
		cm/hr	gm/cm ³	pct.vol	cm/hr	sec
Control	10	⁷ 78.9 ⁸ 78.8	1.04 .177	41.4 8.65	N.A. N.A.	164 290
Forested	26	55.2 45.5*	.921* .137*	50.0* 6.90	209 166	2 .385*
Logged	25	33.7 34.3*	1.03 .102*	51.1* 9.21	205 126	80 180
Area #1	15	37.7 23.4*	.925 .074*	36.6 8.27	N.A. N.A.	300 953*
Area #2	7	34.1 16.0*	1.03 .030*	35.3 4.66	N.A. N.A.	7 12*
Area #3	9	31.4 11.8*	1.02 .027*	34.0 7.00	N.A. N.A.	405 1200*

¹Number of samples measured²Saturated Hydraulic Conductivity³Bulk Density⁴Saturated Water Content⁵Infiltration Rate⁶Water Drop Penetration Time⁷Sample Average,⁸Standard Deviation* = indicates significant difference than control value
at alpha = 0.05

the control plot, and still larger than rainfall intensities.

Bulk densities are low, and saturated moisture contents are high, reflecting the open structure typical of forest soils. The saturated moisture content values are significantly different from the control plot values.

Statistics of water drop penetration are shown in table 1. Penetration times are nearly instantaneous, indicating the absence of water repellency.

The results above indicate that the runoff processes on the forested plot will probably not be significantly altered by the fire. Infiltration capacities and hydraulic conductivities are high, leading to the conclusion that the system is dominated by subsurface flow; this is typical of forested sites and identical to the conclusion for the control site. Overland flow, if it occurs, would be by saturation of the soil.

Erosion on this plot should occur as some surface wash and shallow piping if saturation overland flow occurs. Since this plot still had significant organic cover we expect raindrop splash and surface sealing to be unimportant.

Logged Erosion Plot

Results of the field infiltration tests for the logged erosion plot (table 1) are almost identical to the results for

the forested plot discussed above, indicating that little surface runoff is to be expected.

Saturated hydraulic conductivities measured on the logged plot (table 1) are lower than the control plot, though not statistically significant. While these conductivities are well above expected rainfall intensities, they possibly indicate an effect of log skidding. Bulk density of the logged plot falls between the forested plot and the control area. Saturated water contents for the logged plot are significantly higher than the control plot.

Soil moisture-capillary pressure curve data for the logged plot show the highest water retention of all areas. This may be a result of the surface disturbance by log skidding and the exposure of the clayey subsoil.

Water drop penetration times for the logged erosion plot are higher than the forested erosion plot but lower than the control area. According to DeBano (1981) this soil would be classified as moderately water repellent, like that of the control area.

Results obtained for the logged erosion plot indicate that this area has been moderately affected by logging and fire. The expected runoff response of this plot is likely to be subsurface although some surface runoff may occur where the clayey subsoil is exposed. No organic

horizon is found in this area, and erosion from raindrop splash is expected. This may in turn cause surface sealing and further surface runoff.

Area Transects

The soils data for the three transects are very similar to those for the other plots; as part of the overall logged and burned area they exhibit mean saturated hydraulic conductivity values nearly identical to those for the logged erosion pin plot.

The saturated water contents are the lowest reported. The water penetration time data show significant variation both within and between transects. The within-transect variation might be explained by the disturbance associated with logging and the removal and redistribution of organic matter. The between-area variation may reflect the differences in fire intensity over the watershed. For example, area 2, which has the smallest penetration times, appears to have been only lightly burned. Area 1 appeared in the field to have been heavily burned. Area 3 appeared to have areas of both heavy and light burning.

Again using the classification scheme of DeBano (1981), soils in areas 1 and 3 would be considered moderately water repellent, while those in area 2 would be considered slightly repellent.

The results above indicate that soils in areas 1 and 3 are somewhat water repellent. This condition, with the removal of surface organic matter, may lead to some Horton overland flow in response to high-intensity storms falling on dry soils. The hydraulic conductivities are still high compared to rainfall rates, indicating that when the soils are wet, subsurface flow paths will dominate.

Erosion on the area areas will likely be a mix of raindrop splash and sheetwash during the summer. Landsliding may still be important during winter on steeper parts of the watershed.

SUMMARY

A study of soil hydraulic properties was conducted on a small watershed in southwest Oregon to evaluate the effects

of wildfire on hydrologic response and erosion.

Results of the analyses indicate a small effect of high intensity fire in causing some moderately water repellent soils over some areas of the watershed. This effect will most likely be seen as some sheetwash during summer periods of high intensity rain on dry soils. Runoff response during wet periods will likely be dominated by subsurface flow paths.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Jack Schimdt, Holly Martinson and Garry Gallino, Geological Survey, U.S. Department of the Interior, for their assistance with the development of our sampling scheme and for logistical support in the field; and Doug Tompkins, Middlebury College, Middlebury, Vermont, for his assistance in the field. This study was supported by Grant 191336, Geological Survey, U.S. Department of Interior.

REFERENCES

- DeBano, L.F. 1968. Water Movement in Water Repellant Soils. In: Water Repellent Soils, Proceedings of the Symposium on Water Repellent Soils. May 6-10, 1968, University of California, Riverside.
- DeBano, L.F. 1981. Water Repellent Soils: A State of the Art. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-46, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experimental Station., Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Berkeley, Ca.
- Hills, Rodney C. 1970. The Determination of the Infiltration Capacity of Field Soils Using the Cylinder Infiltrometer. British Geomorphological Research Group Technical Bulletin 3.
- Letey, J. 1968. Measurement of the Contact Angle, Waterdrop Penetration Time, and Critical Surface Tension. In: Water Repellent Soils, Proceedings of the Symposium on Water Repellent Soils. May 6-10, 1968, University of California, Riverside.
- Snedecor, George W. and Cochran, William G. 1967. Statistical Methods. Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa.

Frequency of Floods from a Burned Chaparral Watershed¹

Iraj Nasser²

Abstract: Effects of brush fire on hydrologic characteristics of chaparral watersheds were analyzed. An unburned chaparral produces moderate surface runoff. The vegetation promotes infiltration by retarding the runoff and providing temporary storage during intense rainfall. The hydrologic characteristics of chaparral watershed, however, are drastically changed by fires. The high rate of runoff following brush fires may result from the combined effects of denudation and formation of a water-repellent soil layer beneath the ground surface. This layer greatly decreases infiltration rates and reduces the hydrologically active portion of the watershed. Infiltration tests were performed on burned and unburned watersheds with similar soil types. The test results for the selected sites showed that for simulated rainfall intensities of one-inch per hour or more, the average ratio of runoff rate to rainfall intensity could be two times as great for the burned as for the unburned condition. To simulate floods following a brush fire, the Stanford Watershed Model was calibrated to a burned watershed using the hydrologic data of the postfire period. The floods were simulated by postulating scenarios that historical storms may occur following a brush fire. The study showed that the moderate storms may produce floods of considerable magnitude under a burned condition.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Head of Planning, Hydraulic/Water Conservation Division, Los Angeles County Department of Public Works, Alhambra, Calif.

Chaparral watersheds in Southern California burn as often as every 30 years (Muller and others 1968). Fire suppression efforts have had partial success in containing the periodic intense wildfires that occur, but the number of fires and the total acreage burned annually remain quite high. The number of fires and the burned acreage for Los Angeles County within the past five years are shown below:

Year:	Number of Fires	Burned areas (acres) ¹
1983	32	3,150
1984	22	17,400
1985	36	9,560
1986	47	10,909
1987	136	12,921

¹Acre = .405 hectare

An unburned chaparral watershed generally produces moderate surface runoff. The vegetation promotes infiltration by retarding the runoff and providing temporary storage during intense rainfall. High infiltration and the retention capacity of chaparral leave little water available for surface runoff. The hydrologic characteristics of chaparral watersheds, however, are drastically changed by fires. The high rate of runoff following brush fires in the chaparral watershed is attributed to the combined effects of denudation and formation of a water-repellent soil layer beneath the ground surface. This layer greatly decreases infiltration rates and reduces the hydrologically active portion of the watershed from a meter or more to a thickness to only a few centimeters (DeBano and others 1979).

RUNOFF CHARACTERISTICS OF A BURNED WATERSHED

To study the effects of a brush fire on the rate of surface runoff, infiltrometer tests were performed on selected sites of the watershed in La Canada burned by the Crest fire on January 1984. The surface runoff was produced over a controlled plot by simulating rainfall of different intensities. The runoff rates were measured and expressed in terms of runoff coefficient defined as the ratio of runoff rate to rainfall intensity. These tests were repeated on similar soil types in the same area under unburned conditions. In the plot of two sets of runoff coefficients against rainfall intensity (fig. 1), the difference between the two sets of runoff coefficients is quite significant. For rainfall intensities of 1 inch per hour or more, the average runoff coefficients may be two times as great for the burned as for the unburned condition.

To study the hydrologic characteristics of a burned watershed, the Santa Anita Dam watershed with a drainage area of 10.8 square miles (27.47 Km²) and a tributary to the Los Angeles River was selected. From December 27, 1953 to January 3, 1954, the disastrous

Table 1 - - Comparison of historical storms with the postfire storm of January 19, 1954.

Storm	Maximum intensities in./hr.	Storm rainfall in.	Peaks cfs	Volume of runoff ac-ft.
2-2-36	.76	5.39	185	112
1-7-40	.75	4.63	385	128
1-19-54	.89	5.46	1610	540

Table 2 - - Comparison of historical storms with the postfire storm of January 24, 1954.

Storm	Maximum intensities in./hr.	Storm rainfall in.	Peaks cfs	Volume of runoff ac-ft.
12-26-36	1.34	6.42	265	241
11-11-49	.98	6.35	62	5
1-24-54	.83	7.83	1415	530

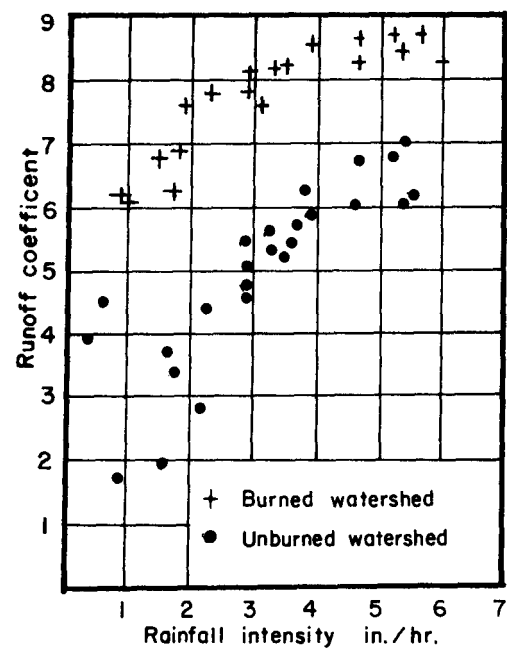


Figure 1 - - Runoff Coefficients under burned and unburned watersheds.

Monrovia peak fire, in the San Gabriel Mountains, burned 97 percent of the drainage area. This nearly complete burn, coupled with relatively good controls and records at the dam site, set the stage for obtaining data on the runoff following a brush fire.

On January 18-19, 1954, a storm produced water and debris flow on the watershed. A week later, on January 24-25, 1954, a second storm also produced water and debris flow, although of smaller magnitude. These two storms were of volume and range of intensities which had occurred in the past, so that some valid comparisons could be made under burned and unburned conditions (tables 1 and 2). The rainfall distributions and the hydrographs produced by the postfire storms of January 1954 and the comparable storms are shown in figures 2 and 3. The comparison of peak flows shows that a burned watershed may produce a peak flow several times greater than that of an unburned watershed.

Hydrologic Modeling of a Burned Watershed

To simulate major floods following the brush fires, the Stanford Watershed Model (Crawford and Linsley 1966) was calibrated to the Santa Anita Dam watershed using the hydrologic data of the

postfire period (1953-55). The Stanford Watershed Model is a conceptual model consisting of a series of mathematical expressions which describe the hydrologic processes of a drainage basin. The model uses hourly rainfall and evapotranspiration as input data. Interception, surface retention, infiltration, overland flow, interflow, groundwater flow, and soil moisture storage are simulated to calculate inflow to the channel, and routing is used to simulate the channel system. The model is calibrated by trial until the observed flows are reproduced adequately. Three recording rain gages, one stream gage, and one evaporation station were used in the calibration of the model (fig. 4).

Several runs, each with a different set of parameters, were used to calibrate the model to the watershed under the burned conditions. The first storm following the Monrovia peak fire produced debris flow and surface runoff. Since the model should be calibrated against runoff data, the first storm, which produced debris flow, was excluded from the calibration process. The parameter of the lower zone storage in the model was found to be very small for the burned watershed. This would confirm the theory of formation of a repellent soil layer in a burned watershed.

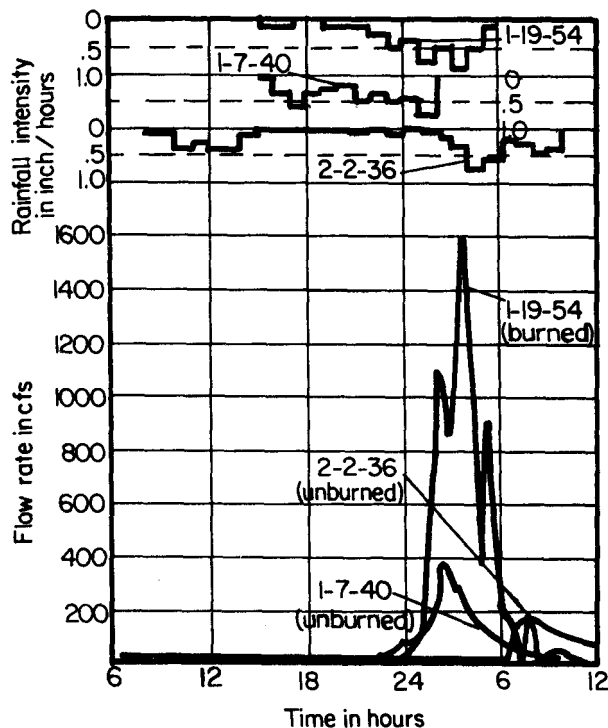


Figure 2 - - Recorded hydrographs under burned and unburned watersheds.

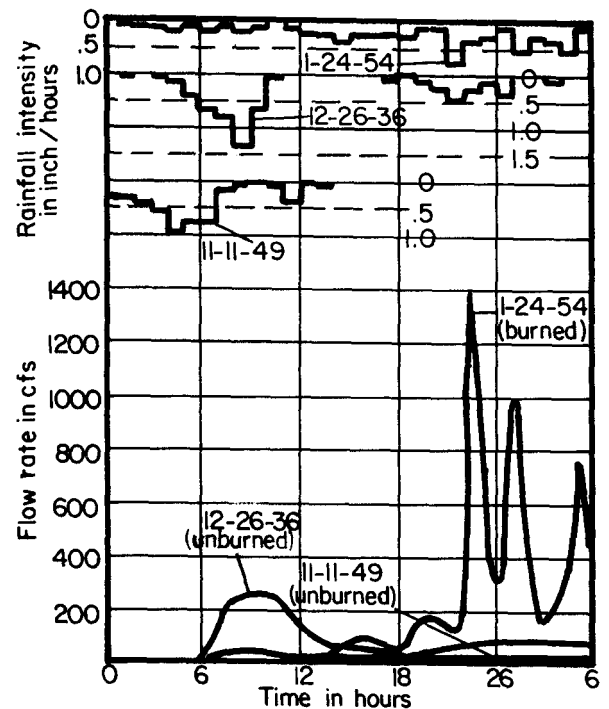


Figure 3 - - Recorded hydrographs under burned and unburned watersheds.

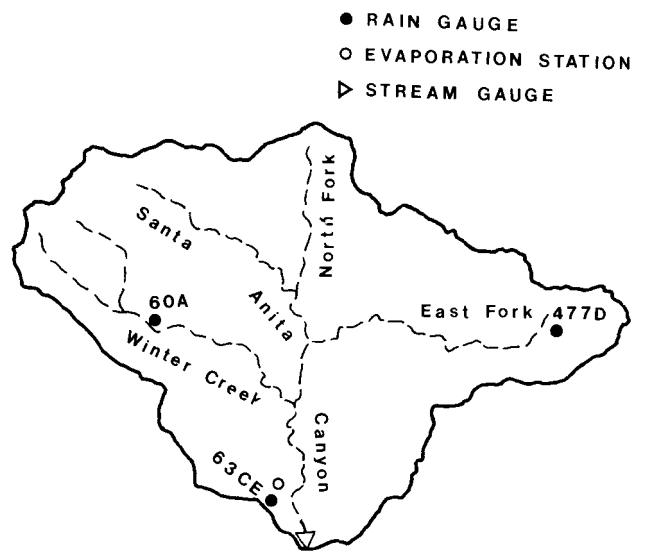


Figure 4 - - Santa Anita Dam watershed with gage location.

Frequency of Floods in a Burned Watershed

Annual peak flow data are available as far as back as 1931. The data were checked for consistency and homogeneity. The data during the recovery period (1954-1963) in which the watershed is under dynamic change were not included in flood

frequency analysis. The recovery period for the burned watershed was estimated from historical fires in Los Angeles County drainage area. The Log-Pearson method was used to develop the flood frequency plot (fig. 5) for Santa Anita Dam watershed.

The Stanford Watershed Model along with the flood frequency plot can be used to predict floods from burned watersheds and their corresponding recurrence intervals. To demonstrate the application, two historical storms, one with moderate intensity and volume (storm of 1982-83), and one with extreme intensity (storm 1968-1969), were postulated to occur following a brush fire in the Santa Anita Dam watershed. Records show that these two storms have produced floods of moderate and extreme magnitudes in some areas of Los Angeles County. These two storms were used as input to the Stanford Watershed Model calibrated to the burned watershed and the floods were simulated as output from the model.

To make a probabilistic comparison, the floods resulted from above storms on burned and unburned watersheds were expressed in terms of their recurrence intervals (table 3). The results show that the magnitude of flood from the extreme storm of 1968-69 on burned watershed is not significantly different from the flood from the unburned watershed. However, the increase of six percent in the magnitude of the flood tends to change the recurrence interval from 30 years to 50 years. The moderate storm of 1982-83 appears to react more significantly on the burned watershed. The magnitude of flood from the burned watershed is increased by 200 percent and the recurrence interval changes from six years to 25 years.

Table 3 - - Comparison of floods produced under burned and unburned conditions.

Storm	Unburned watershed		Burned watershed	
	Observed Floods cfs	Return period yr.	Simulated Flows cfs	Return period yr.
1-25-69	5,500	30	5,850	50
3-2-83	1,200	6	3,600	25

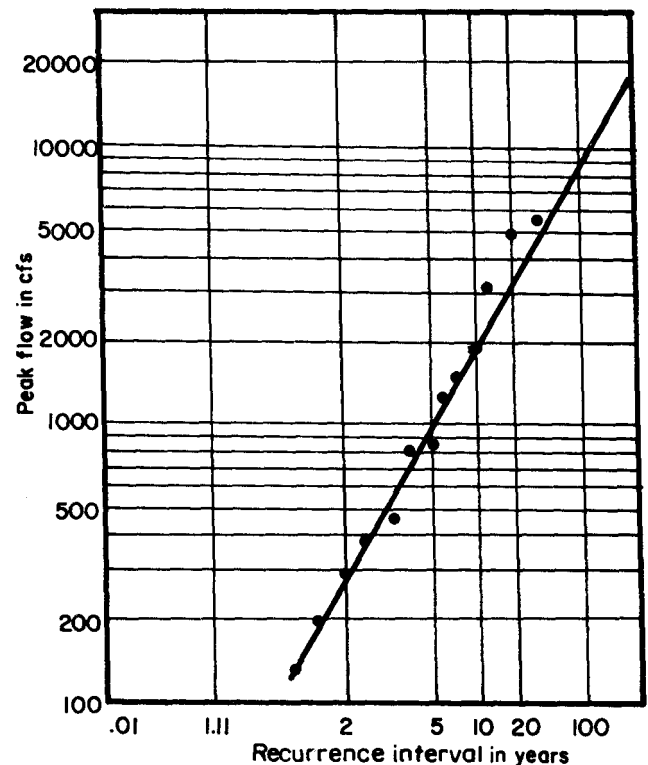


Figure 5 - - Frequency curve of annual floods for Santa Anita Dam watershed.

This study is not yet complete. Our research will continue to define the frequency characteristics of floods under burned conditions. We can draw the conclusion, however, that flood control facilities serving watersheds that experience frequent brush fires should be designed for flow characteristics under burned condition.

REFERENCES

- DeBano, Leonard F.; Rice, Raymond H.; Conrad, Eugene C. 1979. Soil heating in chaparral fires: effects on soil properties, plant nutrients, erosion and runoff. Res. paper PSWE-145 Berkley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.
- Crawford, Norman H.; Linsley, Ray K. 1966. Digital simulation in hydrology: Stanford Watershed Model iV. Tech. Rep. 39. Dept. Civil Engineering, Stanford University.
- Muller, Cornelius H.; Hanawalt, Ronald B.; McPherson, James K. 1968. Allelopathic control of herb growth in the fire cycle of California chaparral. Bull. Torrey Bot. Club 95(3): 225-231.

Application of SAC88 to Estimating Hydrologic Effects of Fire on a Watersheds¹

R. Larry Ferral²

Abstract: SAC88 is a major revision of the Sacramento Model, which was developed in 1969 with minor revisions through 1973. Two of many 1988 changes make it possible to estimate hydrologic effects of a fire in a watershed where pre-fire parameters can be calibrated or estimated: (1) Evapotranspiration, treated as extracted from six root-zone layers under pre-fire conditions, may be limited to one to five layers in the burned area; (2) An infiltration-rate limiting value, large for an unburned area, may be substantially reduced for an area where high soil temperatures and ash are thought to have created hydrophobic soil surface conditions. The application of sample rainfall sequences under pre-fire and post-fire conditions may be used to evaluate hydrologic effects of fire or other drastic changes in watershed vegetation.

THE SACRAMENTO MODEL

The Sacramento Model was developed in 1969 by National Weather Service and California Department of Water Resources hydrologists as a tool to be used in their cooperative river forecast program (Burnash and others, 1973). It is a computerized conceptual, deterministic, lumped-parameter model of watershed processes from the application of liquid water through the generation of runoff. Snow accumulation and melt processes and channel routing may be handled separately by linked models. Several minor modifications were made to this model through 1973. Since that time, it has been applied extensively by National Weather Service hydrologists and others throughout the world (Bartfeld and Taylor 1980; Burnash and Bartfeld 1980; Leader and others 1983; Twedt and others 1978)

¹ Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

² Hydrologist In Charge, California-Nevada River Forecast Center, National Weather Service, Sacramento, California.

The model includes both an impervious area that varies in size with wetness, and a permeable area. The permeable area includes five storages in two categories in the soil mantle - tension water that is filled preferentially and emptied only by evapotranspiration and free water that drains vertically and horizontally in response to gravity. The tension water storages are treated as one upper level and one lower level storage in the model, and the free water storages as one upper level and two lower level storages, with the upper level free water storage draining very rapidly both horizontally and vertically and the lower level free water storages draining at two different slower rates. Runoff is generated as direct runoff from water applied to impervious areas, subsurface drainage from each of the three free water storages, and surface runoff when the rainfall rate exceeds the rate at which water can enter the upper level storages.

SAC88 REVISIONS

SAC88, a major revision of the Sacramento Model, was begun in December 1987 (Ferral 1988). The changes made are summarized in the list that follows.

1. Thresholds that had caused abrupt transitions in the rainfall-runoff relationship have been smoothed by diverting increasing fractions of applied water into free water storages as tension water deficiencies diminish.

2. Upper-level outflow functions that drive both quick - response subsurface outflow to stream channels and percolation to deeper layers have been modified so that surface runoff is less likely to be dominant.

3. Partial area runoff caused by rainfall or snowmelt on seepage outflow areas has been modified to be controlled by outflow rates instead of by lowerzone tension water contents.

4. More layers are used in tension water accounting to allow for differing availability for evapotranspiration of near- surface and deeper soil moisture. This also allows drastic changes in effective root depth after wildfire or clear cutting to be modeled realistically. Two layers defined by the modeler are converted into six layers by the model.

5. A limiting surface infiltration rate now can be defined to account for effects of very intense rainfall or of hydrophobic soil conditions after a fire.

6. A uniformity parameter can vary the drying and wetting functions which affect runoff production.

APPLICATIONS OF THE REVISED MODEL

Changes 4 and 5 above are most relevant to the concerns of this Symposium. The Sacramento Model has been applied to dozens of small watersheds in California. It is part of the ALERT program (Automated Local Evaluation in Real Time), a cooperative National Weather Service program for local flood warnings and other purposes based mostly on radio raingages and streamgages reporting to a microcomputer that stores data as received and generates hydrologic forecasts automatically, at frequent intervals. The greatest concentration of these systems is in Southern California, where many flood-prone communities are below forested or brushcovered watersheds.

After SAC88 has been incorporated into the ALERT software and the watersheds have been recalibrated, it will be possible to make reasonable quantitative estimates of the hydrologic effects of wildfire and of subsequent revegetation. Early tests indicate that recalibration with SAC88 is easy to do. Common parameters change little from the old Sacramento Model to SAC88. A new calibration with SAC88 is no more difficult than a new calibration with the old Sacramento Model. Expert analysis will be required to estimate changes in effective rooting depth after a fire, but the model will have the capability to apply those changes to subsequent rainfall as it occurs.

Another possible use of SAC88 is to apply it to a watershed denuded by wildfire using the Extended Streamflow Prediction (ESP) mode of the National Weather Service River Forecast System

(NWSRFS). This would test the effects of applying historical rainfall sequences, starting with the present day of the year and present soil moisture and rooting depth conditions, to a calibrated watershed. Such a test could estimate both the probable increases in water yield and the probability of damaging flood flows in the post-fire rainy seasons.

Hydrologic effects of proposed vegetative management schemes, such as clear cutting or brush removal, could be analyzed similarly. A drastic vegetative change over only part of a watershed could be analyzed by treating it as two watersheds, one unchanged and one modified, and apportioning the resulting streamflows.

As an example of such an analysis, this model was applied to inflow to the San Antonio Reservoir in Monterey County, California. The calibration period was October 1967 through September 1979. The watershed as calibrated has an available root-zone soil moisture storage capacity of 11.4 inches. The calibrated model was applied to the watershed for the period October 1977 through September 1979 assuming two different conditions; an undisturbed watershed and a watershed burned or clear-cut in late September 1977. The burn or clear-cut was presumed to reduce the effective root-zone soil moisture capacity subject to evapotranspiration from 11.4 inches to 4.8 inches, with only the upper three of the model's six soil moisture levels permeated by roots.

The computed mean basin precipitation for the 1977-78 water year over the 330 square mile drainage was about 29.5 inches. For the 1978-79 water year, the precipitation was about 17.5 inches. Computed runoff for the undisturbed basin condition was about 12.6 inches in 1977-78 and 4.1 inches in 1978-79. Computed runoff for the burned or clear-cut basin condition was only about 12.7 inches in 1977-78, little changed from the undisturbed condition, but 8.5 inches in 1978-79, more than double the undisturbed condition runoff. This delay in runoff effects can be explained by the large soil moisture deficit in late September 1977, and a much smaller deficit, 4.8 inches, in late September 1978, for the modified watershed. Without vegetative modification, the soil moisture deficit in late September 1978 would have been more than eleven inches.

The calibrations and analyses were done with daily rainfall data, so there was no attempt to model the possible effects of a hydrophobic layer on infiltration and runoff. Such effects would be greatest immediately after a fire, so these would be most likely to be observed in the first post-fire rainy season.

CONCLUSION

SAC88, a major new revision of the Sacramento Model, is expected to be useful in estimating the hydrologic effects of fire or other drastic vegetative changes on a watershed.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

I wish to thank Eric T. Strem, Senior Hydrologist and program leader for interactive calibration at the California-Nevada River Forecast Center, for applying the old Sacramento Model to calibrate all data sets used to test these revisions.

REFERENCES

- Bartfeld, Ira; Taylor, Dolores B. 1980. A case study of a real time flood warning system on Sespe Creek, Ventura County, California. In Proceedings, Symposium on storms, floods, and debris flows in Southern California and Arizona, 1978 and 1980, Committee on Natural Disasters, National Research Council, September 17-18, 1980, Pasadena, California.
- Burnash, Robert J. C.; Bartfeld, Ira. 1980. A systems approach to the automation of quantitative flash flood warnings, Proceedings, Second Conference on Flash Floods, American Meteorological Society, March 18-20, 1980, Atlanta, Georgia.
- Burnash, Robert J. C.; Ferral, R. Larry; McGuire, Richard A. March 1973. A generalized streamflow simulation system, conceptual modeling for digital computers, National Weather Service and California Department of Water Resources.
- Ferral, R. Larry. 1988. SAC88-A major revision of the Sacramento model. Unpublished draft, supplied by author.
- Leader, David C.; Burnash, Robert J. C.; Ferral, R. Larry. An incident of serious landslide occurrences related to upper zone soil wetness as computed with the Sacramento streamflow model, Proceedings, International Technical Conference on Mitigation of Natural Hazards through Real-Time Data Collection Systems And Hydrologic Forecasting, World Meteorological Organization and California Department of Water Resources, September 19 -23, 1983, Sacramento, California. Unpublished manuscript supplied by author.
- Twedt, Thomas M.; Burnash, Robert J. C.; Ferral, R. Larry. Extended streamflow prediction during the California drought. In: Proceedings, Western Snow Conference, April 18 - 20, 1978, Otter Rock, Oregon.

Stream Shading, Summer Streamflow and Maximum Water Temperature Following Intense Wildfire In Headwater Streams¹

Michael Amaranthus, Howard Jubas, and David Arthur²

Abstract: Adjacent headwater streams were monitored for postfire shade, summer streamflow and maximum water temperature following the 40,000 ha Silver Complex fire in southern Oregon. Average postfire shade (30 percent) for the three streams was considerably less than prefire shade (est.>90 percent). Dramatic increases in direct solar radiation resulted in large but variable increase in maximum water temperature. Increase was greatest in Stream C where temperature increased 10.0°C. Stream B increased 6.2°C. Stream A increased 3.3°C.

Variation in maximum water temperature increase was strongly correlated to summer streamflow ($r^2 = 0.98$) and percent total streamside shade ($r^2 = 0.80$). The greatest maximum water temperature increase was associated with lowest summer streamflow and total postfire shade. Shade from dead vegetation provided the most shade averaged for all three streams. Shade from dead vegetation was more than three times greater than shade from topography and two times greater than shade from live vegetation. Considerable loss of live vegetation and large but variable increases in maximum water temperature can accompany intense wildfire in headwater streams. Review of the Silver Fire Complex indicates, however, that less than 5 percent of the headwater streams burned in this manner.

INTRODUCTION

During August through November 1987, over 400,000 ha of forested land in northern California and southern Oregon were burned in lightning-caused fires. Included in the burned area was the 40,240 ha Silver Complex Fire in which three adjacent, intensely burned headwater streams were monitored for postfire shade,

summer streamflow, and maximum water temperature. These streams are in timbered lands where drastic changes in the structure of the forest canopy can affect water quality, especially temperature.

Water temperature is a determining factor in the composition and productivity of streams in the Klamath Mountains of southern Oregon and northern California. The temperature of valuable fish-bearing streams can be influenced by reducing forest canopy of riparian vegetation along headwater streams (Brown and others, 1971). Fish are greatly affected directly and indirectly by changes in water temperature. Cold water game fish, an important resource in the Klamath Region, are negatively affected as temperatures increase. Increased temperatures favor the introduction and proliferation of "warm water" species to the detriment of "cold water" species. Water temperature increases also indirectly affect fish through alteration of the stream environment, by increasing the abundance of fish pathogens and algae and by decreasing amounts of dissolved oxygen and aquatic organisms. Many stream temperatures in the area are already at critical levels for cold water game fish. The importance of water temperature as an indicator of water quality has not escaped the attention of land managers and is reflected in its inclusion in State and Federal water quality standards.

Changes in water temperature depend largely upon how much heat is received and the volume of water to be heated (Patton 1973). Heat can be lost or gained by a variety of mechanisms including evaporation, condensation, conduction, and convection. These factors, however, influence stream temperature very little compared to direct solar radiation (Brown 1969). The maintenance of water temperature largely becomes a consequence of the quantity and quality of shade-producing vegetation. Numerous studies have evaluated the effect of loss of shade-producing vegetation upon water temperature. Most of the studies have investigated the effects of forest harvest (Levno and Rothacher 1967, 1969, Brown and Krygier 1970, Meehan 1970, Holtby and Newcombe 1982); far less is known about the effects of wildfire (Helvey 1972). Intense wildfire, by destroying live riparian canopies, can greatly influence the amount of direct solar radiation reaching stream surfaces. Small, headwater streams may be most greatly affected because of low summer streamflows and large surface areas in relation to volumes. Shade from topography and dead riparian vegetation, where abundant, may play critical roles in minimizing temperature increases.

The objective of this study was to determine (1) type and abundance of shade in intensely burned headwater streams, (2) water temperature increases in streams flowing through an intensely burned area, and (3) the relationship

¹ Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

² Soil Scientist and Forestry Technicians, respectively, Siskiyou National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Grants Pass, Oregon.

of streamflow to water temperature increase.

METHODS

The study was conducted on Bald Mountain within the Silver Fire Complex area on three headwater streams of approximately the same size within .8 km of one another. The three streams drain an area of approximately 420 ha located 40 km west of Grants Pass, Oregon, on the Siskiyou National Forest's Galice Ranger District. Stream orientations are generally northeast. Prefire overstory vegetation was dominated by mature Douglas-fir with understory hardwoods.

The area is characterized by rugged steeply dissected terrain and moderately-deep skeletal soils. Soils are similar in all three basins --well drained loams with clay loam subsoils underlain by graywacke sandstone parent material at a depth of 60 to 100 cm. Summers are hot and dry. Most of the precipitation occurs in the mild wet season from November to April.

In September 1987 the Silver Fire swept through the study area. In October 1987 a photo inventory was completed to determine high, moderate, and low intensity burn areas. The three stream basins in the study were classified as high-intensity burns, characterized by complete consumption of crowns of existing vegetation. Field reconnaissance indicated that the majority of the riparian zones burned with high burn intensity; however, there are riparian zones bordering all three streams that exhibit some burns of moderate and low fire intensity. In moderate intensity burn areas crowns were partially consumed and in low intensity burn areas crowns remain largely intact.

Transects were established and marked for facilitating solar pathfinder measurements. Specifically, half-inch steel rebar was hammered 1 m into left and right banks of each stream. Each pathfinder measurement is 6m apart. There are five transects per cluster and four clusters per stream. Each cluster measures a stream segment 30m long. Site locations for clusters were chosen using a random grid.

A solar pathfinder was used to determine effective streamside shade for the maximum temperature period (Amaranthus 1983). The solar pathfinder consists of a spherical dome that reflects a panorama of the site including shade casting objects. Topographic and dead and live vegetational shade were quantified by viewing the sun's path diagram through the dome and summing shaded radiation values (percent of the days' total potential solar radiation) for each half-hour period for the sun's path on August 1, generally when maximum water temperatures are reached. Topographic, dead and live vegetational shade was individually tallied by differentially examining each shade-producing object as reflected through the spherical dome.

The solar pathfinder was set up between each transect in or as close to the center of the stream as possible. An azimuth and a linear measurement were taken from a bench mark (rebar at transect) and recorded. One technician made all the measurements on all three streams.

Streamflow measurements were made in all three streams on July 25, 1988 using a small flume, which was calibrated by the U.S. Geological Survey. One streamflow measurement was taken per stream. Stream temperatures were taken using calibrated minimum/maximum thermometers installed inside a protective rubber sheath and held in by 1/8-inch cable. The thermometers were installed at the top and bottom of each stream-monitoring area and recorded the maximum water temperature during the period from June 15 to September 15.

Data were subjected to analysis of variance. Means and standard errors were calculated for topographic, dead, live, and total shade. Tukey's multiple range test was used to compare differences ($p \leq 0.05$) among means between streams. Maximum water temperatures, summer streamflow, and total shade values were subjected to simple linear regression and analysis of variance.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

As expected, maximum water temperature was increased through intensely burned sections of streams. Increase was largest in Stream C where temperature increased 10.0°C (table 1). Stream B increased 6.2°C and Stream A increased 3.3°C. Stream A had significantly more shade from topography and live vegetation than Stream B and C (table 2). These two factors contributed to Stream A containing significantly more total shade. Streams B and C did not significantly differ in amounts of topographic, dead, live, or total shade. Dead shade provided the most shade averaged for all streams. Shade from dead vegetation was more than three times greater than topographic and two times greater than live vegetation (table 2).

Table 1--Maximum water temperatures above and below monitored area, stream length and summer streamflow.

Stream	Max water temp°C		Stream lgth. (meters)	Streamflow July 25 (ft ³ /sec)
	Above	Below		
A	16.7	20.0	2350	.076
B	14.4	20.6	1950	.053
C	12.8	22.8	1500	.035

Table 2--Percent streamside shade from topography and dead and live vegetation for three intensely burned headwater streams in southwest Oregon.*

Percent streamside shade (standard error)				
Stream	Topography	Dead veg	Live veg	Total
A	7.6a(0.79)	10.8a(1.69)	16.4a(1.11)	34.4a(1.07)
B	4.2b(0.61)	20.8a(.51)	2.3b(1.31)	27.3b(.69)
C	3.8b(1.08)	19.6a(3.08)	3.4b(2.13)	26.0b(2.18)
All Streams	5.2(0.68)	17.0 (1.72)	7.4 (2.10)	29.6 (1.46)

*Columns not sharing the same letter are significantly different, $p \leq 0.05$.

Prefire monitoring in this area indicates that headwater streams generally average greater than 90 percent total streamside shade (Amaranthus, unpublished data). Average postfire total shade was nearly 30 percent for intensely burned streams. This represents a considerable loss of shade compared to prefire levels. Dramatic increases in direct solar radiation resulted in large but variable increases in water temperature. Water temperature increases were similar to those from other studies in Oregon investigating the effects of clearcutting on water temperature (Brown and Krygier 1967, Levno and Rothacher 1967). However, in the clearcutting experiments temperature increased more dramatically over a shorter stream reach. Unlike clearcutting, wildfire results in standing dead vegetation and where it is abundant it may help minimize temperature increases. In this study 57 percent of the postfire shade was provided by dead vegetation. Removal of dead vegetation shade from riparian zones by timber salvage or other postfire activities should be carefully considered where water temperatures reach critical levels for fish.

Variability in maximum water temperatures for the three stream strongly correlates with summer streamflow ($r^2 = 0.98$, fig. 1). Maximum water temperature increase was inversely proportional to summer streamflow. Stream A had the highest streamflow and thus the greatest volume of water to be heated. Stream C had the least streamflow and thus the least volume of water to be heated. Water in Stream A, compared to Stream C, would travel more rapidly through the intensely burned section of stream, thereby decreasing time of exposure to direct solar radiation. Stream B would have intermediate characteristics between Streams A and C. These factors appear to influence maximum water temperature increase in headwater streams.

Considerable loss of live vegetation and large, but variable increases in maximum water temperature can accompany high intensity wildfire in headwater streams. However, review of the Silver Fire Complex Area indicates that less than 5 percent of the headwater streams burned in this manner and that postfire maximum water temperatures have not appreciably increased at the mouth of large downstream tributaries draining the fire area (P.A. Carroll, unpublished data)³. Numerous factors can account for this. Some authors have noted water temperatures decrease as streams passed through shaded areas downstream from open areas (Hall and Lantz 1969, Levno and Rothacher 1969). There may be some recovery of stream temperature in shaded areas downstream from high-intensity burn areas, although previous measurements of temperature recovery downstream from harvest areas (Amaranthus, unpublished data) and other studies (Brown and others 1971, Brazier and Brown 1973) have not demonstrated this cooling effect. Inputs of cooler ground water, increased summer streamflow following wildfire, and mixing cooler water from unburned tributaries would help minimize water temperature increases downstream. The amount of cooling would be largely dependent upon the magnitude of groundwater inputs, increase in streamflow and cooler water from unburned streams.

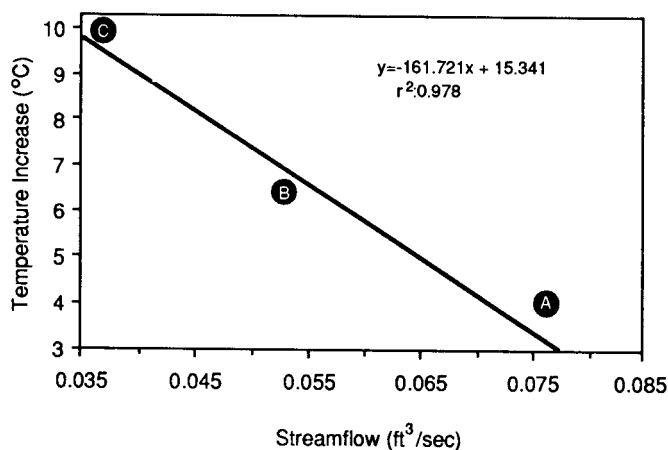


Fig. 1--Relationship of summer streamflow (X) to maximum water temperature increase (Y) for three intensely burned headwater streams (A, B, and C).

³ Hydrologist, Siskiyou National Forest, Grants Pass, OR 97526

Variability in maximum water temperatures for the three streams also correlates with total postfire shade ($r^2=0.80$, fig. 2). Stream A had the greatest total postfire shade and thus the least direct radiation reaching the water surface. It is unlikely, however, that the 8 percent increase in shade between Stream A and C could alone explain the 6.7°C decrease in maximum water temperature increase. Other factors could be influencing changes in water temperature between the streams such as the width-to-depth ratio of the channel. This could greatly affect the surface area and length of time water is exposed to radiation.

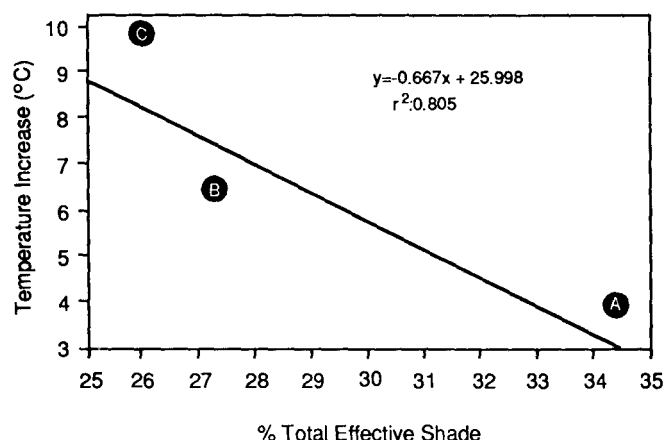


Fig. 2--Relationship of total shade (X) to maximum water temperature increase (Y) for three intensely burned headwater streams (A, B, and C).

REFERENCES

- Amaranthus, M.P. 1983. Quantification of effective streamside shade utilizing the solar pathfinder. USDA For. Serv. Region 6. Siskiyou National Forest, Grants Pass, Oregon.
- Brazier, J.R.; Brown, G.W. 1973. Buffer strips for stream temperature control. Res. Paper 15. Corvallis: Forest Research Laboratory, School of Forestry, Oregon State University.
- Brown, G.W. 1969. Predicting temperature of small streams. *Water Resources Res.* 5(1):68-75.
- Brown, G.W.; Krygier, J.T. 1967. Changing water temperatures in small mountain

streams. *J. Soil Water Conserv.* (22):242-244.

- Brown, G.W.; Krygier, J.T. 1970. Effects of Clear-cutting on stream temperature. *Water Resources Research* 6(4):1131-1140.
- Brown, G.W.; Swank, G.W.; Rothacher, J. 1971. Water temperature in the steamboat drainage. Res. Paper PNW-119, Pac. Northwest Forest & Range Experiment Station, USDA For. Serv., Portland, OR: 17p.
- Hall, J.D.; Lantz, R.L.. 1969. Effects of logging on the habitat of Coho salmon and cutthroat trout in coastal streams. Northcote, T.G., ed. *University British Columbia, Vancouver, B.C., Symposium on salmon and trout in streams.* 1969:355-375.
- Helvey, J.D. 1972. First-year effects of wildfire on water yield and stream temperature in North Central Washington. In: *Proceedings of a National Symposium on Watersheds in Transition*, Fort Collins, Colorado, pp. 308-312.
- Holtby, B.; Newcombe, C.P.. 1982. A preliminary analysis of logging-related temperature changes in Carnation Creek, British Columbia. In: Hartman, G., *Proceedings of the Carnation Creek Workshop, a 10-year Review*, Malaspina College, British Columbia, Canada, pp. 81-99.
- Levno, A.; Rotchacer, J.. 1967. Increases in maximum stream temperature after logging old growth Douglas-Fir watersheds. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service Research Note PNW-65, Portland, Oregon 12pp.
- Levno, A.; Rotchacer, J.. 1969. Increases in maximum stream temperature after slash burning in a small experimental watershed. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service Research Note PNW-110, Portland, Oregon, 7pp.
- Meehan, W.R. 1970. Some effects of shade cover on stream temperature in Southeast Alaska. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service Research Note PNW-113, Portland, Oregon, 9pp.
- Patton, D.R. 1973. A literature review of timber harvesting effects on stream temperatures: research needs for the southwest. United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service Research Note. Rocky Mountain Forest & Range Experiment Station. RM-249, Fort Collins, Colorado.

Effects of Fire Retardant on Water Quality¹

Logan A. Norris and Warren L. Webb²

Abstract: Ammonium-based fire retardants are important in managing wildfires, but their use can adversely affect water quality. Their entry, fate, and impact were studied in five forest streams. Initial retardant concentrations in water approached levels which could damage fish, but no distressed fish were found. Concentrations decreased sharply with time after application and distance downstream, and there was no long-term entry. The numbers and kinds of stream insects were not affected. Simulations of retardant dispersal in streams showed fish mortality might occur from zero to more than 10,000 m below the point of chemical entry, depending on application parameters and stream characteristics. Guidelines to minimize adverse impacts from the use of fire retardants are suggested.

Chemical fire retardants play an important role in protecting forest resources from destructive fires. Their use has increased steadily since their introduction in the 1930's. Lowden (1962) reported that aerially applied fire retardant use in the U.S. increased from 87,000 liters in 1956 to more than 28 million liters in 1961. During 1970, 64 million liters of fire retardant were applied aerially to forest and rangeland fires (George 1971). USDA Forest Service aerially applied 55 million liters of fire retardant in 1977. More than 71 percent of this use was in California, Oregon, and Washington (Norris and others 1978).

Fire retardants have changed since their first introduction. Borate salts, the first retardants, were effective and long-lasting, but were also phytotoxic and soil-sterilants, and are no longer used (Fenton 1959). Bentonite clay in water is not as long-lasting or as effective as alternative materials (Phillips and Miller 1959). Ammonium phosphate, an effective fire retardant marketed in several formulations, is relatively long lasting, nontoxic and easy to apply (Douglas 1974). The ammonium-based fire

retardants as a group account for nearly all chemical retardants used in controlling forest and range fires today.

The possible adverse effects of chemical fire retardants on the environment have received relatively little attention, probably because of the importance of these chemicals in fire control and their seemingly innocuous nature. However, even materials of inherent low toxicity can cause adverse environmental effects when organisms are exposed to toxic amounts. Research and development efforts have concentrated primarily on developing effective fire retardants, delivery systems, and strategies for use.

As the intensity of fire retardant use increased, incidents of misapplication or adverse environmental effects have begun to appear. There have been several reports of fish kills when retardants were applied directly into streams, but documentation is marginal. Fire retardants are alleged to have killed a number of trout in one stream in California, but the stream soon returned to normal. In 1969, a large number of juvenile salmonids and more than 700 adult salmon were killed in an Alaskan stream. While retardants were used near the river, the specific cause of death of the fish was not determined. Adult salmon entering the river 4 days later exhibited no toxic reaction (Hakala and others 1971).

As a result of these incidents, and concerns among resource managers that fire retardants may adversely affect the environment, an ad hoc interagency study committee was formed in 1970 (Borovicka 1974). The objective of the committee was to foster and coordinate research needed to evaluate the environmental safety of chemical fire retardants (primarily their effect on water quality and aquatic organisms). Toxicology research conducted by Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Land Management, and National Marine Fisheries Service established dose-response relationships for use in evaluating the effects on fish of specific levels of fire retardants in streams (Blahm and others 1972; Blahm and Snyder 1973; Borovicka and Blahm 1974; Johnson and Sanders 1977). Forest Service scientists at the Northern Forest Fire Laboratory (Missoula, Mont.) conducted an initial simulation study of retardant distribution in streams (Van Meter and Hardy 1975).

The Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station studied the behavior of retardant materials in streams, determined their effect on selected aquatic species in their natural habitat and (through simulation) estimated the effects of retardant application on fish mortality in streams of different characters. This paper draws heavily on the

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California. This is paper 2476 of the Forest Research Laboratory, Oregon State University, Corvallis.

²Professor and (Courtesy) Associate Professor, Department of Forest Science, Oregon State University, Corvallis, Oreg.

PNW research effort (Norris and others 1978), and suggests planning for resource managers concerned about minimizing fire retardant impacts on streams.

METHODS FOR FIELD STUDY

We applied an ammonia-based fire retardant to five streams in Oregon, Idaho, and California (Norris and others 1978). The application crossed a segment of four of the streams and was parallel (to within 3 m) on the fifth (table 1, fig. 1). The pattern of ground level application we used in the field studies (fig. 1B) is a simplified version of the pattern of retardant deposition resulting from operational aerial application (fig. 1A). Stream water samples collected periodically for up to 13 months after application at locations up to 2700 m downstream were analyzed for various forms of nitrogen and phosphorus. Samples of benthos and insect drift were also collected and evaluated for shifts in species diversity and abundance.

RESULTS OF FIELD STUDIES

Effects of Retardant on Stream Water Chemistry

The principal chemical species in the stream the first 24 hours after application were ammonia nitrogen ($\text{NH}_3 + \text{NH}_4^+$) and total phosphorus. Un-ionized ammonia (NH_3) is of primary importance because of its potential toxic effects on aquatic species. The amount of NH_3 relative to NH_4^+ is dependent primarily on pH (Trussel 1972). As the pH increases, the proportion of ammonia nitrogen present as NH_3 increases. The phosphorus may be important in downstream eutrophication. After 24 hours, nitrate (NO_3^-) and soluble organic nitrogen are the primary retardant components in the stream. These are transformation products of the diammonium phosphate in the retardant mixture. Both nitrate and soluble organic nitrogen are low in toxicity and are natural components of aquatic ecosystems. Because NH_3 is most important, the results in table 2 and figure 2 emphasize ammonia nitrogen (NH_3 and NH_4^+) or un-ionized ammonia (NH_3).

Table 1--General characteristics of the study locations and streams

Stream and Location	Climate	Soil and		Stream characteristics ¹		
		parent material	Vegetation	Width	Depth	Discharge
				(m)	(m)	(l/s)
Tohetie Oregon: representing Coast Ranges	High rainfall-- cool, moist summers, winter snow rare	Inceptisol Andic Haplumbrept Siltstone and claystone	Douglas-fir, Sitka spruce Western Hemlock, Alder Salmonberry	5.4	0.03	2.3
Lewis Same	Same	Same	Same	2.8	0.20	13.7
Quartz Oregon: representing Cascade Range	Moderately high rainfall--warm, dry summers, occas. winter snows	Inceptisol Dystric Cryochrept Red breccia and basalt	Douglas-fir, Alder	2.4	0.18	35.4
Bannock Idaho: representing Intermountain Region	Warm, dry summers, winter snowpack	Mollisol Typic Cryoboroll Quartz monzonite (acid igneous)	Ponderosa pine	1.0	0.29	6.0
San Dimas Southern Calif.: representing areas of heavy chaparral	Hot, dry summers warm, moderately dry winters	Alfisol Mollic Haploxeralf Metamorphic and acid igneous	Chaparral	1.2	0.18	7.1

¹Late summer, at time of application of fire retardant. All retardant applications crossed the stream (see fig. 1), except Tohetie Creek where the long axis of the application was parallel to the stream, with the edge of the distribution pattern 3 m or more from the edge of the stream.

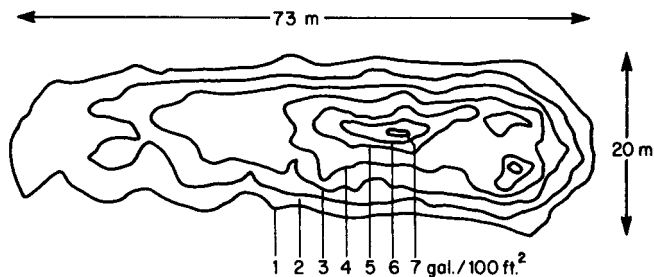
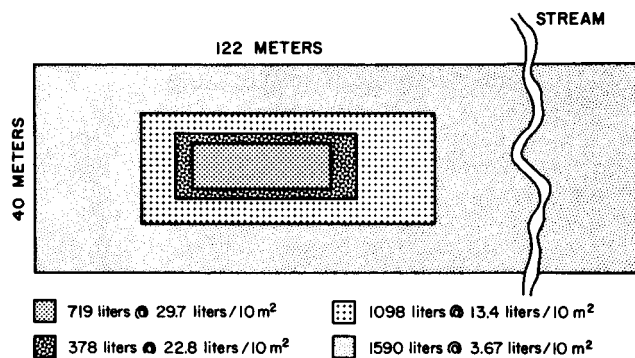


Figure 1--Retardant application patterns.
A, Typical retardant application used in developing a pattern for the test applications (X 4.07 = liters/10 m²).



B, Pattern of retardant application (applied with hoses at ground level) for cross-stream treatment at Lewis, Quartz, and Bannock Creek study sites. The same application pattern was used for Tohetie Creek except the long axis of the application was parallel to the stream and the edge was not closer than 3 m to the stream. A slightly modified pattern, applied by helicopter was used at San Dimas (Norris and others 1978).

Direct application of retardant to the stream surface produced the highest concentration near the point of application. Concentration decreased both with time after peak concentration and distance downstream (fig. 2, table 2). Detectable changes in stream water chemistry were noted up to 2700 m downstream. The changes we measured were of short duration and not important either toxicologically or with respect to eutrophication downstream. In our test, however, regulations required a low rate of application (maximum planned concentration 0.5 ppm NH₃), and only a single application was made on each stream. The effect of rate of application, vegetation density in the streamside zone, and other factors on retardant levels in streams are discussed in the section on results of simulation studies.

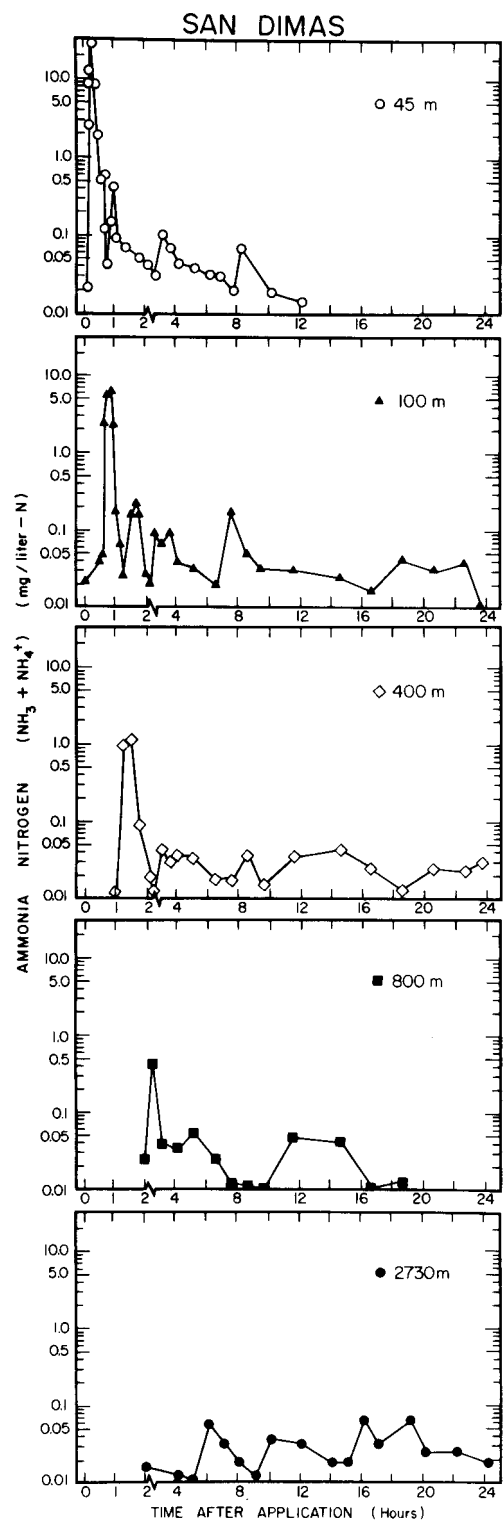


Figure 2--Concentration of ammonia nitrogen (NH₃ + NH₄⁺) at various times after application and at five distances downstream from the application zone for East Fork San Dimas Canyon. The last samples were collected at 45 m and 800 m at 12 h and 18.5 h after the application.

Table 2--Effect of time and movement downstream on maximum concentrations (max. cone.) of ammonia nitrogen ($\text{NH}_3 + \text{NH}_4^+$) from retardant application zone (r.a. zone)

Study site ¹	Max. cone. $\text{NH}_3 + \text{NH}_4^+$ 45 m downstream from r.a. zone	Max. cone. NH_3 45 m downstream from r.a. zone ²	Time for indicated dilution, 45 m downstream from r.a. zone		Max. cone. at various distances below r.a. zone as percent of max. cone. at 45 m		
			10-fold	100-fold	200 m	400 m	800 m
	<u>ppm-N</u>	<u>ppm-N</u>	<u>minutes</u>		<u>percent</u>		
Lewis Creek	3.34	0.02	18	60	29	8	3
Quartz Creek	15.81	0.15	23	90	4	5	3
Bannock Creek	13.56	0.03	24	225	8	2	1
San Dimas Canyon	29.95	0.32	10	25	19	4	1

¹Retardant applied directly to stream surface.

²Calculated from free ammonia concentration (Trussel 1972).

Direct application to the stream surface was the primary source of retardant components in the streams. Once initial residues cleared the stream system, only minor residues of retardant entered the streams from the streamside zone.

Relatively narrow untreated strips in the riparian zone are probably sufficient to largely eliminate movement of retardant from the land to the stream. Where the long axis of the application zone was parallel to the stream (Tohetie Creek, where the edge of the treated area was only 3 meters from the stream), we found no evidence of significant elevation of concentration of retardant components in the stream, even after periods of heavy precipitation.

Effects of Retardant on Stream Organisms

The experimental retardant application made in this study did not kill or incapacitate fish in the first 24 hours, or the density or diversity of stream drift or the stream benthic community in the first year after application (Norris and others 1978). This does not mean retardant application will not affect these organisms, only that they were not affected to a detectable degree by the rates of application used in these applications. The effects of higher rates of application on fish are dealt with in the section on simulation.

The high degree of natural variability in the biological communities in these streams (over both time and distance) is an important factor in masking small or temporary changes in community structure. This means fire or fire

control-induced changes in stream community structure must be large to be detected without intensive sampling. Retardants which enter streams (even in high concentrations) are not expected to permanently alter community structure. As water quality returns to normal, repopulation is expected and community structure should shift towards pretreatment status.

METHODS FOR SIMULATIONS

Estimations of fish mortality following direct injection of retardant was obtained with a four-component model. First, a model of retardant dilution in streams was derived from dye dilution experiments in the field. This model was combined with another representing retardant application rates obtained from actual drop patterns (George and Blakely 1973), and a model predicting retardant interception by vegetation along the riparian zone (Anderson 1974). These three components, which predicted retardant concentrations in a variety of streams representing a wide range of mixing parameters, were linked to a model structured with fish mortality data taken from Blahm and Snyder (1973). Details of the model are in Norris and others (1978).

RESULTS OF SIMULATIONS

Simulations using the model had the objectives of (1) developing methods for predicting the concentration of retardant in streams when direct applications to the stream surface occur, (2) developing methods for describing the dispersal of retardant in streams, both with time after application and

distance from the application, and (3) integrating these two techniques with data on toxicity to fish to evaluate the effects of retardant applications in various types of streams on fish mortality. The term "mortality zone" means the stream reach where fish mortality (0 to 100 percent) occurs. The mortality zone shifts downstream with time as the toxicant is carried with the stream water.

The simulation studies show that

- Direct application of retardant to many streams is likely to cause fish mortality.
- The magnitude of the mortality and the distance over which it occurs varies with three elements: (1) the characteristics of the application, (2) the characteristics of the zone of application, and (3) the characteristics of the streamflow.

1. The characteristics of the application include orientation of the line of flight to the stream, size of load dropped, number of loads dropped, and the timing and placement of subsequent loads relative to the first load. For instance, a retardant application across and perpendicular to a stream produces a much smaller mortality zone than an application whose long axis is centered on the stream. If the rate of application is doubled (8000 instead of 4000 liters released over the same area) the mortality zone increases by a factor of 10 or more. We did not simulate the effects of multiple loads or the timing and placement of subsequent loads on the mortality zone, but believe the effects of additional loads will be at least additive to the effects of the first load. The characteristics of the application can be controlled by the fire control officer and the applicator to minimize the mortality zone (table 3).

2. The characteristics of the site. Several characteristics of the application site determine the initial concentration of retardant in the stream and the length of the fish mortality zone. Narrow, deep streams have a much lower initial concentration (therefore a shorter mortality zone) than shallow, wide streams (assumes equivalent flow properties; fig. 3). The more dense the vegetation canopy, the less chemical that falls directly

Table 3--Fish mortality related to orientation of stream through retardant application zone, and to amount of retardant dropped (simulation results)

Application zone and stream direction	Angle between long axis zone and stream ¹	Distance over which 100 pct mortality occurs	
		Standard drop	Standard drop times two
	<u>degrees</u>	<u>----- meters -----</u>	
	90	50	480
	67.5	50	560
	45.0	100	1000
	22.5	240	>1000
	0	1000	>1000

¹At 90°, the long axis of the retardant application zone is at a right angle to the stream. The stream passes through the point of maximum retardant deposition in the retardant application zone.

on the stream and the shorter the mortality zone (fig. 4). These site characteristics can be recognized and retardant applications adjusted accordingly to minimize the size of the mortality zone.

3. Characteristics of streamflow. Streamflow characteristics influence the length of the mortality zone by determining the degree and speed of mixing and dilution of retardant with downstream travel. Simulation results show streams with a smooth channel have a longer mortality zone than those with many pools and riffles (assumes equal streambed gradient). Pools and riffles cause the peak of retardant concentration to spread out, thus reducing the magnitude of exposure. Increasing stream discharge with distance

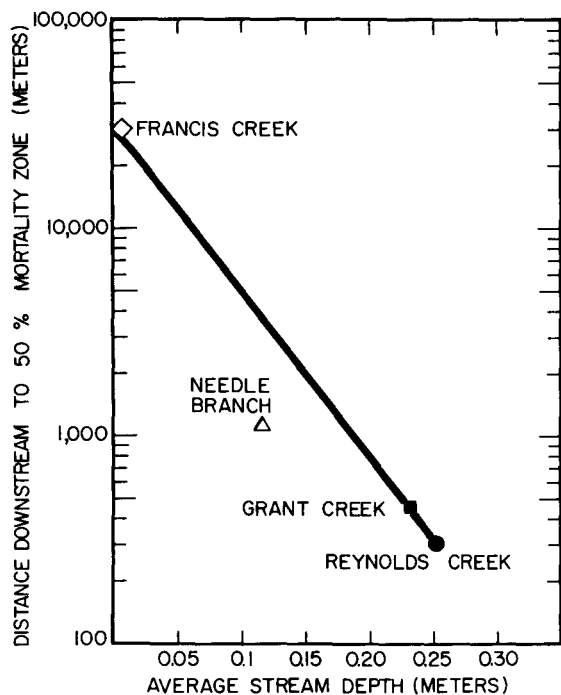


Figure 3--Effect of average stream depth on simulated length of fish mortality zone. See table 4 for stream characteristics.

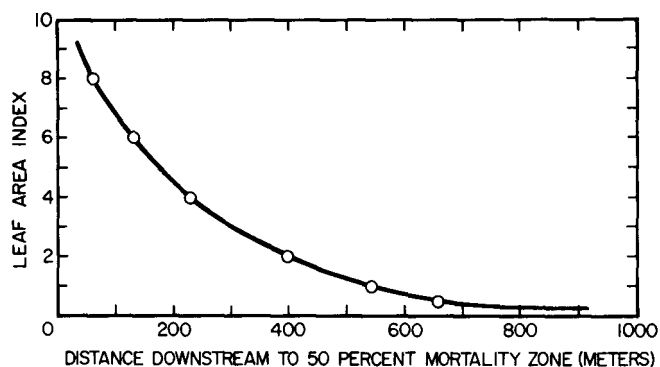


Figure 4--Length of simulated 50 percent fish-mortality zone as affected by density of streamside vegetation which intercepts retardant.

downstream (because of the inflow of groundwater and contribution from side streams) is also important as it increases dilution of the retardant. These characteristics of streamflow can be recognized by the manager.

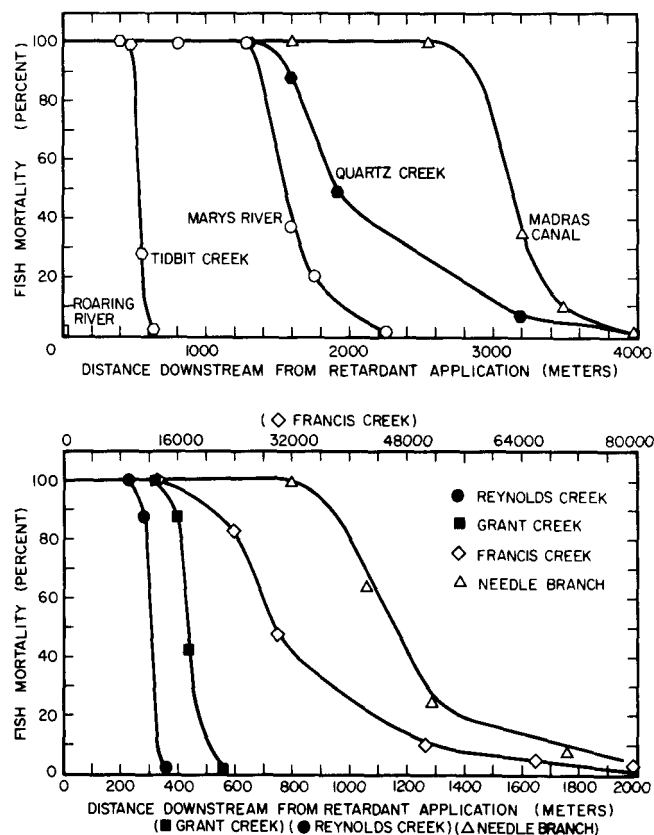


Figure 5--Simulated fish mortality at various distances downstream in several streams. Streams are oriented parallel with and through long axis of retardant application and have leaf area index of 1.0. See table 4 for listing of individual stream properties.

The results of simulation in a series of streams help illustrate the concepts (fig. 5, table 4).

PLANNING TO PROTECT STREAMS

Relatively large fires (more than 400 h) burning major portions of the watershed of perennial streams may have substantial effects on stream water quality and stream biological communities. Fire control practices such as bulldozing or hand clearing fire lines or the use of chemical fire retardants, can also impact streams. Fire control officers must use these techniques singly or in combination to achieve the appropriate balance between damage to the stream caused by fire and damage to the stream caused by fire control practices.

Our research indicates that applications of retardant that fall outside the riparian zone should have little or no effect on stream water quality. Fire control officers can plan on use of retardants away from the riparian zone with

Table 4--Description of mountain streams used in simulations

Stream	Stream characteristics	Width (m)	Depth (m)	Velocity ¹ (m/hr)
Quartz Creek	Riffles and pools	4.23	0.19	206.9
Roaring River	Extremely fast and turbulent; no pools	9.45	0.49	4621.1
Marys River	Slow and channelled	5.79	0.31	388.8
Tidbits Creek	Riffles and pools	4.57	0.41	817.5
Madras Canal ²	Rapid and channelled	1.5	0.17	1425.0
Reynolds Creek	Slow and channelled	2.23	0.25	450.9
Grant Creek	Slow and channelled	1.49	0.23	326.9
Needle Branch Creek	Riffles and pools	0.73	0.11	101.8
Francis Creek	Riffles and pools	0.94	0.04	258.9

¹Velocity determined from dye dilution experiments. Mixing parameters are described in Norris and others (1978).

²An irrigation canal.

assurance that stream quality will not be significantly impaired.

When planning fire control with retardants near streams, attention needs to be given first to applications which may fall directly on the stream surface, and second to applications which fall in the riparian zone. Direct application to the stream surface is most likely to cause fish mortality. Applications in the riparian zone may affect water quality, but not to the point of causing major toxic effects. Potential impacts on downstream eutrophication need to be considered, however.

The key to successful applications (those that achieve fire control objectives and protect stream water quality) in each case is adequate planning before fire occurs (Borovicka 1974; Borovicka and Blahm 1974), including (a) identification of stream sections which need to

be protected, and (b) development of retardant application plans to minimize adverse effects on the stream.

Identifying Streams for Protection

It may not be possible to do advance planning for protection of all streams. Therefore, it is necessary to identify streams that are of greater importance and are more likely to be affected by fire. Streams in high fire risk areas, for instance, should receive attention before those where the risk of fire is lower. Streams needing attention first include those which provide water for fish hatcheries, domestic use, or other special purposes. Streams that are particularly important for recreational use or fish production, or are habitat for rare or endangered species also need attention.

All parts of the stream system cannot be included in prefire planning. First order streams may be too small for effective protection. Streams in steep canyons where mechanical fire control is not possible, and where retardant must be dropped from higher than normal elevation, may also have to be excluded, at least from the first efforts to develop plans to permit retardant use while protecting streams.

Development of Applications Plans

Development of application plans must consider all the three elements important in determining the length of the zone of mortality discussed above. These are the characteristics of the site, the characteristics of streamflow, and the nature of the application. The most important site characteristics are the width and depth of the stream, and the leaf area index over the stream. The most important characteristics of streamflow are the ratio of pools and riffles, stream velocity, and degree of channelization.

These characteristics can be used in connection with the findings of the simulation studies to obtain an estimate of the initial level of retardant deposition to the stream--the level that will produce an acceptable mortality zone. Clearly, there are levels of deposition which will cause no mortality. When this level of protection is required, it can be achieved with good planning and careful execution. In those instances where a lower level of protection is adequate, this can also be achieved.

When an acceptable level of retardant deposition has been determined, the third element (the nature of the application) is considered. The procedures for estimating deposition developed in the simulation studies can be used to determine the size of load and orientation to the stream that will not cause a rate of deposition in excess of that determined to be acceptable. This information should then be

cataloged and stored so it can be quickly retrieved when fire control operation commences in or near subject areas.

CONCLUSION

These methods require substantial subjective judgments on the part of the resource manager. However, they provide the logic and a process by which managers can plan fire control operations with retardants. Information presented in the report by Norris and others (1978) can be used to evaluate the impacts of retardant use on water quality as opposed to the impact of fire on stream chemistry or the impact of other methods of control. The development of GIS (geographic information systems) capabilities, the ready availability of aerial photos, and the expanding use of computers by managers make the type of prefire planning described above quite achievable. Further research and documentation of experience in the field are necessary to permit improvement of these preliminary guidelines and to help insure that the use of chemical fire retardants does not produce unexpected impacts on the aquatic ecosystem.

REFERENCES

- Anderson, H. E. 1974. Forest fire retardant: transmission through a tree crown. USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Res. Paper INT-153. Ogden, UT.
- Blahm, T.H.; Marshall, W.C.; Snyder, G.R. 1972. Effect of chemical fire retardants on the survival of juvenile salmonids. Report on Bureau of Land Management Res. Contract #53500-CT2-85(N). National Marine Fisheries Service, Prescott, OR.
- Blahm, T.H.; Snyder, G.R. 1973. Effect of chemical fire retardants on survival of juvenile salmonids. Report on Bureau of Land Management Res. Contract #53500-CT2-95(N). National Marine Fisheries Service, Prescott, OR.
- Borovicka, Robert L. 1974. Guidelines for protecting fish and aquatic organisms when using chemical fire retardants. Fire Management 35:(3)20-21.
- Borovicka, Robert L.; Blahm, Theodore H. 1974. Use of chemical fire retardants near aquatic environments. Paper presented at 104th Annual Meeting, American Fisheries Society, Sept. 10, 1974. Honolulu, HI.
- Douglas, G.W. 1974. Ecological impact of chemical fire retardants: A review. Environment Canada, Canadian Forestry Service, Northern Forest Research Centre. Report NVR-A-109. 33 p.
- Fenton, R.H. 1959. Toxic effects of a fire fighting chemical. Journal of Forestry 59:209-210.
- George, C.W. 1971. Liquids fight forest fires. Fertilizer Solutions 15(6):10-11, 15, 18, 21.
- George, C.W.; Blakeley, A.D. 1973. An evaluation of the drop characteristics and ground distribution patterns of forest fire retardants. USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Res. Paper INT-134. Ogden, UT.
- Hakala, J.B.; Seemel, R.K.; Richey, R.; Keurtz, J.E. 1971. Fire effects and rehabilitation methods--Swanson-Russian River fires. In: Slaughter, C.W.; Barry, Richard J.; Hansen, G.M., editors. Fire in the Northern Environment--A symposium. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Portland, OR. p. 87-99.
- Johnson, W.W.; Sanders, H.O. 1977. Chemical forest fire retardants: acute toxicity to five freshwater fishes and a scud. Technical paper 91. U.S. Dept. Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C. 7 p.
- Lowden, M.S. 1962. Forest fire retardants in the United States. Pulp and Paper Magazine of Canada. (April):163-171.
- Norris, L.A.; Hawkes, C.L; Webb, W.C.; Moore, D.G.; Bollen, W.B.; Holcombe, E. 1978. The behavior and impact of chemical fire retardants in forest streams. Internal Report. Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Corvallis, OR. 152 p.
- Phillips, C.B.; Miller, H.R. 1959. Swelling bentonite clay--a new forest fire retardant. USDA Forest Service, Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Tech. Paper 37.
- Trussel, R.P. 1972. The percent un-ionized ammonia in aqueous ammonia solutions at different pH levels and temperatures. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 29:1505-1507.
- Van Meter, W.P.; Hardy, C.E. 1975. Predicting effects on fish of fire retardants in streams. USDA Forest Service, Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Res. Paper INT-166. Ogden, UT. 16 p.

Maximizing Vegetation Response on Management Burns by Identifying Fire Regimes¹

V. Thomas Parker²

Abstract: Maintenance of vegetation is a central goal of watershed management. When prescribed burning of chaparral is included in management practice, then it is important for managers to understand and use the natural chaparral fire regime to maximize vegetation response. Variations from the natural fire regime in intensity, frequency, season, and environmental conditions at the time of burning can all have substantial effects. These factors interact differently with the species that comprise chaparral. This paper focusses on the variation in responses of different groups of chaparral species to changes in fire regime.

Prescribed burning often has been used to reduce fuel loads to meet fire safety objectives. An assumption inherent in this type of management is that prescribed burning reduces the likelihood of a wildfire yet has little net effect on the vegetation, which is basically true for many species and communities. One exception, however, is California chaparral, widely recognized as a fire-type vegetation. Chaparral tolerates burning only under certain conditions at limited times of the year. Under other conditions or times, the recovery of chaparral following prescribed burning can be limited. Particular types of species are most sensitive and several environmental conditions appear to exert the most influence on recovery. My objective in this paper is to illustrate these vegetation and environmental characteristics. Only after a careful consideration of these factors can managers hope to maximize the response of their vegetation.

Overall watershed management involves not only short-term objectives like fuel reduction, but also, the long-term objective of maintaining the health of the vegetation. The health of the vegetation depends upon species diversity as well as ensuring vegetation recovery. Many chaparral dominants in the genera Arctostaphylos and Ceanothus, for example, are usually killed in fires and are greatly reduced in regeneration following most prescribed burns (Parker 1987b). Twenty species of these two genera, furthermore,

are listed rare and endangered species or under consideration. Chaparral contains a number of additional sensitive species. Most of these rare and endangered chaparral species are vulnerable to management practices like prescribed burning. Protection of rare and endangered species is an issue that will continue to increase in importance.

INFLUENCES ON RECOVERY OF CHAPARRAL

Vegetation Characteristics

The diversity of species in chaparral is reflected in the variation in plant response to burning. This diversity can be grouped according to population changes and methods of surviving fire. In this way, four regeneration syndromes can be distinguished. Many chaparral dominant species, for example, are obligate seeders with respect to fire. This means that their populations are killed by fire and require regeneration from dormant seed stored in the soil seed banks. Other dominant species also have soil seed banks, but can also resprout and are termed facultative sprouters. Populations of another group of woody species are called obligate sprouters; they resprout after fire and have no soil seed reserves. A fourth important group of species are post-fire annuals and short-lived perennials that are present only as dormant soil seed banks before a fire. Several recent reviews of these regeneration syndromes exist and should be consulted for more information (Christensen 1985, Keeley and Keeley 1988, Parker and Kelly, in press).

What is apparent is a spectrum of species, some of which sprout and some of which maintain seed banks in the soil. The various combinations establish a spectrum of vulnerability for management practice. Some species are extremely resilient, while others are readily eliminated. To maximize the diversity and rate of vegetation response and to know how careful one must be requires knowledge of what combination of species exists at the site, at least in terms of their regeneration responses.

The rate of chaparral post-fire recovery and the resilience of the vegetation depend in part, therefore, on the combination of species present at a site. If all the woody species are obligate sprouters and a large and diverse seed bank of temporary species exists, then the site will appear to recover rather rapidly. If all the woody species are obligate seeders and few temporary species are in the seed bank, then the

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Professor of Biology, San Francisco State University, San Francisco, Calif.

vegetation remains open and appears to recover rather slowly.

Environmental Variables

Not only are vegetation characteristics important to understand, but so too are environmental characteristics. For example, in Marin County, California, serpentine soil and sandstone soil chaparral occur side by side in many areas, but these two chaparral vegetations respond very differently to fire at any given season or condition. In part the response reflects species differences, but the species in common also respond uniquely, indicating that different phenologies result from soil-influenced moisture and nutrition environments (Parker 1987b). The result is that timing for a prescribed burn that would be effective in one stand would be disastrous in the other.

While soil type is a demonstrably important influence, so too are other environmental conditions. A large proportion of chaparral plant species depend upon soil seed banks for regeneration (Parker and Kelly, in press). To survive the high soil temperatures during fires, many seeds must be dry, while other seeds require relatively high temperatures to break open their seed coats so that germination is stimulated. Soil moisture conditions vary greatly in prescribed burns and will influence survival of certain species whose seed imbibe water, while reducing germination rates of species whose seed are stimulated by higher temperatures. These types of variation in influence on recovery, and their interaction with other vegetation characteristics will be more fully described with reference to the concept of fire regime.

FIRE REGIME CONCEPT

In the first year or two following a fire, chaparral is a substantially different vegetation from that which was burned. Obligate seeders are present as populations of seedlings lacking a soil seed bank reserve, the facultative sprouters as surviving resprouts and seedlings, the obligate sprouters as surviving resprouts, and the temporary vegetation as reproducing annuals and short-lived perennials with seeds on or close to the soil surface. A second fire in the first several years of recovery has great impact on chaparral. Such a fire eliminates the obligate seeders, kills many of the resprouts, and reduces any seed populations on or near the soil surface (Zedler and others 1983). Species diversity is reduced, cover is reduced, and the vegetation opened up for invasion by species from adjacent habitats.

The effect of a second fire illustrates that chaparral vegetation is not adapted to fire per se, but is adapted to a particular fire regime.

The phrase "fire-adapted" ignores the complexity of the fire regime to which chaparral has adapted. Fire regime is not a new concept, it has been more clearly defined recently, however, as including (1) the type of fire; (2) the intensity of the fire; (3) the season of the fire; and (4) the frequency of fires (Gill 1975, Gill and Groves 1981). When any of these characteristics are at variance with those to which the vegetation is adapted, then recovery may be poor. Two fires in a short period constitute too great a fire frequency for chaparral vegetation to tolerate.

CHAPARRAL FIRE REGIME AND RESPONSE OF THE VEGETATION TO PRESCRIBED BURNS

Chaparral vegetation has evolved in the context of high-intensity canopy fires that usually come in the late summer or fall every 30 to 100 years (Hanes 1977, Keeley and Keeley 1988). Prescribed burns vary in a number of characteristics from this type of fire regime. In the short term, as we have seen, species differ in their response to these variations. Populations of some species are immediately reduced while others show high survival. Species showing high rates of prescribed burn survival may decline in the long term.

One common difference between prescribed burns and natural fires is in the season of the burn. Many prescribed burns, especially in urban areas, may be conducted in winter or early spring for safety reasons. This can create several problems. A common dominant species, Adenostoma fasciculatum, or chemise, is particularly sensitive to season of burn. Mortality increases in burns from fall to winter to spring (Parker 1986, 1987a, Rogers and others, these Proceedings). This type of response has been known in chemise for several decades and has been used to convert chemise stands to other vegetations in the past (Biswell 1974). A problem for watersheds today, however, is that while chemise may be eliminated, controlling what replaces chemise could be more difficult. For example, invasive species like French or Scotch brooms are expanding and are often minor components of watersheds. Opening up of habitat by prescribed burns provides opportunity for these species to expand their own populations. In contrast to chemise, many resprouting species are less sensitive to season of burn.

Another problem with out-of-season burns is that as the burn occurs later in the winter and spring, fewer and fewer species germinate from dormant seed banks. The consequence is that reestablishment of native chaparral may be delayed into the second year, while a number of other potentially invasive species may establish. Less of the watershed has a cover for the remainder of the growing season and into the next year. The watershed becomes an erosion risk for a longer period of time. Availability of soil nutrients is increased for a short period of time after a fire,

but, if germination is delayed, then opportunity to recover those nutrients is delayed and lost.

As already indicated, frequency of fires is also a great problem, especially if the watershed is being manipulated as a whole for fire safety purposes. When fire safety is the only consideration, maintaining chaparral as a young vegetation is an important consideration. Thus, on first thought, a relatively short fire-free interval would be the best policy for fire safety. But too short a fire-free interval may result in degeneration of the stand in the long run and create large-scale problems. Even an interval as long as 20 years could be too frequent. Species utilizing soil seed banks for regeneration need time for seed production, and time to incorporate sufficient seeds at a depth that can survive a fire. Movement of seeds down to the minimum soil depth required is a process that has not been studied, and probably occurs at different rates in different locations depending on slope, soil texture and structure, rainfall patterns, animal activity, and other factors. Not all individuals survive a fire, even among the most resilient sprouters. A 20-year fire frequency may also be too short for obligate sprouters, which effectively reproduce only in older stands. Such a regular interval may result in loss of their recruitment, and cause a loss in population size as individuals are lost in fires but not replaced. The net result is that while attempting to maintain fire safety, the vegetation loses species diversity, and surviving populations are reduced in density. An opened-up chaparral may allow invasion of species that are more flammable and may decrease fire safety in the long run.

Another consideration in planning a fire management program that includes prescribed burning of chaparral is that a diversity of fire-free intervals for any one site may work better than a regular interval. Recall that there really is a diversity of responses among the species that comprise chaparral. Any consistent fire frequency will favor one set of species over all others.

Previous research has also determined that prescribed burns conducted when soils contain moisture can seriously reduce the response of the seed bank (Kelly and Parker 1984, Parker 1987a, 1987b, Parker and Rogers 1988, Kelly and others, these Proceedings). There are two very different reasons for the reduction in seedling establishment. One is that many species which form persistent seed banks produce seeds that absorb water, but remain dormant unless they have been cued to germinate, usually in response to fire. When seeds have absorbed moisture, their ability to resist heat is greatly reduced (Sweeney 1956, Parker 1987b, Parker and Rogers 1988, Rogers and others, these proceedings). Even though fire intensity is reduced in a prescribed burn, the fatal temperature range for these seeds is reduced to as low as 70 C for less than 30 minutes. Such an intensity and duration in moist soils occurs to

several cm in depth, beyond the depth of most seeds.

The second class of seed response is quite opposite to the one already described. In some types of seeds, the seed coat is thick and water is not absorbed, as in species of the Rhamnaceae, Leguminosae, and Convolvulaceae. Therefore, moist soil during a burn is not fatal for these species (Parker 1987b). The problem is that the intensity and duration of heat is generally too low to stimulate germination. The consequence is a lack of seedling establishment in the first year, and those that germinate in following years are generally not able to compete with the established vegetation. This condition has been observed under field conditions with Ceanothus greggii in San Diego County. In stands burned in early winter, where C. greggii and Adenostoma fasciculatum had shared dominance, chemise now totally dominates (White 1988).

IMPORTANCE OF SPECIES DIVERSITY IN CHAPARRAL

The importance of careful management practices is especially clear with respect to species diversity in chaparral. Species that comprise chaparral vegetation have been shown to vary in their regeneration methods. It should come as no surprise that they also differ greatly in a number of other characteristics. Chaparral species flower, fruit, and grow throughout the year. This variation in phenology or timing of activity patterns means that species differ in how much moisture is contained in the aboveground portions of the plants. Those active later in the season maintain higher amounts of moisture in their foliage. Further, species differ in the size and shapes of leaves, in stem structure and diameter classes, indeed, in all the characteristics that influence flammability. Mixtures of species minimize the ignition potential of a stand by providing a mosaic of flammability.

Species diversity in chaparral means a diversity of tolerances and responses. Even when conditions cannot be controlled throughout a prescribed burn, overall, a dense and rapid recovery is still possible if a diversity of species is present. Diversity will maximize the total chaparral cover, and will prevent grasses, brooms, or other invasive species from penetrating chaparral and later acting as sources of flash fuel ignition.

Other issues related to diversity are well known. Species differ in their susceptibilities to a variety of environmental stresses. For example, a pathogenic fungus causes large areas of dieback in Arctostaphylos myrtifolia stands near Ione, California, at the present time (Wood and Parker 1988). Similar diebacks have been observed in other species of chaparral. Predicting such damage is difficult, because it may result from the combination of pathogen source and

environmental stresses. The result is a vegetation that is less resistant to ignition, to invasion of other species, or other problems. Controlling these problems may not be possible, but maintaining a diverse stand of chaparral will reduce the impact of stress-induced dieback of a species on a watershed.

CONCLUSIONS

Whether to maintain water quality, to control erosion, or for other objectives, it is important that watershed managers maintain a healthy vegetation cover. When chaparral is one of the components, then particular care must be taken. Chaparral is sensitive to prescribed burns because fires kill a large number of individuals or at least their aboveground parts. Woody chaparral species are slower to regenerate and more susceptible to climatic variation than many other plants, and recovery time is increased. Chaparral should not be considered a fire-adapted vegetation, but rather one adapted to a particular fire regime. Variations from that fire regime can reduce the vegetation response by a variety of mechanisms, from increasing mortality to simply not stimulating germination. The greater the number of fire regime factors that vary from the desirable norm, the greater the impact on the vegetation. The examples provided examined fire season, fire frequency, fire intensity, and other conditions at the time of the fire.

Also important to these responses to a prescribed burn are the types of species. Regeneration characteristics vary among chaparral species. Their sensitivity to changes in season, frequency, and intensity also vary. The response of a particular watershed to a prescribed burn depends upon environmental conditions at the time of the burn and the combination of species present. This uniqueness of response underscores the need to know the species present and to understand the types of functional responses present in those species.

The phrases "fire-adapted" and "chaparral vegetation" hide considerable complexity. Other characteristics that are important sources of variation include soil texture and mineral composition, as in serpentine chaparral. In order to maximize vegetation response to management intervention practices such as prescribed burning, it is necessary that (1) the component species be understood in terms of their types of regeneration modes; (2) seasonal timing be as close to a natural timing (summer-fall) as possible; (3) fire-free intervals be relatively long and variable; and (4) other factors such as soil type and soil moisture at the time of burning be known and controlled.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I thank the Marin Municipal Water District,

the Rare Plant Project and Region 2 Office of California Department of Fish and Game, and the Mann County Open Space District for support during studies mentioned in this paper. I also thank Vicky Kelly, Sam Hammer, Chris Rogers, Mike Wood, and Dan Kelly who helped in various aspects. This paper was greatly improved by the comments of Jason Greenlee and two reviewers of the Proceedings and I thank them for their patience.

REFERENCES

- Biswell, H. H. 1974. Effects of fire on chaparral. In: T. T. Kozlowski and C. E. Ahlgren, eds. *Fire and Ecosystems*. New York: Academic Press; 321-364.
- Christensen, N. L. 1985. Shrubland fire regimes and their evolutionary consequences. In: S. T. A. Pickett and P. S. White, eds. *The ecology of natural disturbance and patch dynamics*. Orlando, FL: Academic Press; 86-100.
- Gill, A. M. 1975. Fire and the Australian flora: a review. *Australian Forestry* 38(1): 4-25.
- Gill, A. M.; Groves, R. H. 1981. Fire regimes in heathlands and their plant-ecological effects. In: Specht, R. L., ed. *Ecosystems of the world, volume 9B, Heathlands and related shrublands, Analytical studies*. Amsterdam: Elsevier; 61-84.
- Hanes, T. L. 1977. California chaparral. In: Barbour, M. G. and Major, J., eds. *Terrestrial vegetation of California*. New York: Wiley; 417-469.
- Keeley, J. E.; Keeley, S. C. 1988. Chaparral. In: Barbour, M. G.; Billings, W. D., eds. *North American Terrestrial Vegetation*. Cambridge: Cambridge Univ. Press; 165-207.
- Kelly, D. O.; Parker, V. T.; Rogers, C. Chaparral vegetation response to burning: a comparison of a summer burn to wet-season prescribed burns in Mann County. 1988 [These proceedings].
- Kelly, V. R.; Parker, V. T. 1984. The effects of wet season fires on chaparral vegetation in Mann County, California. Report to the Marin Municipal Water District; 19 p.
- Parker, V. T. 1986. Evaluation of the effect of off-season prescribed burning on chaparral in the Mann Municipal Water District Watershed. Report to the Mann Municipal Water District; 15 p.
- Parker, V. T. 1987a. Can native flora survive prescribed burns? *Fremontia* 15(2):3-6.
- Parker, V. T. 1987b. Effect of wet-season

- management burns on chaparral regeneration: implications for rare species. In: Elias, T. S., ed. Rare and endangered plants: a conference on their conservation and management. Sacramento, Calif.: California Native Plant Society; 233-237.
- Parker, V. T.; Kelly, V. R. Seed bank dynamics of chaparral and other mediterranean-climate shrub vegetations. In: Leck, M. A.; Parker, V. T.; Simpson, R. L., eds. Ecology of seed bank dynamics. New York: Academic Press. [In press].
- Parker, V. T.; Rogers, C. 1988. Chaparral burns and management: influence of soil moisture at the time of a prescribed chaparral burn on the response of the native vegetation from the seed bank. Report to Endangered Plant Project, California Department of Fish and Game; 40 p.
- Rogers, C.; Parker, V. T.; Kelly, V. R.; Wood, M. K. Maximizing chaparral vegetation response to prescribed burns: experimental considerations. [These proceedings].
- Sweeney, J. R. 1956. Responses of vegetation to fire: a study of the herbaceous vegetation following chaparral fires. Univ. California Publications in Botany 28: 143-249.
- White, Tom. Vegetation Management Specialist, Cleveland National Forest, San Diego. [Telephone conversation] 18 April 1988.
- Wood, M. K.; Parker, V. T. 1988. Management of Arctostaphylos myrtifolia at the Apricum Hill Reserve. Report to Region 2 Headquarters, California Department of Fish and Game; 91 p.
- Zedler, P. H.; Gautier, C. R.; McMaster, G. S. 1983. Vegetation change in response to extreme events: the effect of a short interval between fires in California chaparral and coastal scrub. Ecology 64(4): 809-818.

The Effects of Fire on Watersheds: A Summary¹

Nicholas Dennis

Over the past three days we have been presented with the results of a most impressive quantity and quality of research on the effects of fire on watersheds. My attempt to summarize these papers will hardly do them justice, but hopefully will recapitulate some of their more important and generalizable findings. My comments are organized into the following categories: soil temperature, soil nutrients, soil erosion, soil hydrology and streamflow, vegetation structure, stream temperature, and impacts of firefighting.

SOIL TEMPERATURE

Alex Dimitrakopoulos reported the results of a laboratory investigation of the effects of soil heating on soil temperature and on the role of moisture. He and his colleagues found that, except for prolonged heating representative of intense wildfire, extreme soil temperatures are confined to the top 5 cm of soil. Short-duration heating, which approximates conditions characteristic of most prescribed fires, causes temperatures to reach lethal levels for living tissue only within the top 1 cm of soil.

Soil moisture strongly influences the effects of soil heating. Wet soil conducts heat relatively rapidly, quickly attaining the lethal temperature range. Higher maximum soil temperatures were obtained for dry soils than for wet soils, however, and dry soil conditions must be considered typical of most wildfire events in California.

SOIL NUTRIENTS

In his review of fire in chaparral, Leonard DeBano reported that prescribed fire's effects are more extreme in chaparral than in forests because prescribed fires burn the canopy extensively. Chaparral fires tend to affect the physical, chemical, and biological properties of soils. Soil structure and cation exchange capacity change as organic matter is combusted. Availability of nitrogen and phosphorus to plants is particularly affected by soil heating, and fires often volatilize large amounts of soil nitrogen. Vaporized organic matter moves downward through the soil and condenses into a water-

repellent layer that impedes infiltration, especially in coarse soils characteristic of shrubby vegetation.

Soil microorganisms, which play important roles in plant growth, are highly susceptible to destruction by soil heating.

Nitrogen released by fire and deposited on the surface in ammonia form often gives a nutritive boost to postfire vegetation establishment. Nitrogen release diminished the need for, and the value of, fertilization immediately following a fire. Once the short-term flush of nitrogen availability ends, however, a long-term nitrogen deficiency sets in. These findings suggest that if watershed rehabilitation investments are made in fertilization, they should be deferred for at least one year following the fire. Although processes of soil nitrogen restoration are poorly understood, nitrogen-fixing vegetation such as some *Ceanothus* species probably play an important role and should be favored in postfire management.

SOIL EROSION

Wade Wells's survey of postfire soil erosion documented how fire initiates a process of soil movement that continues through subsequent rainstorms. During and following fire, dry ravel fills swales and channels with sediment. With the onset of even light rain, overland flows rapidly create rills that evolve into a complex channel system which provides a highly efficient conduit for saturated sediment flows.

Seeding of annual ryegrass has been the traditional strategy for reducing postfire erosion, but evidence provided by Wells, DeBano, and Glen Klock indicates that ryegrass seeding has limited value and may even be counterproductive for re-establishment of native vegetation, especially species of special concern.

Klock's travelogue through time in a watershed in the North Cascades showed how the speed with which nature is able to restore herself depends on natural conditions, such as elevation and moisture availability, and on postfire management decisions, such as how and during which seasons salvage logging occurs.

SOIL HYDROLOGY AND STREAMFLOW

Iraj Nasserri reported that the combined fire effects of vegetation removal and formation of a water-repellent soil layer can increase runoff by from 200 to over 500 percent in southern California's chaparral.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, Calif.

²Forest economist, Jones & Stokes Associates, Sacramento, Calif.

Peak flows also increase several-fold in response to intense wildfires. Interpreting results of his empirical research combined with simulations using the Stanford Watershed Model, Nasser found that fires increase the return period of floods associated with moderate and extreme storms. He suggested that flood control structures be designed based on projected runoff from a burned watershed, because fires often give rise to the peak flows that such structures are built to accommodate.

While this observation is extremely apt, I would suggest taking it a step further to remedy a semantic problem of considerable significance. Fires do not lengthen the return periods of floods associated with storms of a specified intensity. Rather, they shorten the intervals between floods of a specified intensity. Flood control agencies such as the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers should recognize the propensity of chaparral vegetation to burn periodically, and consider the effects of such fires in calculating return intervals for floods.

Models for simulating watershed hydrology such as the Stanford Watershed Model and the Sacramento Model, as described by Larry Ferral, are continually enhancing the ability of watershed analysts to project and assess the effects of fires and of several other watershed disturbances of natural and human origin. Such information is critical to urban and regional planning efforts to address the complex problems posed by rapid urbanization of rural lands (as emphasized by Harold Walt in his luncheon speech).

David Parks reported on the hydrologic effects of a forest fire in southwestern Oregon. His results are interesting in part because they contrast significantly with those of Nasser and others relating to chaparral fires. Parks found that soil hydraulic conductivity, water repellency, and anticipated erosion rates in intensively burned areas varied little in relation to vegetative cover whether the site had been logged before the fire. In fact, intense wildfire was found to have a relatively small overall effect on forest soil hydrology. The increase in water repellency caused by fire in the Oregon forest setting appears small relative to those reported by DeBano and others for chaparral. This difference may be attributable in part to the clay structure of the forest soils. Alternatively, repellency in burned chaparral soils may result from the chemical composition of chaparral vegetation. In any case, based on information presented at this conference, fire-caused soil water-repellency appears to be limited primarily to chaparral soils.

VEGETATION STRUCTURE

Thomas Parker discussed how postfire vegetation structure in chaparral depends on the reproductive strategies of prefire vegetation. Sprouting species generally become re-established faster than species that rely on seed germination. Because reproductive strategies of different kinds of vegetation vary, a diverse

flora usually has multiple strategies for postfire revegetation, which increases the likelihood of revegetation success. A diverse flora also reduces risk of wildfire ignition because some of its elements are nearly always green. I would suggest the hypothesis that the benefits of managing for stand diversity are not limited to chaparral but are equally applicable to commercial forest management.

Parker pointed out several implications that revegetation processes have for prescribed fire management. Fire intensity, frequency, season, and diversity of fire-free intervals all affect the rate of establishment and composition of the postfire community. He also noted the importance of fully accomplishing the objectives of a prescribed burn: partial burning may invite a subsequent fire far more destructive than the prescribed burn, or may fail to stimulate germination of desired species.

STREAM TEMPERATURE

Michael Amaranthus and his colleagues found that in a southern Oregon watershed where fire reduced average stream shading from 70 to 10 percent, postfire stream temperatures increased by from 6° to 18° F. Temperature changes were attributable primarily to the increase in solar radiation absorbed by the stream. Temperature increases were also highly correlated with streamflow. Amaranthus found that, in addition to live streambank vegetation and topographic features, standing dead trees were an important source of stream shading, and postfire rehabilitation should retain snags in the riparian corridor.

Watershed analysts whose observations of the political decision-making process have made them somewhat cynical about the significance of their work should take heart from Mr. Amaranthus's report that a forest supervisor changed a streamside salvage harvesting prescription to retain standing dead trees based on the findings of his watershed staff.

IMPACTS OF FIREFIGHTING

We have also seen and heard that fighting wildfires can leave its mark on watersheds. Inevitably, soil disturbance, vegetation removal, and stream sedimentation accompany large movements of firefighters and equipment. Backfires sometimes turn out to be more intense and destructive than anticipated. For example, Logan Norris alerted us to the potential water quality and fishery impacts of fire retardant use, and pointed out the importance of preplanning fire suppression tactics in ecologically sensitive and fire-prone areas.

SUMMARY

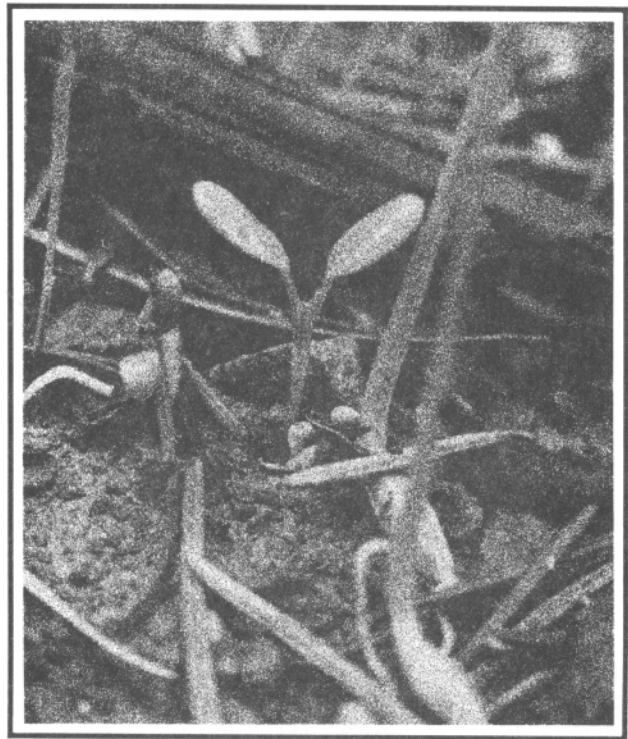
It became apparent to me in reviewing these papers that watershed research in and around California has

focused primarily on two major vegetation types: the chaparral and the mixed-conifer forest. Some broadening of this focus is especially important when we consider which wildland areas of California are experiencing the most dramatic changes in land use and vegetation cover. I am referring to the foothills of the Sierra Nevada and the Coast Ranges. A sustained commitment by the state to the resource problems of the hardwood range will certainly help focus needed attention on the many watershed-related issues of rapid urbanization. I would expect to see several papers addressing these issues at the next watershed conference.

Papers presented here on the effects of fires on watersheds indicate the major recent gains in understanding of watershed function and response to

disturbance. Empirical evidence and comprehensive watershed assessment are replacing casual observation and the narrow doctrinal perspectives of specific scientific disciplines. The opening-up of communication lines between hydrologists, botanists, foresters, soil scientists, and others through this conference and other activities of the Watershed Management Council is particularly encouraging and needs to continue to be fostered by each of us. Although we each have our own agenda and priorities for watershed management and research, we must keep in mind our common goals, among which must be the need to provide future generations with watersheds that work, and by that I mean provide abundantly for both our material and non-material needs.

Resource Recovery



Emergency Burn Rehabilitation: Cost, Risk, and Effectiveness¹

Scott R. Miles, Donald M. Haskins, and Darrel W. Ranken²

Abstract: The fires of 1987 had a heavy impact on the Hayfork Ranger District. Over 50,000 acres were burned within the South Fork Trinity River watershed, which contains an important anadromous fishery. Major problems within the burned area were found to be: (1) slopes having highly erodible soils where intense wildfire resulted in a total loss of ground cover, and (2) burnout of the natural woody sediment barriers in stream channels. Emergency watershed treatments included aerial seeding of selected slopes with species selected for their ability to germinate quickly and re-establish ground cover. Success was mixed depending on aspect and elevation. Mulching and contour felling were also used. Of the slope treatments, aerial seeding was the most cost effective, while mulching gave best results with least risk. Contour felling was costly and not effective. Channel treatments included straw bale check dams, which were effective in trapping sediment and stabilizing ephemeral stream channels. Log and rock check dams were installed in larger intermittent and small perennial channels, where large woody debris had burned, resulting in the release of large quantities of transportable sediment. This treatment was very successful in trapping sediment and stabilizing channels. Both channel treatments had acceptable costs and risks.

On August 30, 1987, a dry lightning storm caused over 100 fires on the Shasta-Trinity National Forests. Impact was greatest on the Hayfork Ranger District, with three individual fire complexes, including over 20 separate fires, covering 50,000 acres. All these fires burned within drainages tributary to the South Fork Trinity River. The lower reaches of these tributaries contain important spawning and rearing habitat for anadromous fish.

Following containment of the individual fire complexes, interdisciplinary teams were assembled

to survey watershed and facilities damage and to recommend and prescribe Emergency Burn Area Rehabilitation (EBAR) measures. These teams concentrated on specific areas of high burn intensity, highly erodible soils, domestic water sources, destabilized channels, and large capital investments. These teams recommended EBAR measures to maintain soil productivity, and to protect water quality and the endangered structures.

Implementation of the prescribed EBAR treatments began in late October using California Conservation Corps and Forest Service personnel. The goal was to perform the prescribed measures quickly so that they would be in place before the onset of fall and winter storms. All treatments were implemented by late November.

The purpose of this paper is to evaluate five of the more widespread treatments in terms of relative risk, cost, and effectiveness. Treatments prescribed to maintain soil productivity and water quality can be divided into two groups: slope treatments and channel treatments. Slope treatments analyzed include aerial seeding, mulching, and contour felling. Channel treatments include straw bale check dams and log and rock check dams. The analyses we have used for the different treatments are somewhat subjective, and are not statistically valid. This evaluation was not a research or administrative project, but simply the result of relatively rapid, representative sampling of five treatments. Cost data include equipment, labor, room and board, materials, and overhead.

PHYSICAL SETTING

The fire complexes were located within portions of the large upland area which lies within the central portion of the South Fork Trinity watershed. Elevations range from approximately 2,000 ft (600 m) along the South Fork Trinity River to 5,000 ft (1524 m) within the uplands. Average annual precipitation ranges from approximately 45 to 60 in (114 to 152 cm), and generally occurs between October and April. Stream channels within the upland area are for the most part alluvial and have relatively low channel gradients. Many of the streams are highly unstable because of the unconsolidated nature of the alluvial material in which they are incised. Lateral cutting is common in these stream channels. In contrast, channels along the margins of the upland area, especially the lower reaches,

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California

²North Zone Soil Scientist, Forest Geologist, and Forest Hydrologist, respectively, Shasta-Trinity National Forests, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Redding, California.

are steep in gradient, bedrock controlled, and relatively stable.

Nearly all the burned areas lie within the western portion of the Klamath Mountain physiographic province. Bedrock lithologies that are prominent include diorite, metabasalt, phyllite, and peridotite. The soils in the burned areas vary greatly in their erosion hazard potential. Highly erodible soils are locally present within the burned area, especially in areas underlain by diorite bedrock. Hydrophobicity was only present in a few areas within the burned complexes, and was not a significant factor in contributing to surface erosion hazards.

The burn intensity was highly diverse, with areas of low, moderate, and high intensity burn distributed in a mosaic pattern throughout each of the complexes. Approximately 20 percent of the fire complexes burned hot; 40 percent were considered moderate, and 40 percent were low intensity.

METHODS

The analysis evaluated the effectiveness of the selected treatments in terms of soil or sediment stabilized. To help measure the effectiveness of the aerial seeding and mulching treatments in retarding soil erosion, the universal soil loss equation (USLE) (Dissmeyer and Foster 1984) was used. The authors understand the difficulty of using USLE on steep forest land; however, the method seems to offer the best source of information available on potential erosion rates for a variety of factors such as soil erodibility, slope, slope length, and cover.

For our purpose, USLE was calculated for a 30 and 50 percent slope using a conservative slope length of 25 ft (7.6 m) and three different k factors representative of a low, moderate, and high soil erodibility. Each k factor was then calculated using a 0, 20, and 75 percent cover factor. The relationship between cover classes for a given k factor or erodibility class is given in figure 1. The figure also indicates the estimate of soil that was held on site for a given set of site factors and level of cover established by the treatments.

Soil trapped behind logs in the contour felling prescription was measured in representative tenth-acre (.04 ha) plots. Sediment caught behind check dams was measured by digging trenches or auguring the deposits, and measuring the width and length of the wedge.

SLOPE MEASURES

Slope treatments were intended to replace lost ground cover in order to prevent surface erosion, to disperse overland flow and prevent water

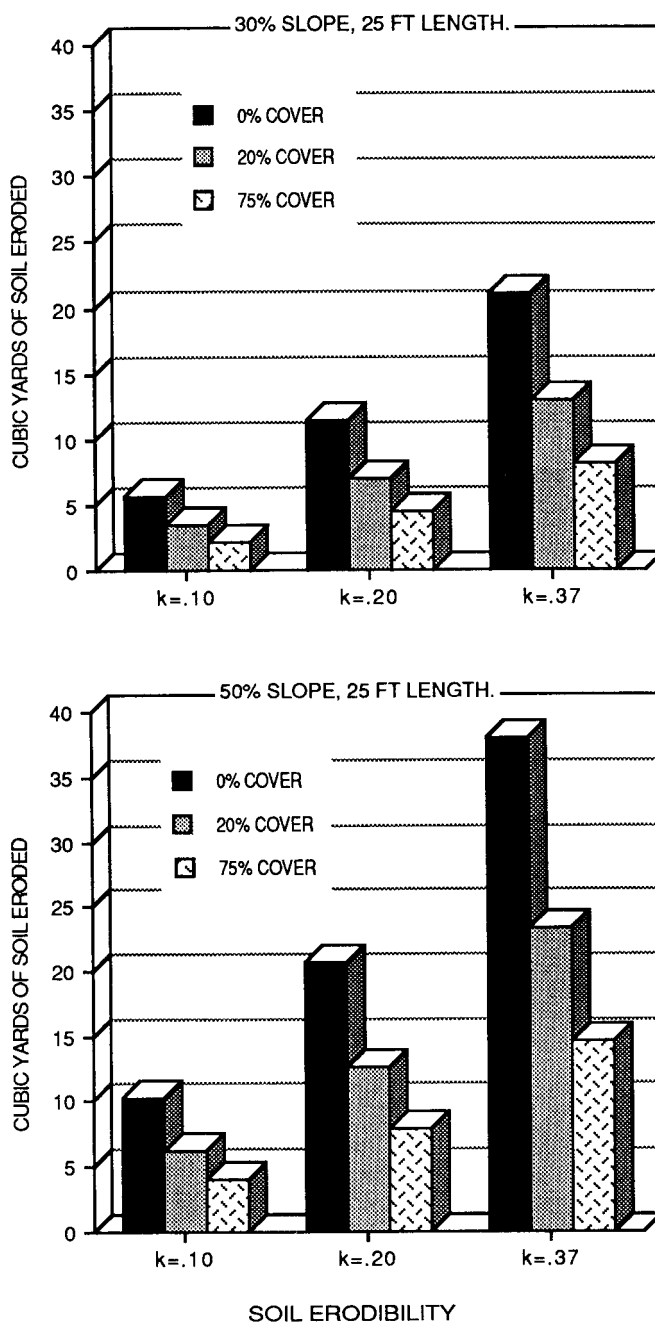


Figure 1--Effect of ground cover on soil erosion.

concentration, and to provide local sediment storage sites. Slope treatments selected for analysis include aerial seeding, mulching, and contour felling.

Aerial Seeding

Aerial seeding was prescribed as a means of reducing surface erosion. The areas considered

for this treatment were (1) highly erodible soils that burned very hot and had lost all ground cover, (2) areas adjacent to drainages which had burned hot, and (3) all equipment constructed fire lines. The seeding was done to provide ground cover that would protect the soil from raindrop impact and to provide a stabilizing root mass to bind the surface soil particles together. Two seed mixes (table 1) were selected to accomplish these objectives.

The perennial mix was prescribed for noncommercial brush fields, for fire lines, and for areas adjacent to perennial streams where a more permanent ground cover was needed. Orchard grass was the only perennial species in the perennial mix. The annual mix was seeded on forest land that was intended for restocking with timber species.

The barley was selected for its ability to (1) germinate rapidly and provide the ground cover needed before the winter rains, (2) die off after the first year (seed is retained in the seed head, thus preventing germination), and (3) provide a mulch for the second year. Some species in the mixes, such as blando brome, may not die out after several years, but these were considered nonaggressive as competitors for conifer seedlings. In addition to their value for erosion control, the inoculated subterranean clover and birdsfoot trefoil have the ability to add nitrogen to the soil, and provide benefits to wildlife.

The majority of the 2,155 acres (872 ha) were seeded by helicopter at an average cost of \$55 per acre. Over 100,000 lb (45360 kg) of seed were applied to the burn areas.

During the seeding operations, seed cards were placed to monitor seed distribution. It was determined that a seed density of 50/ft²

Table 1--Seed tables

Seed Species	Annual Mix	
	Lb/Acre	Seeds/ft ²
Cereal barley	44	15
Blando brome	2	13
Birdsfoot trefoil	2	21
Subterranean clover	<u>2</u>	<u>3</u>
Total	50	52

Seed Species	Perennial Mix	
	Lb/Acre	Seeds/ft ²
Cereal barley	40	13
Zorro fescue	2	30
Blando brome	2	13
Orchard grass	2	8
Birdsfoot trefoil	2	21
Subterranean clover	<u>2</u>	<u>3</u>
Total	50	88

(538/m²) was achieved. After the first winter, germination was monitored. Results ranged from 3 to 21/ft² (32 to 226/m²), or 6 to 42 percent germination success. This resulted in a range of 10 to 90 percent ground cover, measured in the spring.

The USLE analysis (figure 1) indicates that for the least erodible sites (30 percent slope, k=0.10, and 20 percent cover), seeding potentially reduced soil erosion by approximately 2 yd³/acre (4 m³/ha). For highly erodible sites (50 percent slope, k=0.37 and 75 percent cover), seeding potentially reduced soil erosion by 24 yd³/acre (45 m³/ha). Using USLE as the method of evaluation and given the acres in each group of erodibility and cover class, the authors estimated that grass seeding Stabilized soil at an average of 7 yd³/acre (13 m³/ha) during the first year.

Using the cost of \$55/ac to seed an acre aerially, and assuming the treatment stabilized 7 yd³/acre (13m³/ha), seeding cost less than \$8/yd³/acre to stabilize. Even if the USLE derived values are halved, to be conservative, the cost per cubic yard of soil stabilized is less than \$16, which is still cost effective erosion control.

As for all treatments, there are risks associated with seeding. One problem encountered in this project was the difficulty in applying the seed to the ground before rain and before the weather turned too cool to germinate the seed. There was a small but effective rain during the first week of the seeding, but no rain for the following 3-week period. The first areas seeded had southerly aspects and were at a low elevation. The seed germinated quickly following the rain and put on much more growth than higher elevation sites which were seeded last. Even though the seeding was completed at the higher elevation sites while the weather was still fairly warm, there was no moisture to germinate the seed until after the weather turned cold. The barley germinated after the late rains and grew about 2 inches (5 cm) high before going dormant for the winter. In this state, the barley probably provided a minimum amount of erosion control. The other species were not noticeably present during the winter. They either had not germinated or were too small to perform any effective erosion control.

Mulching

Burned areas considered for mulching were (1) road fill slopes adjacent to perennial streams, (2) fire lines in highly erodible soils, (3) areas where fire lines crossed drainages, and (4) areas with extreme erosion hazards. The objective of mulching was to minimize erosion by providing a suitable ground cover to help reduce raindrop impact and to disperse overland flow.

Approximately 35 acres (14 ha) were treated within the burned areas.

Wheat straw was applied by hand at a rate of 2 t/acre (4483 kg/ha) on areas that did not have access for straw blowers. On large fire lines and road fill slopes where straw blowers could be used, the straw was applied at 1 t/acre (2242 kg/ha). Both methods achieved nearly 100% percent ground cover at the time of application. In the spring, analysis indicated that the hand spread mulch at 2 t/acre (4483 kg/ha) still provided nearly 100 percent ground cover but the 1 t/acre (2242 kg/ha) machine blown straw had decreased to about 60 percent ground cover, due to wind and settling from the rain.

Following the same method used to evaluate erosion control for seeding and assuming a 75 percent ground cover from the straw mulch on a moderately erodible soil ($k=0.20$), the practice as seduced erosion by 8 and 13 yd³/acre (15 and 25 m³/ha) on a 30 and 50 percent slope respectively. This averages about 10 yd³/acre (19 m³/ha) of soil stabilized.

The average cost of straw mulching by both methods was \$350 per acre. Assuming that the treatment trapped 10 yd³/acre (19 m³/ha), the cost per cubic yard of soil stabilized was \$35.

The risks associated with straw mulching are small; it is a simple task to perform either by hand or straw blower. However, large crews are required for reasonable progress. Strong winds can blow the straw off site but these effects can be minimized by applying it at 2 t/acre (4483 kg/ha), by punching it into the soil with equipment, or by falling submerchantable trees on top of it to hold it down. Logistics of getting straw to remote areas can be expensive, but helicopters using cargo nets are very effective.

Contour Felling

Contour felling was another measure prescribed to limit surface erosion from highly erodible slopes which burned intensively. The objective of contour felling was to provide sediment storage sites on the hillslope and to disperse overland flow. Contour felling was performed by felling submerchantable trees (less than 10 in [25 cm] DBH) which were bucked and limbed so they would rest on the ground surface. They were then placed on the contour and braced, where possible, against stumps. Slash and soil was placed on the uphill side of the log in order to plug minor bridging with the underlying ground surface. The logs were spaced approximately 15 to 20 ft (4 to 6 m) apart on the slope in order to minimize exposed slope length. Typically, 80 to 100 trees/acre (200 to 250 trees/ha) were felled.

Contour felling was performed on approximately 80 acres (32 ha) at an average cost of \$500 per acre, making it the most expensive of the slope

treatments. In evaluating the effectiveness of the treatment, it was apparent that for the most part, the specifications were not met. Bridging of the ground surface was relatively common, and many logs were not placed properly on the contour.

Measurements indicated that a range of 0 to 2.4 ft³ (0 to .068 m³) of soil was stored at each site and a total of 2 to 9 yd³ stored per acre (4 to 17m³/ha). If we use an average value of 4 yd³ per acre (7.5 m³/ha) of soil stabilized, which we believe to be somewhat optimistic, the cost is \$125/yd³.

There are many risks in this treatment. The task is relatively difficult to perform. The logs need to be placed as close as possible to the contour to be effective and all areas bridged by the log need to be plugged. If this is not done, water is concentrated, leading to rilling and accelerated erosion. The effectiveness of the treatment also depends on the stand composition. The treatment does not work well in old-growth stands where small trees are not abundant. The task is very slow; few acres can be treated in a day, even by a large labor force. In addition, the storage area offered by these submerchantable logs is not tremendous; however, if larger logs are used, their size makes proper placement more difficult. Our experience indicates that a more effective practice would be to simply fall all submerchantable and nonmerchantable trees and then limb, buck, and scatter them. The cost would be less and the practice may be more effective.

CHANNEL MEASURES

Channel treatments were prescribed to trap sediment and soil derived from adjacent slopes or within the channel and to replace burned large woody debris which provided sediment storage and local grade control. Several channel measures were used within the burned area. The most widespread of the practices were installation of straw bale check dams and larger log and rock check dams.

Straw Bale Check Dams

Straw bale check dams were prescribed to meet the objective of preventing sediment, eroded from hillslopes or destabilized within the channel after burnout of large woody material, from moving downstream through ephemeral and minor intermittent stream channels into the higher value perennial streams. The check dams would also serve the purpose of establishing a grade control that would reduce the potential for stream channel downcutting, a major source of accelerated erosion.

The check dams were designed to control rainfall-generated runoff and act as settling ponds to capture eroded soil and entrained sediment. Straw bales were chosen as the basic

construction material because they were relatively inexpensive, easy to transport, were impermeable enough to capture water, and could be quickly constructed into the desired small-scale dam.

Site selection for the application of straw bale check dams was based on intensity of burn, channel condition, erodibility of the soils, and proximity to high-value beneficial uses of the water. Most commonly, a series of dams were constructed within the channels. Individual dam sites were selected to minimize the number of bales needed for construction while maximizing the area of storage upstream from the dam.

Efforts were made to prevent water from channeling under the bales by smoothing the ground surface. Three-foot lengths of rebar were spiked through each bale, with log or rock energy dissipators constructed below the spillway bales. Over 1300 straw bale check dams were constructed during the rehabilitation effort. The dams averaged five bales in width and cost an average of \$110.

A representative sample of straw bale check dams were selected for analysis. A check dam failure was recorded if it was apparent that the structure had not worked as designed, allowing unknown quantities of sediment to pass downstream. In all, 13 percent of the structures were deemed to be failures. Failures occurred primarily from piping under or between the bales, or from undercutting of the central bale due to scour from the water flowing over the spillway bale.

The average quantity of sediment trapped was 1.5 yd³ (1.1 m³) of sediment per check dam. Quantities varied primarily due to potential storage capacity. Stream gradient was the most influencing factor controlling storage capacity. Generally, ephemeral and minor intermittent stream channels have relatively high channel gradients. Channel gradient ranged from 5 to 35 percent, averaging 20 percent. Greater storage capacities could be achieved by locating the dams on lower gradient channels whenever possible, and placing the bales on their side.

Efficiency of the straw bale check dams can be expressed as \$73/yd³ of sediment. Success rates could be increased by including the use of filter fabric on the upstream side of the dam and on the spillway, with some additional armoring of the spillway. Over 200 of the dams were constructed in this manner. However, decreasing the failure rate to 5 percent increased the cost per structure by \$50, which does not seem to be justified.

One of the limitations of the straw bale check dams is their life expectancy. The straw in the bales begins to decompose as soon as it is exposed to the elements. After 3 years the straw bales no longer provide any support for the captured sediment. Some of the sediment is stabilized by that time by means of natural vegetation and

planted willow cuttings. Small logs and other woody debris placed downstream from the bales during their construction for spillway stabilization provide longer lasting storage for the sediment once the straw is gone. Even if the dams fail after several years, they still have accomplished their objective and continue to meter the sediment through the fluvial system in an acceptable manner.

Log and Rock Check Dams

Check dams constructed of logs or rocks were prescribed for some large intermittent and small perennial stream channels for the purpose of stream channel stabilization and sediment storage. In channels in areas severely burned, the large, stabilizing organic material had often been burned out. Log and rock check dams were prescribed to recapture the destabilized sediment and maintain the channel stability through grade control during the first winter following the fire. A potential extra benefit would be realized if the dams captured additional sediment generated from the burned slopes.

The dams were individually designed from standard check dam designs incorporating keyways, design flow spillways, and splash aprons. The log structures used logs 12 to 18 inches (30 to 40 cm) in diameter which were available at each site. Rock dams were constructed using a single fence design. Rocks were either hauled in or obtained at the site. Filter fabric was used in the lateral and bottom keyways, and on the banks adjacent to the dam in order to prevent undercutting and sidecutting, and on the face of the dam in order to make the dam more impermeable.

Fourteen structures were built at an average cost of 935 per structure. An average of 40 yd³ (30 m³) of sediment was captured per structure. None of the structures failed, although some needed maintenance to prevent future failure. Captured sediment ranged from 2 to 125 yd³ (1.5 to 95 m³). A more severe winter would have resulted in more sediment being captured, assuming no failures.

Efficiency of the log and rock check dams can be expressed as \$23/yd³ of sediment captured. The life expectancy of the log dams is 15 to 30 years. Rock structures are predicted to last until the next significant flood event.

DISCUSSION

The different slope treatments are compared in table 2. (Since slope treatments had different objectives than did channel treatments, we chose not to compare the two groups.) It is evident that aerial seeding had many advantages over mulching and contour felling. Both the cost per cubic yard of soil stabilized and the cost per acre treated were far superior to the other two

Table 2--Slope treatment summary

Treatment	Cost/yr ³	Cost/acre	Effectiveness	Production Rate	Risk
Aerial seeding	\$16	\$55	Moderate	Rapid	Moderate
Mulching	\$35	\$350	High	Slow	Low
Contour felling	\$125	\$500	Low	Slow	High

Table 3--Channel treatment summary

Treatment	Cost/yr ³	Cost/Structure	Effectiveness	Production Rate	Risk
Straw bale check dams	\$73	\$110	High	High	Low
Log and rock check dams	\$23	\$935	High	Slow	Moderate

treatments, because of material costs and mechanized rather than labor-intensive application. In addition, if many acres need treatment, aerial seeding can be performed rapidly, thus assuring that treatment of the land can be accomplished before onset of fall and winter storms. The disadvantage is that treatment success depends on the weather. The timing of storms, the risk of drying periods, the intensity of the first storm, and the onset of cooler temperatures can all affect germination and initial growth. In our example, the treatment was highly successful at the lower elevation sites that had rain shortly following application, but only moderately so at the higher elevation sites where temperatures were cooler and seeding was done after the initial storms.

Mulching also offers a reasonable solution to maintaining soil productivity and minimizing erosion with its relatively moderate price, high effectiveness, and low risk. The only drawback is the relatively slow production rate compared to seeding. If an area requires assurance of successful treatment, this is the appropriate treatment method. Considering available time, resources, site sensitivity and the downstream values, we would recommend a maximum amount of mulching feasible. The most sensitive areas should be mulched in order to minimize the risk of failure.

Contour felling is costly, of questionable effectiveness, has a low production rate and has high associated risks, because of variables such as stand type and distribution and the difficulty of meeting the specification. The risks of achieving success are considered unacceptable. We recommend mulching, which has a similar cost but greater production rate, or falling and limbing submerchantable trees. Either of these treatments would result in more effective soil stabilization, therefore more effectiveness in

terms of the cost per cubic yard of soil stabilized.

The two channel treatments can be compared in a similar manner (table 3). The straw bale check dams were more costly than the log and rock check dams, in terms of dollars per cubic yard, because of their lack of storage capacity. This difference is further reflected in the cost per structure and production rate. The typical straw bale check dam took approximately one hour to build. In contrast, the average log and rock check dam took 6 to 8 hours for a crew to build.

We consider both of these treatments appropriate for the individual site conditions. Numerous ephemeral stream channels required treatment. Using straw bales for structures was the most cost and time-effective measure available. In contrast, the larger channels had a tremendous volume of sediment available for transport and in conjunction with the relatively higher flows, demanded large, more sophisticated structures. This is reflected in the greater cost per structure but also in the relatively low cost per cubic yard of sediment stabilized.

Falling of large woody debris into stream channels can be an effective measure, but we believe that check dams offer a higher chance of success, in controlling flows and storing sediment. Falling and placing large organic material could be done in conjunction with check dams to achieve even greater success.

REFERENCE

Dissmeyer, G.E.; Foster, G.R. 1984. A guide for predicting sheet and rill erosion on forest land. Technical Publication R8-TP 6, Atlanta, GA: Southern Region; Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 40 p.

Emergency Watershed Protection Measures in Highly Unstable Terrain on the Blake Fire, Six Rivers National Forest, 1987¹

Mark E. Smith and Kenneth A. Wright²

Abstract: The Blake Fire burned about 730 ha of mature timber on the west slope of South Fork Mountain in northwestern California. Many steep innergorge and landslide headwall areas burned very hot, killing most large trees and consuming much of the large organic debris in unstable drainages. This created a potential for adverse effects on downstream fisheries from landsliding and the release of sediment formerly retained behind large organic debris. Emergency rehabilitation focused on enhancing channel conditions by falling and bucking downed logs and dead trees and by salvaging dead "high-risk"-trees that could displace soil directly into these drainages by toppling or sliding. Straw bales were wedged behind "replacement" logs to promote retention of landslide debris and other sediment. Current field observations indicate that some of these emergency measures have been effective in the short term. Further data collection and analysis will be needed to evaluate long-term effectiveness.

The Blake fire was started on August 30, 1987 by a lightning strike on the west slope of South Fork Mountain in northwestern California (Fig. 1). It burned approximately 730 ha of National Forest land between 1000 and 1700 m elevation, and killed about 250,000 m³ (60 MMBF) of timber worth an estimated 6 million dollars. Although small compared to other California fires, the Blake fire burned hot and in very unstable terrain. Approximately 160 ha burned at high intensity, killing all vegetation and consuming virtually all protective litter. Another 285 ha burned at moderate intensity, killing the trees but leaving a protective ground cover of unburned duff and subsequent needle fall. The remaining 285 ha burned at low intensity, with scattered trees dying during the first year. Some of the hottest fire burned in unstable drainages where much of the large organic debris was consumed. Sediment production from these tributary drainages can

adversely affect anadromous fish habitat in Pilot Creek and the Mad River.

Purpose & Scope

Once the fire was controlled and preliminary rehabilitation (such as straw mulching of tractor firelines) was accomplished, the primary management goal was expeditious salvage of burned timber. Field inventories of the burned area revealed that postfire conditions in many of the drainages and on adjacent slopes, combined with the geologic instability of the area, could seriously affect water quality and fisheries downstream. Poor access to unstable drainages limited what could be done realistically within the remaining 1 to 2 months before winter. Therefore, the Forest decided to concentrate emergency rehabilitation efforts on the most critically impacted drainages. This paper will focus on various measures employed in an attempt to improve the stability of these drainages. The apparent merits and difficulties of these emergency actions will also be discussed.

Geomorphic Setting

The burned area is underlain by rocks of the Franciscan Complex, including South Fork Mountain schist exposed along the ridge crest, and other metasedimentary rocks on the steep, benched slopes to the west. The Franciscan terrane has been extensively sheared and faulted, and these locally weak parent materials have experienced widespread landsliding over the past several thousand years. The colluvial mantle in the burned area is derived principally from South Fork Mountain schist and has a gravelly silt loam to clay loam texture with low plasticity.

Landslide deposits cover about half of the burned area (fig. 1). These older slides appear to be dormant, but subsidiary landslide processes have been active within and adjacent to drainages that occupy many of the lateral slide margins. These channels are recent geologic features resembling very large gullies and having unstable sideslopes like an innergorge. Nearby private logging in the late 1960's created similar gullies 5 to 10 meters deep where skid trails and roads concentrated water. Gradients of the innergorge/gullies vary from 20 to 50 percent, and sideslopes are commonly in excess of 80 percent. Fresh scarps and wet hummocky ground are widespread,

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Forest Geologist and District Earth Science Coordinator respectively, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Six Rivers National Forest, Eureka, Calif.

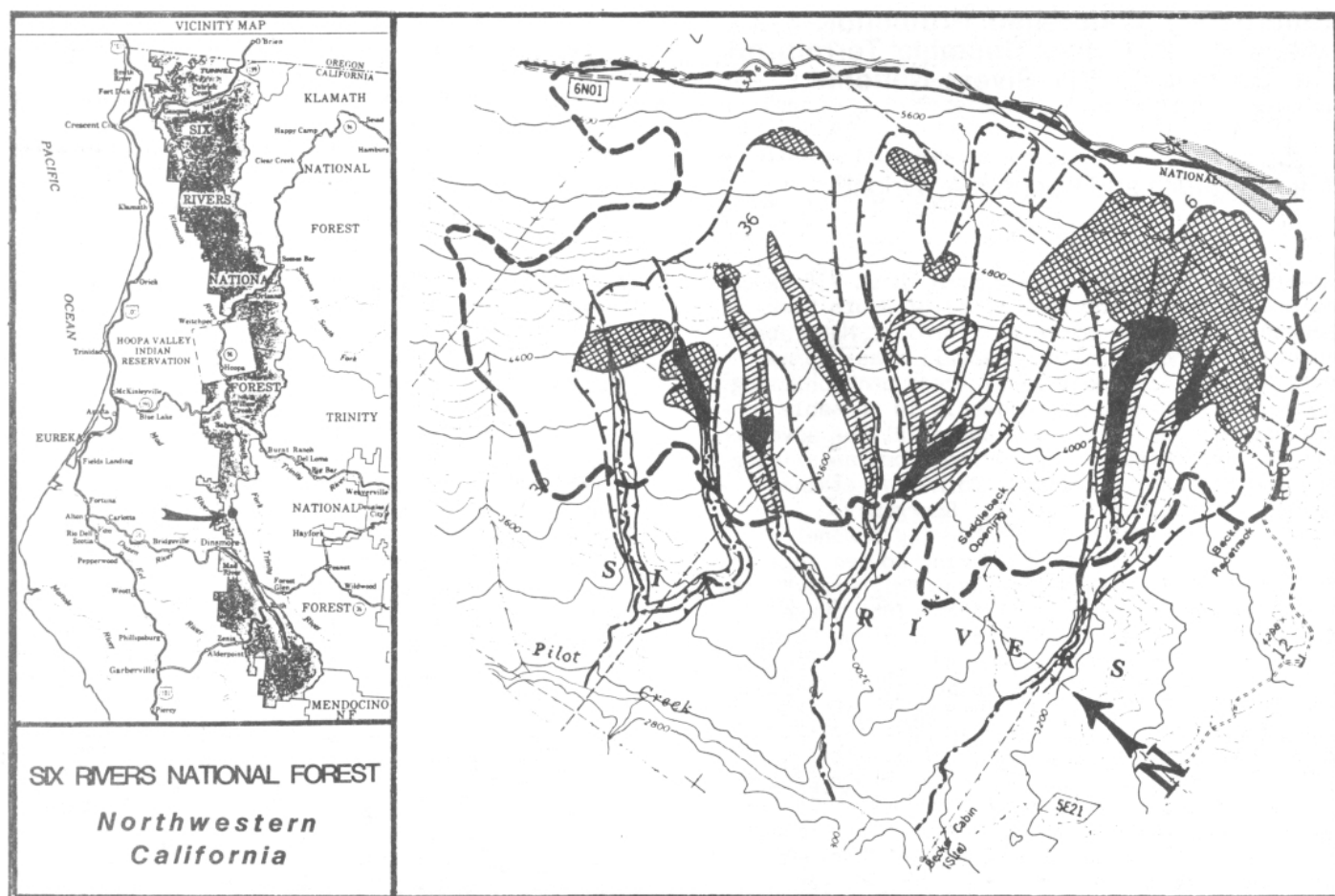


Figure 1--Location map of Blake Fire, showing burn intensity areas and landslide activity. Heavy dashed line - perimeter of fire; solid line with sawteeth - active landslide areas; dashed line with hachures - dormant landslide features and deposits; dash-dot line - stream channels; solid black - high burn intensity in active slide areas; crosshatched - high burn intensity in dormant slide areas; hatched - moderate burn intensity in active slide areas.

indicating a high susceptibility to debris sliding and rotational-translational slumping. A large amount of landslide debris has accumulated behind natural barriers of logs and boulders that occur along most sections of channel. The resulting profiles are very irregular with short cascades alternating with aggraded sections.

EFFECTS OF THE FIRE ON SLOPE STABILITY AND SEDIMENT PRODUCTION

Direct Effects

The fire had several direct effects that could influence future slope stability in the burned area. A large number of conifers were either

killed immediately or have died in the past year. In some places where fire intensity was high, root systems were consumed to depths of 70 to 100 cm. The most important effect was the almost total



Figure 2--Typical condition of burned out innergorge/gully area. Note 100 percent tree mortality and bare, unstable sideslopes.



Figure 3--Detail of postfire channel condition showing burned out organic debris and unstable sediment deposits.

mortality of trees within and adjacent to innergorge/gully areas where the channel acted as a chimney and concentrated the heat of the fire (fig. 2). Much of the large organic debris also was consumed in these channels because of the extremely dry fuel conditions (fig. 3). Material that was not consumed tended to be large and often was suspended above the channel bottom. Many hardwoods were burned, but most of their root systems have survived and are sprouting.

Potential Indirect Effects

There are several indirect effects that could occur in the burned out innergorge/gully areas. These effects vary in terms of severity of impact and likelihood of occurrence in a roughly inverse manner. We have attempted to evaluate severity and risk qualitatively, based on relevant literature and our own experience.

Short-Term Effects

We estimated that a large amount of sediment (400-500 m³) resulting from past landsliding was stored in the drainages affected by the fire. It appeared likely that the first winter storms would mobilize much of this sediment and scour the channel because the large organic debris that had formerly retained it had been consumed by the fire. Of lower risk but greater concern to water quality was the possibility that severe winter storms (having a 15 to 30-year recurrence interval) could produce widespread landsliding along these channels, as has occurred in the recent past. Much of this newly delivered sediment could also be scoured by streamflow and

transported downstream. Finally, the possibility of debris flows being initiated by a saturated debris slide near the head of an innergorge/gully was also considered (Johnson 1984; Benda and Dunne 1987; Bovis and Dagg 1987). Once mobilized, this type of mass movement could readily entrain large amounts of sediment in storage because much of the reinforcement of large organic debris in the channel had been lost. Such a debris flow would produce adverse effects extending far downstream of the area directly affected by the fire. In our judgment, this was a relatively low risk, but one that could not be ignored because of the severe potential impact.

Long-Term Effects

Sediment yield would probably increase over the longer term as well, due to the progressive loss of root strength from tree mortality, which would occur throughout the drainages in a common timeframe. This could increase the frequency of debris slides and shallow slumps compared to pre-fire conditions. The load imposed by very large (1.2 to 1.8 m DBH), dead trees on unstable slopes could trigger small slides as their root systems decayed. For typical slides observed in these drainages (15 to 25 m³), tree weight can be as much as 20 percent of the driving force. Toppling or windthrow of dead trees could displace additional sediment where actual slope failure did not occur. In addition, potential sediment production from scour of landslide debris and possible debris flows could increase over the long term. Because of the longer timeframe (10 to 15 years), the cumulative risk of these effects would be somewhat greater than in the short-term case.

According to currently accepted principles on tree root decay and soil strength (Burroughs and Thomas 1977; Ziemer 1981), net soil strength would be lowest and potential for mass wasting would be highest from 5 to 13 years after the fire. Because of the high percentage of true fir which decomposes rapidly, a significant loss of root support is expected within three years. Since most of the timber in these unstable drainages was already dead and would cease to provide root strength in the near future, the risk of removing dead trees was evaluated differently from the way it would be done in a conventional timber sale, where logging operations are generally avoided in this terrain.

EMERGENCY REHABILITATION

There have been differences in professional opinion regarding the value of organic debris in stream channels. Currently, the prevailing view is that large organic debris is a beneficial component of natural channels because it provides stability by dissipating energy and temporarily retaining sediment (Megahan 1982; Swanson and Lienkaemper 1978; Keller and Swanson 1979). The

storage of sediment and organic matter behind large organic debris in first and second order channels significantly delays its downstream transport. Large organic debris also can prevent sudden deposition of fine sediment in downstream spawning areas (Megahan 1982), and can store considerable amounts of sediment at the base of unstable hillslopes (Wilford 1984). We attempted to apply these principles in a practical way to promote stabilization of affected channels, with the objective of reducing the amount of sediment that might be transported during the slower, natural healing process.

Implemented Measures

It was considered impractical to duplicate channel conditions that existed before the fire. Much of the large organic debris that burned was relatively stable, having been partially embedded in sediment and wedged into channel sideslopes. Replacement material was available, either suspended above the channel or in the dead and dying trees adjacent to the drainages. Although it would not be feasible to embed the logs as before because of poor equipment access, the natural recruitment of large organic debris could be accelerated by bucking suspended logs and falling additional dead and dying material into the channels.

All burned drainages were inventoried and suitable locations for sediment retention structures were flagged. These sites were selected on the basis of availability of unburned logs or standing dead trees, the likelihood of logs staying in place, and the expected amount of landsliding above the site that could be retained. In steeper channel sections, retention structures were flagged at closer intervals (5 to 8 m) where possible. We wanted to intercept landslide debris as close to its source as possible to lessen the chance of its becoming a debris flow that could probably sweep away any structures downstream. In other words, these measures were not expected to prevent debris flows, but rather to contain landslide debris near its source.

Contract fallers were hired to buck existing downed logs and to fell additional dead or dying trees as directed by an earth scientist on site. Approximately 50 logs were bucked and 80 trees were felled in eight drainages with a cumulative length of 4 kilometers. The faller made the final determination regarding safe and prudent operations. There was often a difference between what we had envisioned and what could actually be accomplished safely by a particular faller. Because of this limitation, some of our original plans had to be modified during the falling operations. Straw bales were flown in by helicopter and later wedged and staked around the log structures by crews under the guidance of an earth scientist.

The sediment retention structures were relatively low in cost and could be installed quickly. Approximately 80 log and straw bale structures were created in the draws for \$24,100. The cost breakdown is as follows:

Helicopter and ground support	\$9,600
Straw bales	1,800
Tree falling	1,700
CCC crew (12 persons, 6 days)	6,000
<u>Project planning and supervision</u>	<u>5,000</u>
Total (80 log structures)	\$24,100

Tree values were not included but would add another \$8000 to these costs. Transporting straw bales to the sites by helicopter was the major cost component. However, the ground crews and helicopter stood by for two weeks during adverse and unsafe weather conditions in November. Only two days of actual flight time were needed. Once the materials were on site, it took approximately 3 person-hours to build each structure. The drainages will be planted with deep-rooted species in the spring of 1989 to increase their stability. We avoided planting grass or other shallow-rooted species because they would compete with the more desirable deep-rooted trees. The estimated cost for this tree planting and contract administration is \$40,000 or \$155/ha.

Another rehabilitation measure applied during the commercial salvage operations was to harvest "high-risk" trees from unstable drainages. The purpose was to remove dead or dying trees which appeared likely to undercut potentially unstable areas by toppling or by loading a small slide. These trees were individually marked and were to be directionally felled away from the stream channel. However, many of the "high-risk" trees had to be felled along the channel because of hazardous felling conditions. These trees were lifted straight up and fully suspended over the unstable terrain. Approximately 40 percent of the dead trees within drainages were removed. The remainder were retained primarily for wildlife and secondarily for future debris recruitment.

Short-Term Results of Rehabilitation Measures

The emergency rehabilitation produced a mixed success. In larger drainages (8 to 12 m deep) where bigger logs were needed, satisfactory placement was difficult to achieve. Some logs were poorly emplaced because the green wood did not break into shorter sections as easily as expected. Bucking existing material usually produced a better result, but hazardous conditions prevented bucking some suspended logs or felled trees that would have created a more effective structure. A workable compromise was to criss-cross logs sub-parallel to the draw axis. Sometimes, a second tree effectively crushed and embedded another log or tree that could not be bucked safely. Wedging logs behind large boulders was another effective technique used in these drainages (fig. 4).



Figure 4--Logs crisscrossed behind 12-foot boulder in large innergorge/gully. Note person in upper center of photo for scale.

In the smaller drainages, downed material was cut more easily into 6 to 10-foot lengths, forming an arc perpendicular to the draw axis. This generally produced satisfactory structures, but they have less capacity and may not be as permanent as the other more chaotic structures.

The 1987-88 winter produced no major storms. Only moderate amounts of sediment were mobilized in the burned area as a result of landsliding. Despite the mild winter, most of the structures in the smaller drainages filled to capacity, mainly with the sediment that was formerly retained behind burned out organic debris (fig. 5). The combination of wedged straw bales and logs appeared to work most effectively in the smaller drainages, judging by the amount of sediment that they retained. In some places, partial breaches developed beneath or around a log, suggesting that straw bales alone would have been considerably less durable in these steep gradient channels.

In the largest and most unstable drainages, only a few small slides occurred and less sediment was retained behind the larger structures. Straw bales were not effectively incorporated into these structures, primarily because of the size of openings beneath felled logs. Had more time been available, hand crews could have cut up additional small debris in the larger drainages which would have held the straw bales more effectively in place. It will probably require a major pulse of landslide debris to evaluate whether the larger structures effectively trap and retain sediment.

The harvest of "high-risk" trees was very successful in the skyline units because of cooperation between the sale administrators and loggers. Many "high-risk" trees were left in



Figure 5--Typical log and straw bale retention structure in one of the smaller drainages. Note accumulation of sediment behind structure.

drainages adjacent to tractor units because yarding probably would have caused unacceptable damage to the innergorge. These trees will either be felled into the channels in the future, or left for comparison to other treated channel sections.

FUTURE EVALUATION OF REHABILITATION MEASURES

In the absence of a control watershed with baseline data on sediment production and landslide rates, monitoring the effects of these emergency rehabilitation measures on downstream sedimentation would be inconclusive. However, in place of studying sediment production, some useful insights can be gained by measuring and evaluating the direct effects of sediment-retention structures and the removal of "high-risk" trees in these sensitive drainages.

Our monitoring will address the following questions: (1) have the log structures effectively intercepted sediment and released it gradually, (2) have the structures trapped landslide debris and provided stable sites for revegetation, (3) have small landslides occurred less frequently in areas where "high-risk" trees were removed than in areas where they were left, and (4) has the removal of "high risk" trees adversely affected the amount of large organic debris in stream channels? These questions will be addressed both qualitatively and quantitatively where possible by means of systematic observation, photography from reference sites, and stream channel mapping throughout the burned area. Large scale (1:8,000) aerial photography was acquired as a baseline for monitoring purposes in August, 1988. Additional photo coverage will be obtained periodically for comparative analysis.

CONCLUSIONS

1. Appropriate strategies for emergency and long-term rehabilitation in unstable, landslide-dominated terrain are different from conventional practices that apply in more erosion-dominated terrain. Where the burn intensity is high, as it was in parts of the Blake fire, a prolonged series of mass-wasting events may be initiated. Rather than planting grass and cleaning drainages of debris, there appears to be a critical need to add essential large organic debris to regain some channel integrity and provide for future stability within the framework of natural landslide processes.
2. Similar reasoning applies to salvage or harvest of dead, "high-risk" trees in unstable streamside zones. It may seem improper to harvest trees from innergorge areas where fire effects are so severe. However, leaving these "high-risk" trees may have more impact than removing them because root strength will diminish rapidly and residual tree weight may be a significant component of the load on small slides in this terrain. On the other hand, the value of these trees for wildlife and as future sources of large organic debris in these channels should also be considered.
3. Preliminary observations suggest that the log and straw bale structures have captured sediment released by the burned-out organic debris and were effective in delaying the transport of this sediment to downstream spawning areas. Because last winter was relatively mild and because increased landsliding from the burn has not yet occurred, the effectiveness of these log structures in trapping and retaining slide debris, reducing channel scour, and reducing the risk of a large debris flow cannot be evaluated at this time. We expect that several years of careful observation and comparison with untreated drainages will be necessary for a full evaluation.
4. "High-risk" trees along these sensitive stream channels were successfully removed with minimal disturbance to the innergorge and channel banks. Long-term observations will be needed to evaluate the effectiveness of this treatment as well.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We wish to thank Chris Knopp of Six Rivers National Forest, and Bob Ziemer of Redwood Sciences Lab, Arcata for their constructive review of our original manuscript.

REFERENCES

- Benda, Lee; Dunne, Thomas 1987. Sediment routing by debris flow. In: *Erosion and Sedimentation in the Pacific Rim* (Proceedings of the Corvallis Symposium, August, 1987). IAHS Publ. no. 165; 213-223.
- Bovis, Michael J.; Dagg, Bruce R. 1987. Mechanisms of debris supply to steep channels along Howe Sound, southwest British Columbia. In: *Erosion and Sedimentation in the Pacific Rim* (Proceedings of the Corvallis Symposium, August, 1987). IAHS Publ. no. 165; 191-200.
- Burroughs, Edward R.; Thomas, Byron R. 1977. Declining root strength in Douglas-fir after felling as a factor in slope stability. Res. Paper INT-190. Ogden, UT: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 26 p.
- Johnson, A.M. 1984. Processes of initiation of debris flows. In: Brunsden, D.; Prior, D.B., eds. *Slope Instability*. New York: Wiley and Sons; 310-357.
- Keller, E.A.; Swanson, F.J. 1979. Effects of large organic material on channel form and fluvial processes. In: *Earth Surface Processes*, volume 4; New York: Wiley and Sons; 361-380.
- Megahan W. F. 1982. Channel sediment storage behind obstructions in forested drainage basins draining the granitic bedrock of the Idaho batholith. In: Swanson, F.J.; et al., eds. *Sediment budgets and routing in forested drainage basins*. Gen. Tech. Report PNW-141. Portland, OR: Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 114-121.
- Swanson, F.J.; Lienkaemper, G.W. 1978. Physical consequences of large organic debris in Pacific Northwest streams. Gen. Tech. Report PNW-69. Portland, OR: Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.
- Wilford, D.J. 1984. The sediment-storage function of large organic debris at the base of unstable slopes. In: Meehan, W.R.; Merrell, T.R.; Hanley, T.A., ed. *Fish and wildlife relationships in old-growth forests: Proceedings of a symposium*. American Institute of Fishery Research Biologists; 115-119.
- Zierner, R.R. 1981. The role of vegetation in the stability of forested slopes. In: *Proceedings XVII, IUFRO World Congress*; 1981 September 6-17; Kyoto, Japan; 297-308.

Emergency Watershed Treatments on Burned Lands in Southwestern Oregon¹

Ed Gross, Ivars Steinblums, Curt Ralston, and Howard Jubas²

ABSTRACT

Following extensive, natural wildfires on the Siskiyou National Forest in southwest Oregon during fall 1987, numerous rehabilitation measures were applied to severely burned public and private forest watersheds. Treatments were designed to prevent offsite degradation of water quality and fisheries, to minimize soil erosion and productivity losses, and to prevent offsite damage to life and property. Treatments were concentrated along stream channels and on steeply sloping lands prone to erosion and mass wasting. Treatments included aerial and hand sowing of grass and legume seed, 4,130 ha; fertilization, 2,750 ha; construction of check dams, 167 structures; construction of straw bale erosion barriers, 179 structures; spreading of straw mulch, 23 ha; planting shrubs and tree seedlings, 10 ha; and contour log structures, 70 ha. Success of treatments following a relatively mild winter ranged from filled check dams to untested straw bale erosion barriers and contour log structures.

Three large, natural wildfires occurred on the Siskiyou National Forest in September and October of 1987. These were some of the numerous wildfires ignited throughout northern California and southwestern Oregon by dry lightning storms on August 30th. The Galice Fire burned 8,500 ha; the Longwood Fire 4,000 ha; and the Silver Fire 39,000 ha. These fires burned mixed coniferous and hardwood forests in steep, rugged terrain of the northern part of the Klamath Mountains west and south of Grants Pass, Oregon. Precipitation for the year had been below normal, leaving soils and vegetation at near record low moisture levels. As a result, the fires burned at

¹/ Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988, Sacramento, California

²/ Forest Soil Scientist, Brookings; Forest Hydrologist, Grants Pass; Biological Technician, Cave Junction; and Forestry Technician, Grants Pass, respectively, Siskiyou National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Grants Pass, OR.

moderate and high intensities during clear weather, but slowed and burned at low and moderate intensities during periods of cloudy weather or climatic inversions.

Climate of the burned areas is Mediterranean and strongly influenced by the close proximity to the Pacific ocean. Warm and dry summers are followed by cool and wet winters. Winter precipitation, occurring as cyclonic storms, ranges from 150 to 330 cm, with about 90 percent falling between October and March. Rainfall rates range from 0.2 to 1.0 cm per hour, but often occur for extended periods. Summer precipitation is often non-existent, with droughts extending from June through October in many years.

Soils of the burned areas have developed from colluvium and residuum derived from metamorphosed sandstones, greenstones, slates, amphibolites, gabbros, and serpentinites. Soils on steep slopes are of the fine-loamy and loamy-skeletal families of mixed, mesic, Umbric Dystrochrepts. Soils on stable benches and ridge tops are of the fine-loamy, mixed, mesic family of Typic Haplohumults. In most steep areas the erosion hazard rating is moderate to severe, with annual potential erosion rates of 27 to 54 t/ha. For benches and ridges erosion rates are low to moderate, with annual potential rates ranging from 9 to 27 t/ha (Meyer and Amaranthus 1979).

Burn intensity varied considerably throughout each fire. Less than half the area of each fire was burned at high intensity, with the balance burned at moderate and low intensity. Numerous first- and second-order stream drainages burned at high intensity, killing all vegetation and stripping leaves and needles from all trees. About 30 Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii* Mirb., Franco) plantations, ranging from 5 to 25 years old, burned at high intensity. Long segments of steeply sloping land were stripped of all duff, litter, and woody residues, leaving exposed mineral soil. These burned-over forest watersheds presented many opportunities for emergency rehabilitation measures.

The objectives of this study are to describe emergency watershed treatments, to evaluate their effectiveness, and to emphasize areas where improvements can be made to the Emergency Burned Area Rehabilitation program. The treatments and evaluation apply specifically to the study area and care should be used in extending them to other regions.

METHODS

Emergency rehabilitation treatments and treatment maps were developed by a 7- to 12-person interdisciplinary team. Control dates for the fires happened to be well spaced, allowing the team to complete rehabilitation planning and implementation for each fire as it

was contained and controlled. Throughout planning, the interdisciplinary team interacted with Ranger District personnel and community representatives to develop treatment measures for the most intensely burned areas.

Emergency treatments were constructed and applied using standard and readily available techniques (Frazier 1984; Lohrey 1981; McCammon and Maupin 1985). Checkdams of several types were constructed in first order streams following designs of Brock (1979), Heede (1977), and Sommer (1980). Straw bale erosion barriers followed designs used previously on the Siskiyou and other National Forests in California and Oregon. Application of straw mulch followed methods used by Kay (1978, 1983) and as applied in past years on this Forest. Contour log structures described by McCammon and Hughes (1980) and DeGraff (1982) were used. Cordone plantings of conifer seedlings, a local technique, were applied to a steep, eroding site. Aerial and manual application of grasses, legumes, and fertilizer followed procedures routinely used by the Forest.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

In-channel Structures and Riparian Plantings

Objectives of these measures were to reduce channel downcutting, to minimize bank erosion, and to provide temporary storage of sediments while streambank vegetation is reestablished.

Check Dams

To provide temporary grade control and storage of sediments, 167 check dams of four design types using straw bales, logs, rock cobbles and boulders, and sandbags were installed in intermittent streams. Steel fence posts, "rebar," and wood stakes were used to anchor the dams. Filter fabric and wire mesh were used to prevent water flow and erosion under all styles of check dams except the sand bags. All types of check dams worked well to store sediment and/or reduce channel erosion. The following observations were made:

- Straw bales placed against woven wire fence and wrapped in netting were effective dams in streams with few cobbles and boulders (fig. 1). Water sometimes undercut check dams that were not sealed on the stream channel.

- Log checks were highly effective and economical on sites where suitable size trees are available and where it is difficult and costly to import straw bales.



Figure 1--Straw bale check dam. Bales are wrapped in plastic netting, placed against woven wire fence, sealed at ground line, and staked.

- Rock cobbles and boulders with woven wire worked well in streams where rocks are abundant. Woven wire and anchors are the only materials that needed to be imported to the site.

- Sand bags were highly effective and worked best to prevent headward cutting of the stream channels in fine textured soils (fig. 2). Bags made of slow-to-degrade erosion cloth should be used to insure that the structures will last for several seasons.

Riparian plantings

- Close-spaced plantings of Douglas-fir and big-leaf maple (*Acer macrophyllum* Pursh.) seedlings were designed to provide bank stability and to prevent erosion for 9 ha of riparian areas. These plantings will provide much needed long-term erosion protection for stream banks.

Douglas-fir seedlings planted in the riparian area of several streams in early 1988 are growing well. Several thousand big-leaf maple seedlings will be planted along these and other streams in early 1989.

On-slope Measures

On-slope structures and measures were used to reduce surface erosion, disperse drainage, and prevent damage to the road system. These include the following:

Straw Bale Erosion Barriers

-The structures, 179 in all, were made of four to eight straw bales, placed end-to-end, on the contour, on steep, erosion-prone slopes. Bales were carried to project sites by helicopter. Designed to trap downslope movement of sediment on steep, exposed slopes, these dams intercepted soil on the more erodible fine-textured soils. On sites with high permeability, very little if any soil was intercepted.



Figure 2--Sand bag check dam. Rot-proof sand bags are filled on-site and keyed to gully bottom and walls.

Straw Mulch

-Straw was spread as a mulch, several inches thick, both in contour stripes and broad coverage on 23 ha of steep, erosion-prone slopes. The mulch provided the simplest and apparently the most cost effective erosion protection measure available to prevent rain drop impact and erosion on bare, exposed mineral soils of steep slopes. The mulch layer also provided a moist, shaded seedbed for germination of grasses and legumes. Partly decomposed the first winter and gone after one year, the straw is a short-term treatment that provides immediate protection.

Contour-log Structures

-Conifer logs, 15 to 30 cm in diameter, were felled on-site and placed on the contour on 70 ha of steep, erosion prone lands (fig. 3). Designed to intercept eroded soil on the steeper slopes, these log structures intercepted very little soil on most sites. The only effective structures were those on very steep slopes with fine textured soils, where the contour-log structures intercepted newly eroded soil and provided the desired erosion protection. While winter rains were light, we believe that infiltration was near 100 percent, with little surface runoff on most highly permeable soils. In addition, some log structures were placed on slopes of 20 to 40 percent where erosion is minimal.

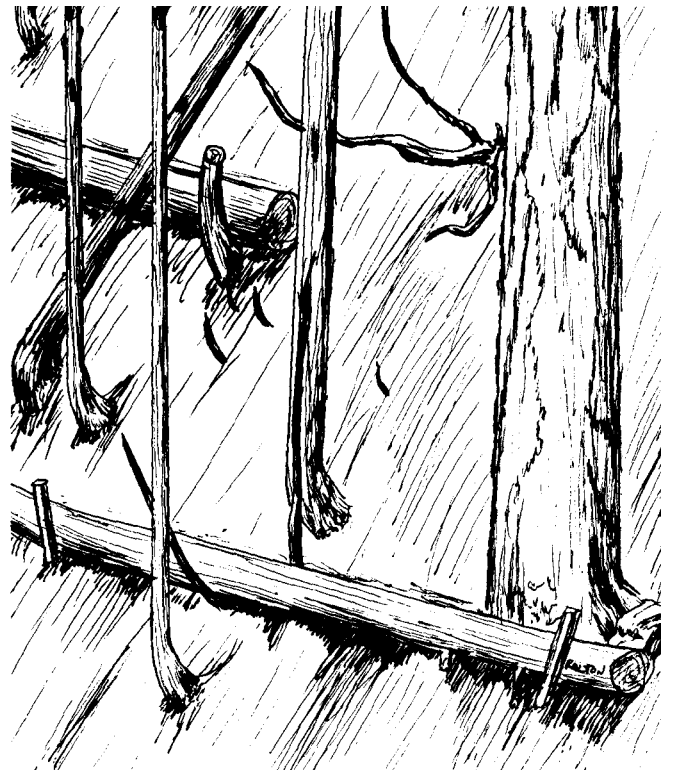


Figure 3--Contour-log structure. Bole of small diameter Douglas-fir tree is placed on slope, anchored with stakes, and sealed at ground line.

Cordones

-Douglas-fir 2/0 seedlings were planted in "cordone" style on a 90 percent slope of a pre-fire landslide (fig. 4). This slide posed renewed erosion activity following the Longwood Fire. We expect the cordones will provide an excellent, long-term ground cover on these highly erodible soils.



Figure 4--Douglas-fir 2/0 seedling cordones planted on a steeply sloping landslide.

Aerial Application of Seed and Fertilizer

-Annual ryegrass, (*Lolium multiflorum*) and vetch (*Vicia sativa*) were aerially applied at a rate of 45 kg/ha to 4,130 ha of erodible, severely burned areas. Fertilizer, high in nitrogen and phosphorus (16-20-0-15), was aerially applied at a rate of 280 kg/ha to 2,750 ha of the sown areas.

Following one winter, population and growth of annual ryegrass and vetch are excellent and have provided surface erosion protection. The effect of grasses and legumes on species composition and vegetative structure on native plants of

southwest Oregon, however, is poorly understood. Possible benefits, in addition to erosion control, include some shrub control and reduced vegetative competition for conifers. Negative aspects may include competition for space and moisture with native herbs and shrubs, with possible effects on the long-term abundance and composition of some native species. Work in chaparral ecosystems of California by Barro and Conard (1987) suggests that competition for both space and moisture are increased where grasses are planted.

Hand Application of Seed and Fertilizer

-Grasses and legumes were applied manually to 95 ha of erodible, severely burned riparian areas. In addition to annual ryegrass and vetch, the seed mix included orchardgrass (*Dactylis glomerata*), perennial ryegrass (*Lolium perenne*), and white clover (*Trifolium repens*). Population and growth of grasses and legumes in riparian areas is excellent and appears to meet the objectives of soil stabilization and erosion control for stream banks. Erosion protection and wildlife forage benefits are high for these sensitive areas.

Emergency road maintenance and post-fire storm patrols

-Following the fires, road maintenance for 70 km of roads included cleanout of ditches and culverts, replacement of several culverts, and installation of water bars. Storm patrols were activated for the first few storms of the year to maintain road drainage and to prevent accelerated road damage. This maintenance was highly effective and prevented any loss of road facilities.

CONCLUSIONS

Emergency burn rehabilitation relies on the Watershed Management group for leadership. Treatments, however, affect fish, wildlife, plant communities, fuels, range, timber, cultural resources, facilities, and communities.

Development of rehabilitation objectives requires a broad interdisciplinary team that may include community representatives and other agency personnel. The values at stake dictate that we include a spectrum of affected resource specialists.

Monitoring of emergency rehabilitation has a poor track record, and should be given a high priority. At present little documentation of treatment successes and failures has been made, with little data available for treatments applied to earlier fires.

The need to design structures in anticipation of a 25-year storm led to a comprehensive array of treatments. This points out the need for, and use of, accurate field data and past work to choose the best measures.

Selection of treatments and sites is a critical step for emergency rehabilitation projects. Without reliable data our interdisciplinary team tended to over-rate or under-rate most post-fire processes. Our experience indicates a need for a better understanding of the land, its resources, and natural recovery of forest ecosystems.

The projects point out the need to evaluate the ecological implications of domestic grasses and legumes on forest ecosystems. Effects of grasses and legumes on space and moisture needed by native species have not been documented for the plant communities of these fires.

Check dams appear to be a very effective means of preventing downcutting and providing temporary storage of sediments. We are uncertain, however, about the duration of sediment storage. Will that trapped sediment move downstream annually, or is it lodged, only to be moved only by the 10- or 25-year storm?

Routing of sediment is another area of uncertainty. While Amaranthus' work of 1989 shows considerable local, onsite erosion, the transport of sediment to the stream has not been well defined. Observation indicates that some eroded soil may reach the channel, while some appears to lodge at slope breaks. Are streambanks the primary source of sediment trapped by check dams; or does it come from the interfluvies? What portion of interfluvie erosion reaches the stream?

Aerial application rates of seed and fertilizer need to be carefully evaluated for the rehabilitation objectives. Stocking density in most areas was higher than needed to provide erosion protection. In this study, aerial application of seed beat the first rains. Success might have been measureably reduced if operations had been several weeks later. Consideration should be given to sowing grasses and legumes in strips to break fuel continuity of the dried grass.

Hand-applied seed and fertilizer in riparian areas appears to be one of the most effective and easily controlled methods of erosion protection. Wildlife forage and habitat is an added benefit in these out-of-the-way areas that generally provide wildlife food, cover, and travel routes. In future projects, application of seed would be considered for greater coverage of riparian areas.

Straw mulch, spread area-wide or in contour strips, is a simple and effective treatment for all soil types, especially for fine-textured soils that have low infiltration rates. Straw does, however, have a short life in this maritime climate.

Emergency road patrol measures, first used for emergency rehabilitation in December, 1987, proved to be an economical and efficient means of carefully monitoring roads and making small repairs before serious damage occurred.

REFERENCES

- Amaranthus, Michael P. Surface erosion in intensely burned clearcut and adjacent forest with and without grass seeding and fertilizing in southwest Oregon. 1989 (These proceedings).
- Barro, Susan C.; Conard, Susan G. 1987. Use of ryegrass seeding as an emergency revegetation measure in chaparral ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Report PSW-102. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.
- Brock, Terry. 1979. Erosion control in mountain meadows of the Sequoia National Forest. In: Proceedings of the Earth Science Symposium II, February 1979. Redding, CA: California Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 165-170.
- DeGraff, Jerome V. 1982. Final evaluation of felled trees as a sediment retaining measure, Rock Creek Burn, Kings River RD. Fresno, CA: In-service report. Sierra National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 9 p.
- Frazier, James, W. 1984. The Granite Burn; the fire and the years following; a watershed history, 1974-1984. Presented at the Water Resource Management Conference, September, 1984. Sonoma, CA: California Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 11 P.
- Heede, Burchard, H. 1977. Gully control structures and systems. In: Guidelines for watershed management; FAD Conservation Guide, No. 1. Rome, Italy: Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations; 181-219.
- Kay, Burgess L. 1978. Mulches for erosion control and plant establishment on disturbed sites. Agronomy Progress Report No. 87. Davis, CA: Agricultural Experiment Station, University of California; 19 p.

- Kay, Burgess L. 1983. Straw as an erosion control mulch. Agronomy Progress Report No. 140. Davis, CA: Agricultural Experiment Station, University of California; 11 p.
- Lohrey, Michael, L. 1981. Planning gully control and restoration; In-service report. Lakeview, OR: Fremont National Forest, Pacific Northwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 20 p.
- McCammon, Bruce; Hughes, Dallas. 1980. Fire rehabilitation of the Bend municipal watershed. In: Proceedings of the 1980 Watershed Management Symposium, volume 1; 1980 July 21-23; Boise, ID. New York: American Society of Civil Engineers; 225-230.
- McCammon, Bruce; Maupin, John. 1985. Fire rehabilitation; Paper No. 7. In: Protecting the forest; Fire management in the Pacific Northwest. Portland, OR: Pacific Northwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 3 p.
- Meyer, LeRoy C. and Amaranthus, Micheal P. 1979. Siskiyou National Forest soil resource inventory. Siskiyou National Forest, Pacific Northwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 258 p.
- Sommer, Christopher. n.d. Soil erosion control structures: Construction and maintenance manual. In-service report. Bishop, CA: Inyo National Forest, Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 41 p.

Wildfire, Ryegrass Seeding, and Watershed Rehabilitation¹

R. D. Taskey, C.L. Curtis, and J. Stone²

Abstract: Aerial seeding of Italian annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum*) is a common, but controversial, emergency rehabilitation practice following wildfire in California. Replicated study plots, with and without ryegrass, established after a summertime chaparral wildfire on California's central coast revealed the following: 1. Ryegrass-seeded plots developed significantly greater total plant cover than unseeded plots in the first year. 2. Regeneration and growth of native species were significantly depressed in the presence of ryegrass. 3. Soil erosion was significantly greater on ryegrass-seeded plots than on unseeded plots. 4. Pocket gopher activity was greater on ryegrass-seeded plots than on unseeded plots. These results suggest that ryegrass seeding for emergency rehabilitation of burned areas can be ineffective, and even counterproductive, in certain cases.

THE WILDFIRE-GRASS SEEDING CONTROVERSY

The 1985 Las Pilitas fire burned 30,000 ha of predominantly chaparral watershed in California's central coastal region (fig. 1). Although fires such as the Las Pilitas are part of the natural order in chaparral, they can cause considerable watershed degradation, and predispose the land to greatly increased water runoff and soil erosion. The ensuing runoff water and erosional sediments may inflict further damage to property lower in the watershed.

In an effort to minimize post-fire damage and speed watershed recovery, land management and resource service agencies in California commonly seed severely burned brushlands with one or more plant species that exhibit early germination and rapid growth. Following commonly accepted practice, nearly two-thirds of the Las Pilitas burn was aeri ally seeded with either Italian annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum*) or soft chess (*Bromus mollis*, also known commonly as Blando brome) (Calif. Dept. of For. 1985).

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, Calif.

²Professor of Soil Science, and graduate students, respectively, California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, Calif.

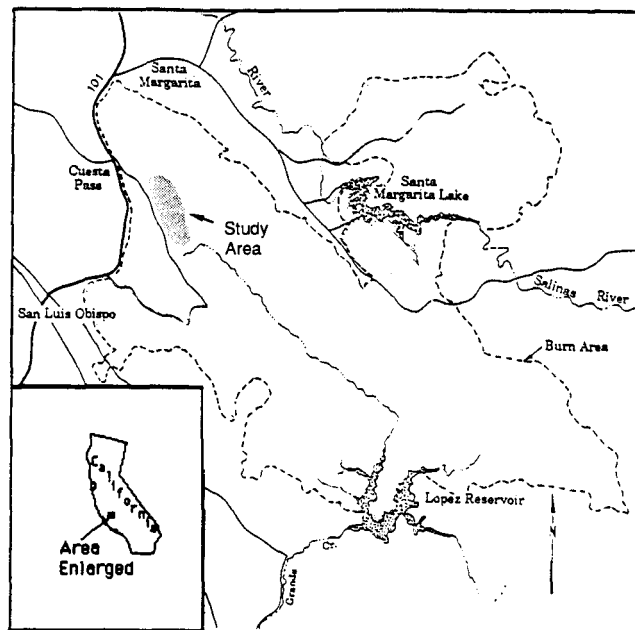


Figure 1--Study area location.

Since the 1940's, annual rye has been the most common grass seeded on burned chaparral lands of southern California. Its popularity in post-fire emergency rehabilitation work is due to its reliable germination, rapid early growth, short life span, effective ground cover and rooting characteristics, and broad site adaptability in mediterranean climates; moreover, the seed is inexpensive and readily available (Young and others 1975). Although seeding, especially with annual ryegrass, is a common post-fire rehabilitation practice, it is nonetheless highly controversial (Barro and Conard 1987, Gautier 1983).

Proponents of ryegrass seeding contend the following: The extreme surface runoff of rainwater from a denuded watershed erodes soil and threatens life and property by flooding and landsliding; therefore, plant cover must be quickly reestablished to mollify destructive forces. Although native species usually begin recolonization soon after a fire, their rate of recovery may be too slow to adequately protect the watershed during the first several years; therefore, artificial seeding is necessary.

Some proponents contend that seeded ryegrass is most effective during the first year after the fire, when erosion is greatest. Others argue that ryegrass is nearly ineffective in the first winter, but it becomes increasingly effective in the succeeding two years. Nonetheless, most proponents agree that although ryegrass may interfere with native

species, it dies out within three to four years, and does not threaten the long-term integrity of the chaparral ecosystem (Conrad 1979, Corbett and Green 1965, Dodge 1979, Gautier 1982, Kay and others 1981, Krammes and Hill 1963, Leven 1985, Los Padres National Forest 1986, Partain 1985, Schultz and others 1955).

Proponents recognize that artificial seeding is a gamble: It does not guarantee significant control of post-fire runoff and erosion, but it reduces the risk, and perceived liability, of taking no action. No one, however, can reliably predict the amount of risk reduction. If early post-fire rains are gentle, and subsequent rains are moderate, ryegrass likely will become well established, and the seeding effort will be considered successful. Alternatively, if early rains are intense, the grass seed will be washed down the hillsides, and soils will erode. Given the uncertainties, the perceived risks, and the fear of litigation, proponents feel that the most prudent action is to seed.

Opponents of aerial ryegrass seeding contend that the practice is costly, ineffective and frequently detrimental. They make the following arguments: First, most erosion occurs during the first year after the fire, before seeded ryegrass becomes established (Boyle 1982, Blankenbaker and others 1985, Krammes 1960, Wells 1986).

Second, predictions of runoff and erosion are highly uncertain, largely because they are based on assumed, rather than known, values of post-fire vegetative cover. Moreover, the total effective cover established by seeding is assumed to be significantly greater than that which could be established by natural recovery. These uncertainties and assumptions may cause ryegrass effectiveness to be overestimated. As a result, benefit-cost analyses of proposed rehabilitation efforts err strongly in favor of seeding (Blankenbaker and others 1985, Gautier 1983, Griffin 1982, Sullivan and others 1987).

Third, the seeded ryegrass is a strong competitor for water, nutrients, light, and growing space; and it may compete allelopathically with native species. It may virtually eliminate fire-following annuals, deplete soil nitrogen, and out-compete nitrogen-fixing plants; moreover, ryegrass may interfere with development of deep rooting natives that are important for long-term watershed protection. These interferences inhibit ecosystem recovery and impede watershed

rehabilitation; thus, erosion may be greater than under natural recovery. Although the grass may be temporary in the ecosystem, its effects are not (Arndt 1979, Biswell 1974, Corbett and Green 1965, Corbett and Rice 1966, Gautier 1982, Griffin 1982, Hanes 1971, Keeley 1981, Krammes and Hill 1963, Nadkarni and Odion 1986, Rice and others 1965, Wakimoto 1979, Zedler and others 1983).

Fourth, ryegrass dries out during summer, producing a highly inflammable cover of thatch. A fire in this thatch could destroy the young regenerating chaparral plants, leaving the ground bare for the following winter rains, and effectively creating an unwanted vegetative type-conversion (Nadkarni and Odion 1986, Wakimoto 1979).

Finally, the success of seeding efforts are judged more often by the amount of grass established than by the amount of actual erosion controlled or flood damage prevented. Thus, success is based more on assumed effectiveness than on measured effectiveness.

OBJECTIVES

The study had two objectives: 1. evaluate the effectiveness of seeded ryegrass in controlling soil erosion on test plots in the Las Pilitas burn area, and 2. determine whether or not seeded ryegrass would influence natural reestablishment of chaparral species during the first year after the fire.

AREA

The study area is located in the coastal Santa Lucia Mountains, on East Cuesta Ridge, approximately 7 km northeast of San Luis Obispo, California, and 24 km east of the Pacific Ocean. The area is characterized by moderately sharp, windswept ridges, steep sideslopes, and deep, narrow canyons. The study sites lie at approximately 650 m elevation, on slopes ranging from 40 percent to 55 percent steepness, and on aspects ranging (clockwise) from north-northwest to south-southeast.

The area's mediterranean climate is characterized by cool, moist winters, and warm, dry summers. Between 1942 and 1987 annual precipitation at the Santa Margarita water-pumping station, near the study area, ranged from 322 mm to 1607 mm, and averaged 767 mm, with more than 80 percent falling between April and November (San Luis Obispo County 1988). We assume

that average annual precipitation in the overall study area is comparable to that at the pumping station, although the station may receive more rainfall due to orographic effects. Snow is rare, but rainfall is augmented by an unmeasured amount of summer and fall fog.

Soil parent materials originate from well-consolidated, thinly bedded siliceous shales of the Monterey Formation (Hart 1976). The well-consolidated bedrock often lies within a meter of the ground surface. Small fissures and minor synclines are filled with ancient alluvial and colluvial deposits, which may be several meters thick. Soils are gravelly sandy loams to gravelly clay loams, which range from shallow over residuum to deep over colluvium and alluvium. Fragments of cherty shale cover 15 to 70 percent (mean = 25 percent) of the ground surface in study plots. Soils are mapped as Santa Lucia-Lopez-rock outcrop complex (O'Hare and others 1986).

The study area is a burned chamise chaparral community. Prefire vegetation consisted of dense stands of mature shrubs dominated by chamise (*Adenostoma fasciculatum*). On moister sites, manzanita (*Arctostaphylos glandulosa* var. *cushingiana*, and *A. luciana*) was a codominant, and toyon (*Heteromeles arbutifolia*), and scrub oak (*Quercus dumosa*) were associated species. The area previously had burned in 1929.

METHODS

Field sites were selected to meet the following criteria: 1. burned chamise chaparral; 2. unseeded by emergency rehabilitation efforts; 3. readily accessible throughout the year; 4. uniform geology and, as closely as possible, soil parent material; 5. uniform topography of smooth, upper portions of backslopes; 6. little chance of disturbance by people or cattle, and unaffected by runoff from roads or unusual features.

Soil Erosion Study

Eleven field sites, spread over 4.5 km, were established in November 1985. Each site supported two similar adjacent plots approximately 3 to 6 meters apart, and each measuring 6 m by 15 m, parallel and perpendicular, respectively, to the slope contour. Ten erosion troughs were installed along the bottom of each plot, for a total of 220 troughs. The troughs are welded sheet metal boxes 30 cm long,

10 cm wide, and 13 cm deep, with a 13 cm long apron on the uphill side (Ryan 1982, Wells and Wohlgemuth 1987).

One randomly selected plot in each pair was left untreated, and the other was seeded with Italian annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum* Lam.) at the rate of 17.5 kg/ha, to give an application of approximately 400 seeds/m². This rate corresponds to approximately 15.5 lb/ac, or 37 seeds/ft². California Department of Forestry and US Forest Service recommendation for Las Pilitas burned area emergency rehabilitation was 8 lb/ac, based on approximately 40 seeds/ft² at 200,000 seeds/lb (California Department of Forestry 1985, US Forest Service 1978). The seed used in this study measured 104,000 seeds/lb; therefore, the weight per unit land area was increased accordingly.

Sediment trapped in each trough was collected, dried and weighed periodically from April 1986 to May 1988.

Vegetative cover was determined in September 1986, by estimating the percentage of ground covered within a one square meter sampling frame placed in five random locations in each plot. Sample locations for individual plots were chosen by coordinates selected from a random number table (Wonnacott and Wonnacott 1972). Each set of five values, which were averaged, gave a 5.5 percent sampling intensity.

Precipitation was measured by two weighing-bucket recording rain gauges and two nonrecording rain gauges, distributed throughout the study area.

Analysis of variance was performed on data using a completely randomized block study design, arranged to test differences between seeded and unseeded treatments, differences among site locations, and interaction between treatment and site location. The number of troughs (10) in each plot constituted the sample size. The test statistics $F = MST/MSE$ and $F = MSB/MSE$ were applied to treatment main effects and location (block) main effects, respectively; $F = MSTB/MSE$ was applied to interaction. MST is the mean square of seeding treatment; MSB is the mean square of site location; MSTB is the mean square of treatment x location; and MSE is the mean square error (Little and Hills 1978). Although statistical calculations considered each trough as an observation, the histograms present mean values per plot to allow simplicity and clarity of presentation.

Plant Interaction Study

The plant interaction study included field and laboratory components. Field plots were established in November 1985 on seven sites, each adjacent to an erosion site. Each site contained six plots--three seeded treatment plots and three unseeded control plots, for a total of 42 plots. Plot size was 2 m by 2 m. The treatment plots were seeded with Italian annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum* Lam.) at the rate of 17.5 kg/ha, a rate equal to that applied in the erosion study.

Native and ryegrass cover, and species composition, abundance, and richness were evaluated on each plot in May 1986, using the Braun-Blanquet method (Westhoff and van der Maarel 1978).

For the laboratory portion of the study, 20 wooden boxes, measuring 0.5 m by 0.5 m, were filled with surface-soil collected from the burn area, and placed on a rooftop at California Polytechnic State University. Ten of the boxes were seeded in early February 1986 with Italian annual ryegrass at the same rate as the field plots, and ten boxes were left unseeded. No native seed was added to that which was naturally in the collected soil. Species composition, abundance, and richness were assessed in each box periodically for 21 weeks after emergence.

Statistical analyses of field data were similar to those used in the erosion portion of the study. Planter box data were analyzed by t-test for a completely randomized design (Little and Hills 1978).

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

In the year after the fire, plant cover varied significantly ($\bullet = 0.05$) with site location; nonetheless, it was greater with ryegrass seeding than with natural recovery. Moreover, ryegrass was the dominant species on all seeded plots. In May 1986, 10 months after the fire and 6 months after ryegrass seeding, plant cover with seeding significantly exceeded ($\bullet = 0.05$) that without seeding by 14 percent (mean) in the plant-interaction field plots. At the same time, native cover was depressed 23 percent (mean) in the presence of ryegrass ($\bullet = 0.001$):

	Percent Cover ¹	
Vegetation:	Seeded	Unseeded
Ryegrass	37.1 $\pm$ 24.0	--
Native	34.3 $\pm$ 21.0	57.7 $\pm$ 30.9
Total	71.4 $\pm$ 19.6	57.7 $\pm$ 30.9

¹Mean $\pm$ 1 std. dev.

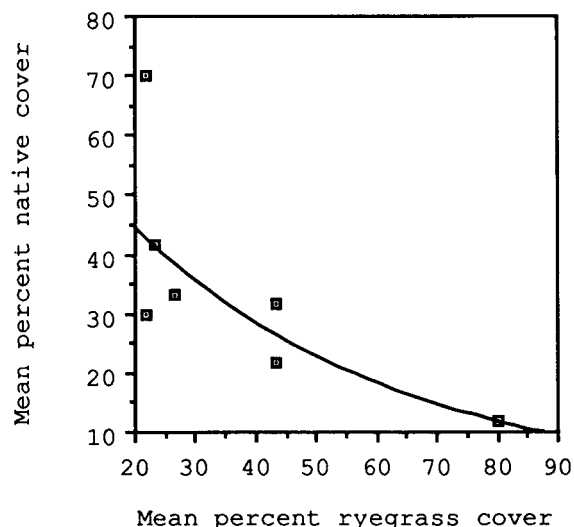


Figure 2--Native cover decreased as ryegrass cover increased on ryegrass-seeded field plots 6 months after seeding.

Native plant cover decreased exponentially as ryegrass cover increased (fig. 2). The high variability due to site location ($\bullet = 0.001$) is reflected in the large differences in native cover with low ryegrass cover. Note that as ryegrass increased, native cover variability decreased, perhaps because the ryegrass treatment effect over-rode the site location effect.

Native species richness was significantly less ($\bullet = 0.05$) on ryegrass-seeded plots than on unseeded plots: each seeded plot averaged 4.2 ± 2.1 native species, whereas each unseeded plot averaged 5.2 ± 1.6 native species.

Plant cover in the soil erosion plots showed a similar significant ($\bullet = 0.05$) trend in differences (12 percent), but mean values were considerably less: 39.0 ± 18.0 percent with ryegrass, compared to 27.1 ± 12.1 percent without ryegrass. Two factors might explain the lower cover on erosion plots compared to plant-interaction plots: One, these data were collected in September 1986, after many plants had desiccated in the summer dry season; two, the measurements were made by a different researcher.

Ryegrass seedlings outnumbered native seedlings by 19 to 1 six weeks after planting ryegrass in half the planter boxes. Native seedlings without ryegrass outnumbered those with ryegrass by 2.5 times ($\bullet = 0.001$); this ratio increased to

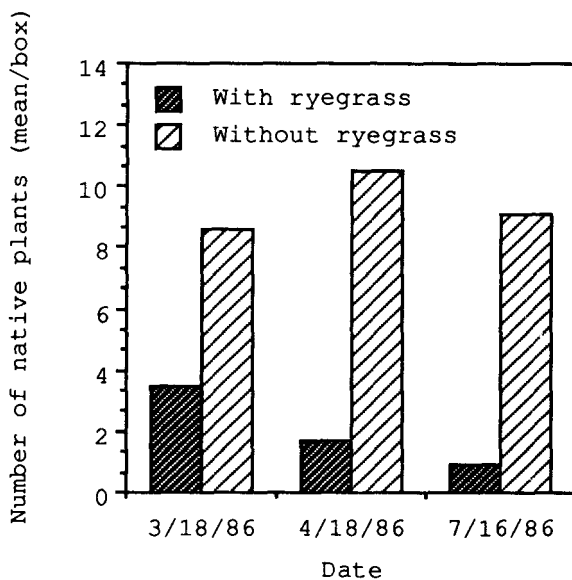


Figure 3-- Mean number of native plants per planter box on 3 dates, 6, 10 and 21 weeks after planting ryegrass.

6:1 after 10 weeks, and to 10:1 after 21 weeks (fig. 3).

Although fire-following annuals were the plants most restricted in the presence of ryegrass, shrubs also were affected. At 21 weeks, chamise seedlings grew in nine of ten boxes without ryegrass, but in only four of ten boxes with ryegrass. Average seedling height was 10 cm without ryegrass, and 1 cm with ryegrass. Manzanita growth showed similar trends, but the manzanita population was less than that of chamise.

Precipitation in the study area after the fire was near or below the assumed average. Rainfall collected from Nov. 10, 1985, to Apr. 18, 1986, ranged from 487 mm to 726 mm, and averaged 636 mm for the four rain gauges distributed over the study area. Rainfall at the Santa Margarita pumping station from Nov. 1, 1985, to Apr. 30, 1986, was considerably higher, at 1026 mm. From Sept. 1986, to Apr. 1987, the study area average value was approximately 336 mm, whereas the pumping station precipitation was 476 mm. The limited precipitation, consisting of light to moderate rains and fog, kept soil erosion to considerably less than the amount anticipated.

Ryegrass seeding appeared ineffective in controlling erosion during the first rainy season after the fire, from November 1985 to April 1986. Comparing sediment collected from seeded and unseeded plots

at the eleven sites, we found that four sites had less erosion with ryegrass, four sites had more erosion with ryegrass, and three sites showed almost no difference between treatment and control (fig. 4). The net result was no significant difference, at the $\alpha = 0.1$ level, in erosion between seeded and unseeded plots, although the seeded plots yielded 16 percent more sediment. Erosion did vary among site locations ($\alpha = 0.001$). Sheetting was the primary overall erosional process on the plots. Rilling was secondary; nonetheless, it contributed substantially to the sediment collected on plot numbers 3-seeded, 9-seeded, and 9-unseeded. Rilling tended to cut no deeper than to the depth of a clearly observable water-repellant layer.

During the dry season, from April to November 1986, soil erosion was greater on seven of eleven ryegrass-seeded plots than on the companion unseeded plots. Overall erosion on the eleven sites was 4.5 times greater with ryegrass seeding than without ryegrass seeding (fig. 5). For the year, from November 1985 to November 1986, erosion was greater on nine of eleven ryegrass-seeded plots. Overall for the eleven sites, erosion with seeding exceeded that without seeding by 2.2 times (fig. 6). Erosion continued to differ with high significance among site locations. These data are statistically very highly significant ($\alpha = 0.001$).

Annual ryegrass seed is applied to control soil erosion. Why, then, did we

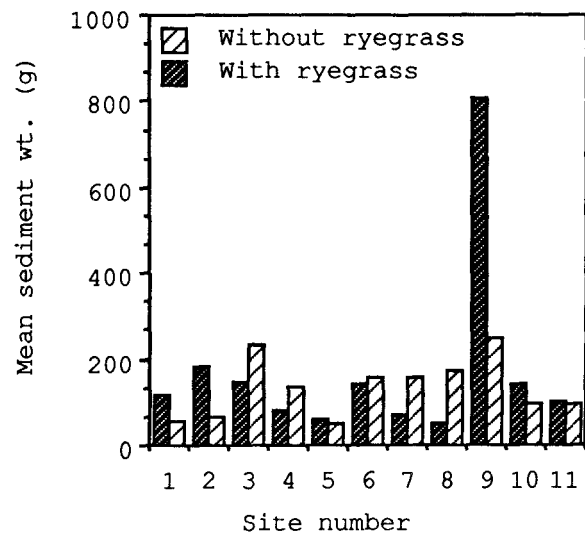


Figure 4--Sediment weights for the first rainy season, November 1985 to April 1986 (mean of 10 erosion-trough measurements per site).

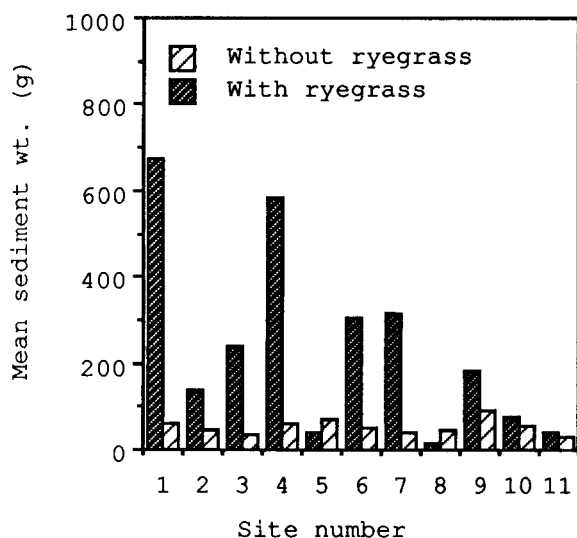


Figure 5--Sediment weights for dry season the year after the fire, April to November 1986 (mean of 10 erosion-trough measurements per site).

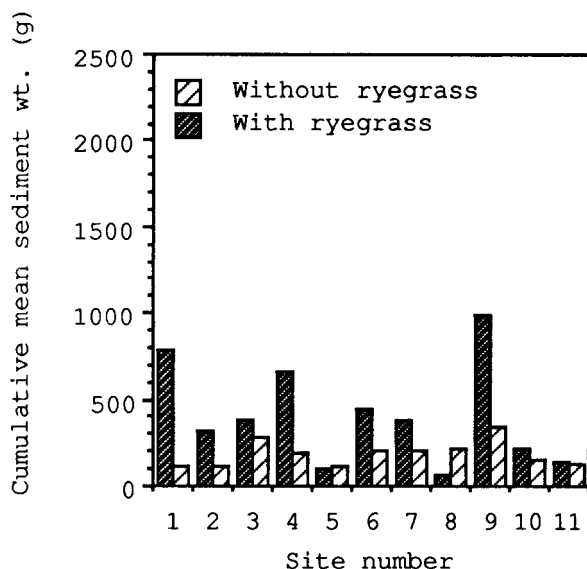


Figure 6--Cumulative sediment weights for 1 year of collection, November 1985 to November 1986 (mean of 10 erosion-trough measurements per site).

find greater soil erosion on ryegrass-seeded plots than on adjacent unseeded plots, especially when the seeded plots had greater plant cover? The answer appears to be gopher activity. The number of mounds made by pocket gophers (*Thomomys bottae*) was far greater on ryegrass-seeded plots than on unseeded plots. In September 1986, we counted 204 mounds on

ryegrass-seeded plots, and 31 mounds on unseeded plots. As the number of gopher mounds increased, the amount of soil trapped by the sediment troughs tended to increase; further study is needed to adequately quantify this relationship.

The gophers contributed to erosion by piling soil loosely on the surface, from where it was easily moved by sheeting and rilling, and by casting soil downslope during excavations. Occasionally the excavated soil was deposited directly into an erosion trough.

Additional correlations needing further quantitative study were noted between erosion and site aspect and soil depth. (Perhaps some of these could help explain the high statistical significance ($\alpha = 0.01$) between amount of sediment collected and site location, and interaction of treatment and site location.) Site aspects were concentrated equally in the northeast and southeast compass quadrants, except for one site in the northwest quadrant. Soil erosion from ryegrass-seeded plots appeared to increase generally with aspect progression from northeast to southeast. Gopher activity followed a similar progression, with greatest activity occurring in the southeast quadrant. In contrast, soil erosion from unseeded plots did not vary appreciably among aspects. Gopher activity and soil erosion also tended to increase with increasing soil depth; few or no gopher mounds were noted on sites having soil less than 40 cm deep to bedrock.

We questioned whether or not the plot sizes were so small as to cause crowding of gophers, and if larger plots would allow the animals to disperse, thereby decreasing the concentration of mounds. To answer this, gopher mounds were counted on three sites, outside the study area, which had been aerially seeded with annual ryegrass as part of the burned area emergency rehabilitation efforts. Site conditions and plot sizes were similar to those of the study area. Gopher mounds on these plots ranged from 28 to 72, a density comparable to that in the study plots which ranged from 0 to 73. These densities are also similar to those reported in the literature. Although the size of our study plots is somewhat smaller than the average territory of an adult male pocket gopher, the plot size is well within the range of reported territorial sizes (Bryant 1973, Chase and others 1982, Pollock 1984).

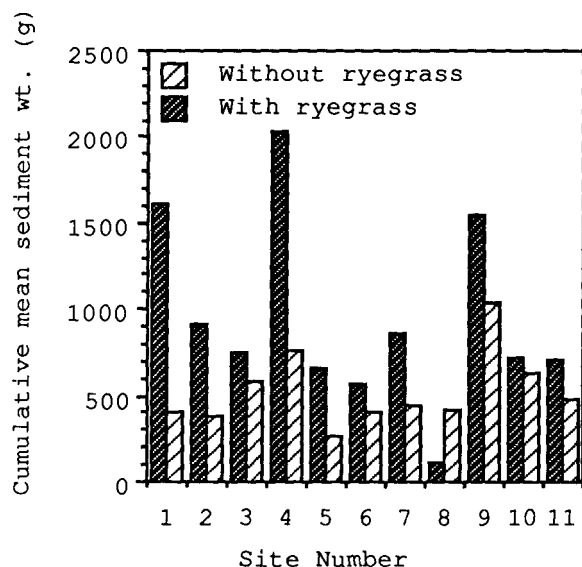


Figure 7--Cumulative sediment weights for 2-1/2 years of collection, November 1985 to May 1988 (mean of 10 erosion-trough measurements per site).

The erosion trends noted during the first year of the study continued in the following two years (fig. 7). The ryegrass-seeded plots continued to produce more sediment, and in May 1988, 2-1/2 years after seeding with ryegrass, overall erosion was 1.8 times greater with ryegrass than without it; moreover, erosion was greater with ryegrass seeding on ten of the eleven sites. Differences between treatment and nontreatment, and among site locations continued to have high statistical significance ($\bullet = 0.01$).

Additional important observations were made during the latter part of the study, but have not been quantified:

1. After going to seed in 1986, ryegrass spread to outside of the experimental plots. The spreading continued in 1987 and, to a lesser extent, 1988.
2. Gopher activity followed the spreading ryegrass, and soil erosion increased accordingly.
3. Ryegrass declined greatly on the southerly aspects in 1988, 2-1/2 years after seeding, but continued to increase on the northerly aspects.
4. Gopher activity declined as ryegrass disappeared from southerly aspects, but gopher activity

increased as ryegrass increased on northerly aspects. Unexpectedly, gopher activity increased in shallow soils, which previously had very few or no gopher mounds, as ryegrass persisted in those soils.

5. Ryegrass continued to interfere with recovery of native species, most notably those reproducing from seed, including lupine, lotus, and chamise. Lupine, for example, was dramatically excluded from two ryegrass-seeded plots on a slope which was purple with lupine outside the seeded plots.
6. In the third year after seeding, total cover appeared greater on unseeded plots than on seeded plots. As the ryegrass died out on the seeded plots, uncovered spots were left where ryegrass cover was heaviest.

CONCLUSIONS

Italian annual ryegrass seeded on the burn area increased total vegetative cover in the first year after the fire, but it failed to fulfill the ultimate goal of post-fire emergency rehabilitation--namely, to control soil erosion and enhance post-fire watershed recovery. Although seeding increased plant cover during the first year after the fire, it had four negative impacts: (1) The seeded ryegrass clearly interfered with recovery of native species, which are important for long-term stability of the ecosystem. (2) It failed to significantly control soil erosion any more than did natural recovery. (3) It stimulated an unwanted environmental factor, in this case, pocket gophers. (4) The gophers, in turn, moved large amounts of soil which otherwise would not have been disturbed.

In burned area emergency rehabilitation, we must be concerned not only with vegetative cover, but, more importantly, with the effectiveness of that cover in meeting our goals. Seeding an introduced species can prove counterproductive if that species interferes with natural recovery, or if it stimulates an unwanted factor in the ecosystem.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This study was funded by a cooperative agreement with Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment

Station, USDA Forest Service, and by an Agricultural Education Grant from the School of Agriculture, California Polytechnic State University.

REFERENCES

- Arndt, Arthur M. 1979. Emergency revegetation of burned chaparral watersheds in Los Angeles County. CHAPS Newsletter. Chaparral Research and Development Program. Sacramento: California Dept. Forestry; 1-3.
- Barro, Susan C.; Conard, Susan G. 1987. Use of ryegrass seeding as an emergency revegetation measure in chaparral ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rept. PSW-102. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.
- Biswell, Harold H. 1974. Effects of fire on chaparral. In: Kozlowski, T. T.; Ahlgren, C.E., eds. Fire and ecosystems. New York: Academic Press; 321-324.
- Blankenbaker, Gene; Ryan, Tom; Graves, Walt. 1985. Aguanga burn soil erosion and vegetation recovery. Administrative Study. San Diego, CA: Cleveland National Forest, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 8 p.
- Boyle, Gary. 1982. Erosion from burned watersheds in San Bernardino National Forest. In: Conrad, C. Eugene; Oechel, Walter C., eds. Proceedings of the symposium on dynamics and management of mediterranean-type ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rept. PSW-58. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 409-410.
- Bryant, H.C. 1973. Nocturnal wanderings of the California pocket gopher. Univ. Cal. Pub. in Zoology. 12(2): 25-29.
- California Department of Forestry. 1985. Preliminary report--Damage and rehabilitation, Las Pilitas fire. Available from San Luis Obispo Ranger Unit, San Luis Obispo, CA.
- Chase, Janis D.; Howard, Walter E.; Roseberry, James T. 1982. Pocket gophers. In: Chapman, Joseph A.; Feldhamer, George A., eds. Wild mammals of North America. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins Univ. Press; 239-255.
- Conrad, C. Eugene. 1979. Emergency postfire seeding using annual grass. Chaparral Research and Development Program. CHAPS Newsletter. Chaparral Research and Development Program. Sacramento: California Dept. Forestry; 5-8.
- Corbett, E.S.; Green, L.R. 1965. Emergency revegetation to rehabilitate burned watersheds in southern California. Research Paper PSW-22. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 14 p.
- Corbett, Edward S.; Rice, Raymond M. 1966. Soil slippage increased by brush conversion. Research Note PSW-128. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 8 p.
- Dodge, Marvin. 1979. Emergency revegetation of fire-denuded watersheds. CHAPS Newsletter. Chaparral Research and Development Program. Sacramento: California Dept. Forestry; 4-5.
- Gautier, Clayton R. 1982. The effects of ryegrass on erosion and natural vegetation recovery after fire. In: Conrad, C. Eugene; Oechel, Walter C., eds. Proceedings of the symposium on dynamics and management of mediterranean-type ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rept. PSW-58. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 599.
- Gautier, Clayton R. 1983. Sedimentation in burned chaparral watersheds: is emergency revegetation justified? Water Resources Bull. 19(5): 793-801.
- Griffin, James R. 1982. Pine seedlings, native ground cover, and *Lolium multiflorum* on the Marble-Cone burn, Santa Lucia Range, California. Madrono 29(3): 177-188.
- Hanes, Ted L. 1971. Succession after fire in the chaparral of southern California. Ecol. Monographs. 41: 27-52.
- Hart, Earl W. 1976. Basic geology of the Santa Margarita area, San Luis Obispo County, California. Calif. Div. Mines and Geol. Bull. 199; 45 p.

- Kay, Burgess L.; Love, R. Merton; Slayback, Robert D. 1981. Discussion: Revegetation with native grasses. I. A disappointing history. *Fremontia* October; 11-15.
- Keeley, Sterling C.; Keeley, Jon E.; Hutchinson, Steve M.; Johnson, Albert W. 1981. Postfire succession of the herbaceous flora in southern California chaparral. *Ecology* 62(6): 1608-1621.
- Krammes, J.S. 1960. Erosion from mountain side slopes after fire in southern California. Research Note PSW-171. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 8 p.
- Krammes, J.S.; Hill, L.W. 1963. "First aid" for burned watersheds. Research Note PSW-29. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 7 p.
- Leven, Andrew A. 1985. Benefits and costs of emergency seeding. Memorandum, Aug. 6, 1985, to Forest Supervisor, Los Padres National Forest, from Director, Watershed Management Staff, USDA-Forest Service, Region 5. Reply to: 2520 Watershed Protection and Management; 4 p. Available from Forest Supervisor, Los Padres National Forest, Goleta, CA.
- Little, Thomas M.; Hills, F. Jackson. 1978. Agricultural experimentation. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons; 350 p.
- Los Padres National Forest. 1986. Briefing on our decision to seed certain parts of 1985 wildfires. Unpublished report issued 1-20-86; 3 p. Available from Forest Supervisor, Los Padres National Forest, Goleta, CA.
- Nadkarni, Nalini M.; Odion, Dennis C. 1986. The effects of seeding an exotic grass (*Lolium multiflorum*) on native seedling regeneration following fire in a chaparral community. In: Proceedings of the chaparral ecosystems conference. Rept. 62. Davis, CA: Water Resources Center; 115-121.
- O'Hare, James; Hallock, Brent; Jackson, Gary; Cooper, Terrance. 1986. Los Padres National Forest, main section, soil resource inventory. Los Padres National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture. Available from Forest Supervisor, Los Padres National Forest, Goleta, CA.
- Partain, Jerry. 1985. Letters to Mitchel Beauchamp, Calif. Native Plant Soc., and to James B. Kendrick, Jr., Univ. Calif. Coop. Extension, from Director, Calif. Dept. Forestry. Dated Sept. 26, 1985, and Nov. 18, 1985, respectively.
- Pollock, J.I. 1984. Pocket gophers. In: MacDonald, D., ed. The encyclopedia of mammals. New York: Facts on File Pubs.; 628-661.
- Rice, R.M.; Crouse, R.P.; Corbett, E.S. 1965. Emergency measures to control erosion after a fire on the San Dimas Experimental Forest. In: Federal Interagency Sedimentation Conference Proceedings. Misc. Pub. 970. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture; 123-130.
- Ryan, Thomas M. 1982. Measuring on-site soil loss with a miniature erosion trough. White paper. Pasadena, CA: Angeles National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 6 p.
- San Luis Obispo County. 1988. Annual precipitation records for 1942-1987. Available from San Luis Obispo County Engineering Department, County Government Center.
- Schultz, A.M.; Launchbaugh, J.L.; Biswell, H.H. 1955. Relationships between grass density and brush seedling survival. *Ecology* 36(2): 226-238.
- Sullivan, Jay; Omi, Philip N.; Gonzales-Caban, Armando. 1987. Evaluating the economic efficiency of wildfire rehabilitation treatments. *West. J. Appl. For.* 2(2): 58-61.
- U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 1978 and revisions to 1984. Burned-area emergency rehabilitation handbook. FSH 2509.13. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service.

- Wakimoto, Ronald H. 1979. Major points against the use of annual ryegrass (*Lolium multiflorum*) for emergency revegetation of burned chaparral watersheds. CHAPS Newsletter. Chaparral Research and Development Program. Sacramento: California Dept. Forestry; 3-4.
- Wells, Wade G., II. 1986. The influence of fire on erosion rates in California chaparral. In: Proceedings of the Chaparral Ecosystem Conference, May 16-17, 1985; Santa Barbara, CA. Report 62. Davis, CA: Water Resources Center, Univ. of California; 57-62.
- Wells, Wade G., II; Wohlgemuth, Peter M. 1987. Sediment traps for measuring onslope surface sediment movement. Research Note PSW-393. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 6 p.
- Westhoff, Victor; van der Maarel, Eddy. 1978. The Braun-Blanquet approach. In: Whittaker, Robert H., ed. Classification of plant communities. The Hague: Dr. W. Junk b.v. Pubs.; 287-399.
- Wonnacott, T.H.; Wonnacott, R.H. 1972. Introductory statistics. 2nd ed. New York, NY: John Wiley and Sons; 473 p.
- Young, James A.; Evans, Raymond A.; Kay, Burgess L. 1975. Germination of Italian ryegrass seeds. Agron. Jour. 67: 386-389.
- Zedler, Paul H.; Gautier, Clayton R.; McMaster, Gregory S. 1983. Vegetation changes in response to extreme events: The effects of a short interval between fires in California chaparral and coastal shrub. Ecology 64(4): 809-818.

Rationale for Seeding Grass on the Stanislaus Complex Burnt¹

Earl C. Ruby²

Abstract: An emergency survey of the 147,000-acre (59,491 hectare), Stanislaus Complex Burn found that large, continuous, land areas were intensely burned, resulting in strongly hydrophobic soils, with potential to yield catastrophic volumes of flood runoff. The potential cumulative effect of greatly increased runoff efficiency on contiguous watersheds threatened serious downstream flooding, instream damages, and loss of upland site productivity. The interdisciplinary team developed a systematic method to evaluate seeding grass as an emergency watershed treatment. The evaluation used site specific data to determine where to seed or not seed grass, and concluded that seeding grass on the flood source areas could significantly decrease the potential threat to human life and property.

The practice of the Stanislaus National Forest (U. S. Department of Agriculture, Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service) has been to evaluate any decision of either seeding, or not seeding, burned areas, according to site specific data and the potential flood hazards of each watershed. The intent is to develop and use site criteria to describe the relative magnitude of flood hazard for each watershed. The effects of grass seeding are controversial. However, in many cases it is the only reasonable treatment that can be quickly applied to large areas in a short period of time. The teams identified 10 other possible treatments, but each was limited in scope and effectiveness for the overall burned area.

The objectives of grass seeding are to reduce the Erosion Hazard Rating

- 1 Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.
- 2 Senior Forest Hydrologist, Stanislaus National Forest, U. S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Sonora, California.

(EHR), on the flood source areas to moderate (EHR=8), within 3 years, and to maintain the moderate EHR until all resources have been permanently restored, and the watersheds are stable.

The following discussion describes the Emergency Burned Area Rehabilitation (EBAR) survey and the evaluation of grass seeding as one of the emergency watershed treatments on the Stanislaus Complex burned area.

THE EMERGENCY BURNED AREA REHABILITATION SURVEY

A 21-member interdisciplinary team was assembled to conduct the EBAR survey. The disciplines represented on this team included hydrologists, soil scientists, geologists, engineers, and biologists. The team objectives were to identify the magnitude of the flood emergency created by the fire, and to prescribe watershed treatments to mitigate the emergency. The two-fold definition of "emergency" is the probable threat to human life and property, and the potential loss of site productivity and deterioration of water quality. Both of these potential emergencies could result from the modified runoff condition of the post-fire watersheds.

The EBAR survey found that the wildfire created a potential catastrophic flood emergency. Many watersheds now include large, intensely burned areas (48 percent of the area within the burn), resulting in strongly hydrophobic soils, with less than 10 percent ground cover density. These watershed conditions significantly increase the runoff efficiency of the burned watersheds, over the pre-burn condition. The result can be excessive overland runoff, with severe soil erosion and excessive flooding in the channel systems.

Many channels are also intensely burned. The fire consumed much of the woody material that was formerly embedded in the channel bedloads. Some channels were previously scoured by the 1986 floods, leaving incipient erosion that will be accelerated by excessive flood flows. The 1986 floods also left some channels with dispersed, woody debris jams that can cause major bank scour and threaten instream structures during

excessive flooding. These channel conditions significantly increase potential sediment bulking of flood flows, which will increase the destructive potential of the flood. -The results can be severe channel erosion, destruction of instream structures (including road drainage, dwellings, industrial development, and other buildings), and a serious threat to human life.

The findings of the EBAR survey indicate that the fire-caused watershed conditions could produce a catastrophic flood event. Those lands that were intensely burned, with strongly hydrophobic soils, and less than 10 percent ground cover density were identified as the potential flood source areas, due to their increased runoff efficiency. The potential flood source areas make up approximately 70,000 acres (28,329 hectare), within the burned area.

PRESCRIPTION TO MITIGATE THE EMERGENCY

The EBAR team prescribed a total of eleven treatments to mitigate the emergency created by the fire. The treatments can be divided into two groups, based on the emergency that they are designed to mitigate, as follows:

Treatments To Mitigate The Effects Of Excessive Flood Runoff

Ten treatments were prescribed, as follows.

1. Contour Log Erosion Barriers, 582 Acres (236 hectare)
2. Channel Stabilization, 18 check dams.
3. Channel Clearing, 5 Miles (8 Kilometer)
4. Channel Armoring, 0.2 Mile (0.32 Kilometer)
5. Emergency Road Treatment, 300 Miles (483 Kilometer)
6. Emergency Trail Treatment, 22 Miles (35 Kilometer)
7. Debris Basins, 2 dams

8. French Drain On Unstable Soil Area, 1 each

9. Debris Deflection Wall, 1 each

10. Winter Flood Patrol On Roads, 300 Miles (483 Kilometer)

Treatments To Mitigate The Runoff Efficiency Of The Flood Source Areas

Only one treatment was prescribed.

1. Seed Grass as follows:

Annual Ryegrass	31,230 Acres
(12,639 hectare)	
Other Annual Grasses	9,710 Acres
(3,930 hectare)	
Perennial Grasses	2,210 Acres
(894 hectare)	
Total Grass Seeding	43,150 Acres
(17,463 hectare)	

The below discussion describes the method used by the EBAR team to evaluate the seeding of grass as an emergency watershed treatment on the Stanislaus Complex burned area. The EBAR team recognized that portions of the burned area were only lightly burned, and portions were intensely burned. Only those areas that were burned intensely were expected to yield higher than normal floods. This expectation was based on previous experience of the team, and various research studies. The purpose of seeding grass was to mitigate the increased runoff efficiency on the flood source areas.

METHOD TO EVALUATE GRASS SEEDING

Up to this point, the team had identified the potential flood source areas based only on the effects of the wildfire on the land. Each of these potential flood source areas has different magnitudes of flood hazard due to other site factors that influence the hydrology of the watersheds. These factors include such things as topography, elevation, and geology. These other site factors were used as site selection criteria to establish priorities for seeding grass on only those areas that were a source of high magnitude flooding.

Site Selection Criteria For High Priority Grass Seeding

The EBAR team set up eleven site selection criteria to assess the potential flood source areas and select the highest priority areas to be seeded with grass as an emergency watershed treatment. The design flood event was established by the Senior Forest Hydrologist as 300 ft³/sec/mi² (CSM), (3.28m³/sec/km², CSK) for a watershed that had been intensely burned. The criteria for high priority seeding areas are as follows (from notes made by team 4):

1. Burn Intensity

Predominantly high, or a mixture of moderate and high if the watershed is over 50 percent burned.

2. Water Repellent Soils

Predominantly strongly water repellent, or mixture of moderate and strongly repellent if dominantly a granitic rock type.

3. Bear Clover

Less than 30 percent of area covered with bear clover.

4. Slope

Predominantly those that exceed 50 percent, or a mixture of oversteepened slopes (70 percent), and slopes greater than 35 percent.

5. Topography

High priority areas are swales, first order channels, and concave topography due to a greater tendency to produce overland flow and excessive sedimentation than convex topography. High priority areas are also those areas with in-sloped roads that artificially modify the topography by combining first order channels.

6. Rock Type

First priority for seeding is granitic rock types (more probable source of sediments). This does not preclude some Metasedimentary rock types where other site conditions would justify seeding.

7. Climatic factors

High priority is the rain-on-snowpack zone (elevations 4,000 to 6,000 feet), (1219 to 1829 meters). Long term return frequency for rain-on-snowpack events is one year in seven, but there have been three such events in the past six years.

8. Known Sensitive Areas

Identified from personal knowledge, or observed site factors, or information readily available in Forest files.

9. Threat to Human Life

High priority are watersheds with in-stream dwellings, or other structures that can be threatened by the design magnitude flood (ie, 300 CSM), (3.28 CSK). Equally high priority are those road systems that are regularly travelled by private citizens and Forest crews as normal routine.

10. Percent Watershed Burned

Over 30 percent of a watershed, greater than 200 acres (81 hectare) in size burned intensely. (Intent is to evaluate Cumulative Watershed Effects)

11. Expected Management

High priority areas are the highly productive resource management areas such as high quality commercial timber site, and highly productive range forage areas.

A potential flood source area does not have to meet all of the above criteria in order to be ranked as a high priority for grass seeding. Any one criterion, if it creates a high potential flood hazard, is justification to designate a watershed as a high priority seeding area. For

example, if a watershed, greater than 200 acres (81 hectare) in size, is 100 percent intensely burned, it would be a high priority seeding area.

Site Selection Criteria For Low Priority Grass Seeding

The EBAR team also developed five site selection criteria to identify areas of low priority for grass seeding. These criteria were applied to each potential flood source area.

1. Metasedimentary rock types, with known annual grass communities before the fire.

These were identified from personal knowledge, or from information readily available in the Forest files.

2. Known sensitive plant habitats.

3. Areas previously seeded for wildlife after the fire, but before watershed seeding was begun.

4. Low-intensity burn areas.

5. Proposed Grizzly Mountain Research Natural Area, (unless an emergency watershed condition is identified that threatens human life and property).

Issues And Concerns Of Seeding Grasses

Various issues and concerns related to seeding grasses were identified and evaluated by the EBAR teams for each individual team area. The full 21-member team then considered each of them in preparing the final prescription:

1. The aggressive species required for watershed stabilization can, and often do, conflict with recovery of other resources.

2. Exotic species may conflict with native species, especially if the native species is already sensitive and is a reduced population.

3. The cost of controlling introduced grasses can become an additional expense for reforestation.

4. Some of the areas identified as potential flood sources may already be naturally stabilized by native plants, such as annual grasses and bear clover.

However, the sites may have been burned so intensely that the native plants could not be recognized. In these cases additional grass seeding would not be necessary.

5. Aggressive grass species tend to delay the reestablishment of browse seedlings.

6. Grasses produce flashy fuels that can carry a fire at a high rate of spread.

These tend to be "cool" fires, with short residence time, and beneficial results. Grass fuels do not accumulate year to year as do woody fuels. Even with no grass seeding, the area can be invaded by cheat grass (*Bromus tectorum*), which is a more extreme fire hazard than seeded grasses.

7. Some research indicates that seeding grass does not significantly affect first-year sedimentation, erosion, or peak runoff.

8. On the water repellent soils, the early rains may produce enough flash runoff to wash the grass seed away.

9. Some research indicates that grasses do not affect gravity erosion at all because it occurs during the fire and immediately thereafter.

10. The Forest Service has no authority to seed grasses ineffectively, for the sole purpose of relieving the fears of the general public; there must be other justification for seeding.

Anticipated Results Of Seeding Grass

Statements of anticipated results were developed by the area survey teams for presentation to the Forest Management Team. The nine expected effects of grass seeding on which the prescription was based are as follows:

1. Acceleration of hydrologic recovery of the burned area from 10 to 20 years, with no treatment, to 5 to 8 years with treatment.

This can mitigate the extent, and reduce the duration of the potential threat to life and property. The annual litter crop and the binding action of grass roots are expected to hold top soils in place that would otherwise erode away. This will control the velocity of overland runoff, and prevent on site scour, as well as channel scour and sediment bulking of flood flows.

2. Help maintain site productivity until the watersheds regain their stability.

This can reduce the threat to life and property. The burned watersheds will regain their normal response to climatic events, as they regain their natural infiltration capacity and ground cover. The nutrient capital in timber soils is often in the surface 6 inches. The binding capability of grass roots will keep these soils and nutrients in place.

3. Mitigate potential cumulative watershed effects from resource recovery efforts, such as fuel disposal, reforestation, and road construction.

Resource recovery efforts often disturb the soils, which can destroy the ground cover and increase the runoff efficiency. The grass will be a natural source of seed for disturbed areas, as well as provide litter. This will prevent the many small project areas from creating cumulative watershed effects which can threaten life and property.

4. Reduce the adverse impacts of storm events (accelerated runoff, sedimentation, raindrop compaction), in years 2 to 5.

This in turn reduces the threat to life and property. The probability of a catastrophic flood event is greatest in the first year following the fire. Without seeding, the second and third years also have the potential of a flood disaster. With seeding of aggressive grass species, the probability can be reduced to a reasonable level in the second and later years, and in some cases the first winter.

5. Establish at least some stable soil cover in the first year, and an adequate cover in years 2 to 5.

Both the foliage and root systems of annual grasses can help mitigate the potential flood emergency. The annual ryegrass can sprout and protect the soils within 3 weeks after planting. The native plants that have gone drought-dormant before the fire probably will not emerge until Spring, even with early Fall rains. The only effective stabilizing agent during the first winter will be the introduced annual grasses, and the residual ground cover. Annual grass roots penetrate 3 or more inches deep, and bind the surface soils. The grass foliage is enough to protect the soil from raindrop detachment and raindrop compaction.

6. Provide an on-site seed source to moderate the impacts of future land disturbance such as range use, off-highway vehicle use, logging, reforestation, and road construction and maintenance.

This point is drawn from experience on the Granite Burn (1973), where the grasses reseeded disturbed soils. This eliminates the need to reseed after soil disturbance, which is a cost savings on every resource restoration project. The potential emergency flood hazard in future years is thereby mitigated.

7. Replace the existing stabilizing agents that are now deteriorating.

The tree roots, brush roots, and residual surface litter deteriorate at an accelerated rate after a fire. The grasses serve as an immediate replacement that persists until the previous stabilizers are replaced by natural stabilizing agents. The potential future threat to life and property can thus be mitigated.

8. The grass will help to mitigate secondary adverse effects of the burned areas.

By controlling effects of on-site rainfall, the grass litter and grass roots will effectively control the volume of floatable debris, road damage, cumulative watershed effects, siltation, loss of fish habitat, and a multitude of intangible values.

9. If an acceptable density of grass is established in year one, then the people and property in the path of the potential flood will be protected.

This does not mean seeding is justified because it relieves public concerns. There are a very limited number of emergency treatments that can be quickly applied over large areas, and are effective the first five years after a fire. In many identified flood source areas, the options were either seed grass, or do nothing. For example, the total area stabilized by other emergency treatments covered less than 1,000 acres (405 hectare), and grass seeding covered 43,150 acres (17,463 hectare).

A public land management agency has an obligation to do all within its authority to prevent and moderate the potential flood disaster due to wildfire. If we as managers do nothing, and an emergency develops in the next five years, then the Forest could be held liable (or at least feel liable), for the consequences. On the other hand, if we establish grass it will provide a rapidly decreasing probability of disaster each year for the next five years.

SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

The EBAR team considered the pros and cons of all of the above factors, and presented their findings to the Forest Management Team. The emergency was the threat to human life and property from the potential flood disaster. The conclusion of the EBAR team was that the first priority was to protect human life, instream values, and downstream values that were within the design flood zone.

The Forest Supervisors' decision to proceed with grass seeding considered all of these factors. Because of the massive size of the burned area, and the potential for very severe flood occurrences and effects on water quality, with high

potential damage to property and investments, and damage to resources, it was decided that the tradeoffs favored proceeding with grass seeding. The Management Team supported the decision and initiated resource recovery efforts to harmonize with flood protection treatments.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank the following team leaders and team members who developed the rationale and evaluated the need to seed grass on this burned area. They worked long hours and persisted until the task was completed.

Team #1

Alex Janicki, Soil Scientist ¹
Steve Robertson, Fishery Biologist*
Bob Blecker, Hydrologist
Steve Brougher, Wildlife Biologist
Rusty Leblanc, Engineer

Team #2

Ben Smith, Soil Scientist¹
Jerry DeGraff, Geologist*
Max Copenhagen, Hydrologist
Tom Beck, Wildlife Biologist
Bob Ota, Engineer

Team #3

Jim Frazier, Hydrologist ¹
Karl Stein, Fishery Biologist *
Gary Schmitt, Soil Scientist
Alan King, Geologist*
Teresa Nichols, Wildlife Biologist
Greg Napper, Engineer

Team #4

Earl Ruby, Hydrologist²
Jim O'Hare, Soil Scientist
Aileen Palmer, Wildlife Biologist
Al Todd, Hydrologist
Joe Leone, Engineer

¹ Team Leader

²Team Leader and EBAR Group Leader

* Served on two teams

Watershed Response and Recovery from the Will Fire: Ten Years of Observation¹

Kenneth B. Roby²

Abstract: Watershed response and recovery from a wildfire which burned 95 percent of the Williams Creek watershed in 1979 were monitored. Ground cover reduced to 11 percent by the fire increased to 80 percent by 1983. Grasses seeded for erosion control provided less than 10 percent cover until 3 years following the fire, and no significant difference in ground cover was found between seeded and unseeded transects. The average area of three channel cross sections on Williams Creek increased by 20 percent 4 years after the fire, but had returned to immediate postfire conditions by 1985. Benthic invertebrate sampling indicated the fire had a substantial impact on water quality for several years after the fire, and that recovery was incomplete through 1987. Comparable findings of incomplete recovery are presented for four additional California watersheds burned up to 23 years ago.

INTRODUCTION

A monitoring program was carried out with the objectives of (1) assessing short- and long-term impacts of a wildfire on water quality, and (2) determining the effectiveness of grass seeding as an emergency watershed rehabilitation measure. The results of the program are summarized here.

SETTING

The 825 ha Williams Creek watershed ranges between 1100 and 1800 m in elevation and is situated within the boundaries of the Plumas National Forest just north of the town Greenville, California. Soils are of the Kinkle and Deadwood families, derived from Paleozoic metavolcanic parent material, and typically support west side Sierra Nevada coniferous forest. The soils are moderately to highly erosive depending upon ground cover and slopes, which range from 20 to 70 percent.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Supervisory Hydrologist, Plumas National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, stationed at Greenville, California.

Precipitation averages 100 cm annually (mostly as snow above 1750 m) and supports a perennial stream. The stream channel is steep and cascading, dominated by bedrock above 1450 m. Lower stretches of the creek are alluvial.

On the afternoon of September 18, 1979, a wildfire began to burn in the drainage. Pushed by strong winds, fire moved at rates of 2000 m per hour, and was not controlled until approximately 95 percent of the watershed had been burned. Fire intensity was rated as high on two-thirds of the burned area. Emergency watershed rehabilitation measures included seeding a mixture of orchard grass, slender wheatgrass, tall fescue and timothy with fertilizer on 390 ha of the burn.

METHODS

Ground Cover

Eight locations were selected within the seeded portions of the fire to represent a range of elevations and aspects. At each location, a 100-foot (30.48 m) tape was stretched in each of the four cardinal compass directions. At 1-foot (30.5 cm) intervals along the tape ground cover was classified as being bare, dead organic material, live pioneer vegetation, live grass seeded vegetation, or rock. Results were expressed in terms of percent of ground surface represented by each cover category.

Four additional transects were placed on each of two sub-basins located at 1100 m elevation within the fire. Each of these 0.2 ha watersheds had been intensely burned, and the two were nearly identical in natural characteristics. One watershed was seeded, the other was left unseeded. All ground cover transects were surveyed annually from 1979 to 1983, and in 1985.

Channel Cross Sections and Sediment Catches

Three straight reaches of alluvial channel were located on Williams Creek and Water Trough Creek. Water Trough Creek lies northwest, and was similar to Williams Creek before the wildfire.

Monumented reference points were established along each stream reach. Cross sections were determined by stretching a nylon tape between the fixed endpoints and determining channel width,

and channel depth at six-inch (15.24 cm) intervals. Cross sections were measured in 1979, 1980, 1981, 1983, 1985, and 1987, and results plotted. Areas were planimetered and expressed in square meters.

To estimate sediment loss from surface erosion, sediment catches were constructed at the base of the small paired watersheds described above. Sediment captured behind each of the catches was estimated volumetrically in both 1980 and 1981.

Benthic Invertebrates

A standard 1 ft² Surber Sampler was used to collect invertebrates from both Williams and Water Trough Creeks in 1979 (2 weeks after the fire), 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1985, and 1987. Samples were located in the lower elevation alluvial stretches of the creeks. At each station six samples were collected, and care taken to collect from areas with similar substrate size, water depth and velocity. Samples were concentrated in a #30 standard soil sieve and preserved in 95 percent ethanol. Invertebrates were sorted from rocks and detritus and keyed, usually to the family level.

Results were expressed in terms of number organisms per square meter, and number of taxa collected. Shannon Diversity (Pielou 1975) was calculated for the data from all six samples, for each year. Dominant organisms were expressed as a percentage of the total population.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Ground Cover

The results of the vegetation transects (table 1) show that seeded vegetation did not contribute substantial cover until 3 years after the fire. Before that time, protective ground cover was provided primarily from dead organic matter. Data from the paired watersheds (table 2) also show that on the Will fire, seeding provided little ground cover for the first two winters following the burn. There was no significant

Table 1. Percent ground cover following wildfire in Williams Creek watershed

	Bare Dead			Seeded	Total	Total
	Year	Soil	Organic Pioneer	Grass	Vegetation	Ground Cover ¹
1979	53	11	0	0	0	11
1980	35	17	7	6	13	30
1981	21	21	16	9	25	46
1982	11	19	24	36	60	79
1983	12	20	26	32	58	80
1985	15	20	33	21	54	74

¹Bare soil + ground cover + rock (not shown) = 100 per.

difference (Mann-Whitney Rank Test 95% significance level) in the ground cover of the seeded and unseeded watersheds for any year. The paired watersheds showed little difference in terms of sediment collected in the catch basins in 1981-82. The seeded and unseeded drainages produces sediment at rates of 0.122 m³/ha and 0.149 m³/ha, respectively. Basins were vandalized in the summer of 1982, and no further sediment data was collected.

The pioneer vegetation component was highest in 1982. Cheat grasses Bromus sp. composed a substantial portion of this cover, and probably did not provide quality cover for erosion prevention. Cheat grass had largely disappeared by 1983, when cover was provided primarily by Ceanothus sp. and oaks (Quercus sp.).

There has been considerable debate about the merits of grass seeding as an emergency measure following wildfire, though most of the research directed at assessing its effectiveness has focused on chaparral ecosystems of the southern California Coast Ranges. Data from higher elevation forested watersheds are far more limited. Results from the work of Dyrness (1976), Lyon (1976), Viereck and Dyrness (1977) and Helvey (1980), which are comparable studies of the effects of fire in forested watersheds, are summarized in Table 3.

Compared to the earlier studies the ground cover provided by vegetation on the Will Fire was comparatively high, but in line with the rate of regrowth after fire in these other forested watersheds. Grass seeding for erosion control was employed as a rehabilitation measure on all the watersheds compared in Table 3.

From a practical standpoint, sparse ground-cover in the first few years following these wildfires is a significant result. Given the short growing seasons found in many forested areas, such as Williams Creek (55 frost free days), this response (especially in the first year following wildfire) is not surprising. No

Table 2. Percent ground cover (estimated from 8 transects) from seeded and unseeded sub-drainages burned by wildfire within the Williams Creek watershed

SEEDED						
Year	Bare Dead Soil Organic		Pioneer	Seeded Grass	Total Vegetation	Total Ground Cover ¹
1980	67	15	6	0	6	21
1981	46	20	14	10	24	44
1982	16	20	24	41	65	75
1983	16	21	23	31	54	75
1985	22	24	29	15	44	68
UNSEEDED						
1980	63	14	7	0	7	21
1981	50	19	27	0	27	46
1982	20	21	54	0	54	75
1983	32	22	37	0	37	59
1985	35	19	34	0	34	53

¹Bare soil + ground cover + rock (not shown) = 100 percent

Table 3- Cover (percent) by years following wildfire in forested watersheds

Researcher	1	2	3	4	5	6
Dyrness ¹	13.0	20.5	25.2	28.2	24.9	29.6
Helvey ²	10.8	23.0	25.3	32.2	48.8	-
Lyon ¹	4.1	17.7	31.8	35.7	44.5	50.5
Viereck & Dyrness	9.0	14.9	37.4	37.4	-	-

¹Vegetal cover, ²Total cover

evaluation is made here of the selection of seed mixtures to local site conditions for either Williams Creek or the referenced studies, a factor which certainly plays a large role in the success or failure of revegetation efforts. My results indicate these factors deserve not only close scrutiny by wildfire rehabilitation planners, but detailed research to document results for future efforts.

The downward trend in total cover displayed in Tables 1 and 2 is noteworthy. It would appear seeded vegetation competed with pioneer species in the seeded areas. The decline in vegetation over time also suggests that neither the seeded or pioneer species were well adapted to the Williams Creek site, and encouragement and application of well adapted native species would probably provide the best vegetation erosion control. Given the limited groundcover provided by grass seeding on the Will Fire and the four other studies referenced, managers should also consider alternative erosion control methods (such as contour pole falling or mulching) during rehabilitation planning.

Channel Cross Sections

The changes in the channel cross, section from transect #1 on Williams Creek are shown in figure 1.

Data were collected in 1979 soon after the fire and before any runoff events, and are therefore taken to represent the pre-fire channel condition. The changes in this transect are typical of those which occurred along most of the alluvial portion of Williams Creek, and represent the median condition of the three monitored transects. The channel response was the result of a combination of factors. Peak flows were probably increased following the fire (as documented by Schindler and others (1980) and other workers). 1982-83 was a rather severe winter with several high intensity storms; and the channel had lost both its dead organic and live vegetal stabilizers. As the figure depicts, there was slight channel widening following the winters of 1979 and 1980 and considerable widening and deepening following the severe winter of 1982. The channel had nearly returned to its pre-fire cross sectional area by 1985, though the channel profile was slightly wider and shallower than in 1979.

Channel enlargement for the three transects (1983 data) ranged from 0.17 m² to 0.54 m², representing an increase of 10 to 27 percent in channel cross section over pre-fire conditions. The transects on Water Trough Creek (unburned) showed little change in area or width for any year including 1983, when the maximum enlargement was less than 5 percent.

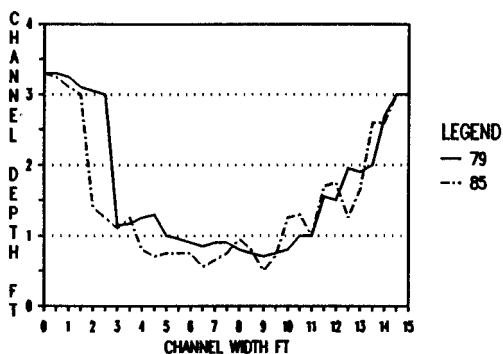
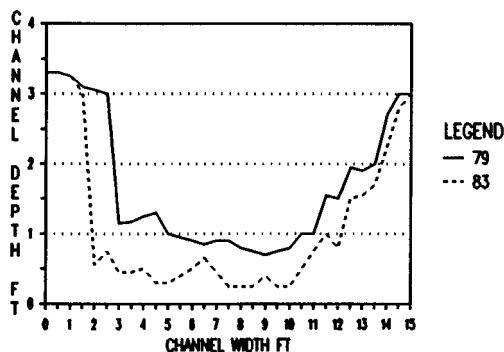
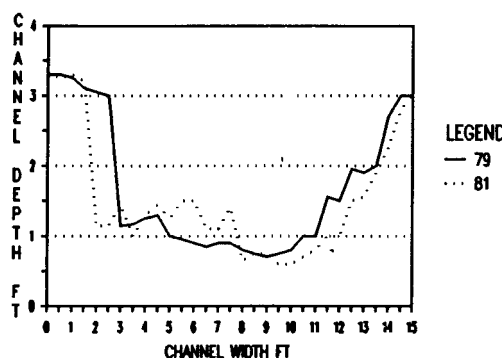


Figure 1--Channel cross sections from Williams Creek immediately (1979) and two, four, and six years following wildfire.

Significant change in the channels of burned watersheds seems a likely response to such a catastrophic event, but such changes have been poorly documented. Helvey (1980) found substantial changes in channel morphology, debris torrents and sediment production following an intensive forest fire in Central Washington. Rich (1962) investigated post fire changes in a ponderosa pine-dominated Arizona watershed. Both attributed a high percentage of post fire sediment production to channel sources, a conclusion consistent with the findings for Williams Creek.

Contributions of sediment from surface and channel sources following the fire in Williams

Creek can be compared if the limited data is assumed to represent average conditions. If the sediment basin results are taken to represent an average surface erosion rate from Williams Creek, then the watershed would have produced approximately 113 m³ of sediment from this source. If channel enlargement of 0.35 m² (the 1983 average) is applied to all of the alluvial channel within the fire (approximately 2430 m), then an estimate of 850 m³ of sediment from channel cutting is derived. The subdrainages were on gentler slopes than much of the watershed, and therefore have lower erosion rates. The sediment production rates include that from the cutting of the ephemeral channel in these basins, so on balance the estimate may be representative.

By any estimate, sediment contributions from channel sources following wildfire are very important, and should receive emphasis at least equal to upslope erosion in the planning of emergency rehabilitation measures. Channel rehabilitation measures could include replacement of large organic material lost to the fire, use of structures to replace natural stabilizers, and planting of riparian species along channel banks.

Benthic Invertebrates

Benthic invertebrate data (table 4) provides an indication of water quality conditions. The invertebrates collected in 1979 (only a few weeks following the wildfire) show reduced taxa and density of organisms as compared with Water Trough Creek. Unfortunately, no pre-fire data was collected, but this apparent decline in the number of organisms was possibly the result of lethal fire-caused water temperature increases, and ash input to Williams Creek.

Data from Williams Creek since 1980 reveals higher number of organisms and reduced number of taxa relative to Water Trough Creek. In combination these factors result in lower diversity values, and indicate an enriched stream system. Enrichment was probably in response to shade reduction and increased nutrient input. The benthic community of Williams Creek also undoubtedly responded to unquantified changes in channel substrate. After the fire, sand, and silt increased at the expense of gravels and cobbles and provided habitat for the Chironomidae which dominated the post fire invertebrate community.

Diversity values from Williams Creek remained consistently below those from Water Trough Creek, indicating incomplete recovery from wildfire impacts nine years following the fire. Though the number of organisms collected from Williams Creek declined after 1981 (possibly lower production in response to canopy recovery) the density remained 1.3 (in 1985) to 2.1 (in 1987) times higher than Water Trough Creek. The number of taxa from Williams Creek was consistently about

Table 4. Results of benthic invertebrate sampling from a burned (Williams Crk) and unburned (Water Trough Crk) watershed 0-9 years following wildfire.

Williams Creek (burned)				
Year	number/ m ²	Taxa	Shannon Diversity	Dominant Taxa (percent total)
1979	420	15	2.03	<u>Cinygmula</u> sp. (37)
1980	1539	28	1.78	Chironomidae (42)
1981	6359	31	2.21	Chironomidae (32)
1982	4732	32	2.06	Chironomidae (34)
1983	3432	31	2.21	Chironomidae (27)
1985	1259	31	2.46	Chironomidae (33)
1987	1937	30	2.50	Chironomidae (21)
Water Trough Creek (unburned)				
1979	1528	31	2.85	Chironomidae (13)
1980	452	24	2.91	Hydropsychidae(18)
1981	1334	37	2.85	Chironomidae (16)
1982	731	34	2.65	Chironomidae (17)
1983	904	32	2.78	Hydropsychidae(15)
1985	947	34	3.06	Chironomidae (12)
1987	936	34	2.84	Hydropsychidae(16)

10 percent lower than Water Trough Creek.

There is very little data available on long-term recovery of watersheds from wildfire, and essentially none which has used benthic invertebrates. During the summer of 1987, I had the opportunity to sample several California watersheds which had been burned by wildfire. The Shannon Diversity of the benthic invertebrate samples and time since the watershed burned are as follows:

Watershed (National Forest)		Years <u>Since Fire</u>	<u>Diversity</u>
Hot Springs	(Plumes)	7	2.55
Coyote	(Tahoe)	9	3.01
Jaw Bone	(Stanislaus)	12	2.57
West Hayfork	(Shasta-Trinity)	23	2.42

The Coyote Creek watershed was unique in that it possessed a very stable bedrock channel, and because most of the perennial stream channel was not burned by the fire. The benthic diversity of each of the other three watersheds was lower (range 8 to 18 percent) than the unburned streams to which they were compared.

Little work on the benthic invertebrate response to wildfire is available for comparison. Lotspeich and others (1970) found essentially no change in the invertebrate community following an Alaskan wildfire. Albin (1979) compared a burned and an unburned watershed tributary to Yellowstone Lake, and found higher diversity in the burned watershed. In both studies, sampling stations were some distance downstream of the burns.

When compared to research employing benthic invertebrates as indicators of water quality on similar watersheds, the reduction in diversity following wildfire in Williams Creek can be seen as a substantial impact. Erman and others (1977) studied the impacts of logging on northern California streams. Those streams most severely affected had average benthic diversity values 25 percent lower than comparison control streams. Erman and Mahoney (1983) studied recovery of the same logged streams, and found substantial but incomplete improvement in conditions 6-10 years after logging, as indicated by benthic diversity. In comparison, the Williams Creek data shows substantial recovery between 1980 and 1981, but very little recovery in the subsequent six years. The data from three of the four burned watersheds sampled in 1987 suggest similar, incomplete recovery.

There are several explanations that might account for the slow or incomplete recovery of benthic communities of burned watersheds. The first is that wildfire represents a truly catastrophic event, one that changes flow regimes and sediment production for years. Sediment produced from surface and channel sources might not be passed through the system immediately. When the sediment is transported, the response of benthic invertebrates might be reflected in lower diversities. There is also the possibility that the benthic community has undergone a change in structure due to repeated, significant physical changes. The data from Williams Creek (and the other burned watersheds) do not indicate taxa replacement has occurred, so if a change in structure has occurred, it is subtle.

SUMMARY

Results from vegetation transects indicate seeding of grass species was of little value on the Will Fire, and that in critical watersheds managers should consider alternate ground cover protection measures such as mulching or contour falling of available material.

The nine years of data following the Will Fire on the Plumes National Forest indicate that intense wildfires may have a substantial and long lasting impact on the water quality of the watersheds in which they burn, as indicated by stream invertebrate diversity. When fires remove both live and dead organic channel stability components, significant sediment production from channel sources can be expected, and managers should consider use of in channel (check dams, recruitment of woody debris, etc.) as well as upslope rehabilitation measures following wildfire.

REFERENCES

- Albin, Douglas P. 1979. Fire and stream ecology in some Yellowstone Lake tributaries. California Fish and Game 65(4): 216-238.

- Dyrness, C.T. 1976. Effect of wildfire on soil wettability in the high Cascades of Oregon. Research Paper PNW-202. Portland, Oregon: Pacific Northwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 18p.
- Erman, D.C.; Newbold J.D.; Roby K.B. 1977. Evaluation of streamside bufferstrips for protecting aquatic organisms. Contribution No. 165. California Water Resources Center, Davis, California. 48pp.
- Erman, D.C.; Mahoney, Donald. 1983. Recovery after logging in streams with and without bufferstrips in Northern California. Contribution No. 186. California Water Resources Center, Davis, California. 50pp.
- Helvey, J.D. 1980. Effects of a North Central Washington wildfire on runoff and sediment production. Water Resources Bull. 16(4): 627-634.
- Lotspeich, F.B., E.W. Mueller and P.J. Frey. 1970. Effects of a large scale forest fire on water quality in interior Alaska. USDI Water Pollution Control Admin. Alaska Water Lab. College, Alaska. 115pp.
- Lyon, L.J. 1976. Vegetal development in the sleeping Child Burn in western Montana 1961-1973. FS Research Paper INT-184. Ogden, Utah: Intermountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 16p.
- Pielou, E.C. 1975. Ecological Diversity. New York: Wiley; 165pp.
- Rich, L.R. 1962. Erosion and sediment movement following a wildfire in a Ponderosa Pine Forest of central Arizona. Research No. RM-76. Fort Collins, Colorado: Rocky Mountain Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12p.
- Schindler, W.D. and others. 1980. Effects of a windstorm and forest fire on chemical losses from forested watersheds and on water quality of receiving streams. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 37(4): 328-334.
- Viereck, L.A.; Dyrness, C.T. 1979. Ecological effects on the Wickersham Dome Fire near Fairbanks, Alaska. Research Paper PNW-90. Fairbanks, Alaska: Pacific Northwest Range and Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 14p.

Compatibility of Timber Salvage Operations with Watershed Values¹

Roger J. Poff²

Abstract: Timber salvage on the Indian Burn was carried out without compromising watershed values. In some cases watershed condition was actually improved by providing ground cover, by removing trees that were a source of erosive water droplets, and by breaking up hydrophobic soil layers. Negative impacts of timber salvage on watersheds were minimized by using an interdisciplinary team that identified issues, concerns, and opportunities early, defined specific objectives for each resource, had access to accurate site information, and developed management prescriptions in the context of whole watersheds and fire management areas.

Between August 30 and September 7, 1987, the Indian Fire burned 3,750 ha (9,300 ac) of highly productive timber land, killing over 283,000 m³ (120 million bd ft) of timber. By May 1988, 245,000 m³ (104 million bd ft) had been sold, and over 70 percent of this volume had been harvested (Svalberg 1988). This timely salvage captured high timber values without compromising watershed values. In some situations watershed conditions were actually enhanced, as compared to no salvage at all.

This paper presents information on how, and under what conditions, timber salvage can enhance watershed condition, and discusses critical steps in the environmental analysis process necessary to minimize damage to soils and watersheds.

LOCATION AND SITE CHARACTERISTICS

The Indian Fire is located approximately 120 km (75 mi) northeast of Sacramento, Calif., in

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, Calif.

²Soil Scientist, North Sierra Zone, Pacific Southwest Region and Tahoe National Forest, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Nevada City, Calif.

the headwaters of the North Yuba River on the Tahoe National Forest (Fig. 1).

Elevations range from about 760 to 1600 m (2,500 to 5,200 ft), with most of the burned area between 1,200 and 1,500 m (4,000 and 5,000 ft). About half the area is rolling, well-dissected terrain with slope gradients under 35 percent; the other half is steep mountainsides and canyonsides. Precipitation ranges from 190 to 215 cm (75 to 85 in), about 20 percent as snow. Vegetation is mixed conifer forest to about 1,400 m (4,600 ft), and white and red fir forest at higher elevations. Timber volume before the burn ranged from 40 to 500 m³/ha (7,000 to 85,000 bd ft/acre). Bedrock is dominantly a complex of metasedimentary rocks (slates and schists) at mid elevations, and volcanic mudflow (breccia and tuff) above 1,400 m (4,600 ft). A typical soil on the metasediments is the Jocal series, a fine-loamy, mixed, mesic Typic Haplohumult; a typical soil on the volcanics is the McCarthy series, a medial-skeletal, mesic Andic Xerumbrept (Hanes 1986).

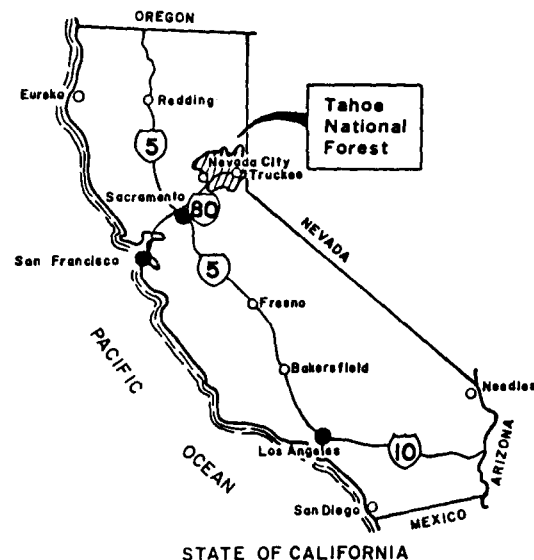


Figure 1--Location of Tahoe National Forest

The central one-third of the fire area burned very intensely, in many places consuming all needles and fine stems in the crowns as well as all duff and litter on the ground. On another one-third, a very intense ground fire completely consumed all duff and litter, but did not consume the crowns. A very strongly hydrophobic layer--up to 38 cm (15 in) deep on the McCarthy series--developed where the burn was intense (Poff 1988).

BENEFITS OF SALVAGE LOGGING TO WATERSHEDS

Compared to no salvage at all, salvage logging can improve watershed condition by increasing ground cover, by removing a source of large, high-energy water droplets, and by breaking up hydrophobic soil layers. Salvage logging also has the potential to generate funds for watershed improvement work, and the potential to reduce the future risk of high-intensity fires by reducing fuel loading.

The greatest potential for benefits to watershed conditions exists where fire has consumed needles and small twigs in tree crowns as well as the duff and litter. In this situation, not only is ground cover lacking, but the potential for its replenishment by needlecast is also lacking. An often underestimated impact under these conditions is caused by the stems of standing dead trees, which allow rainfall to coalesce into large, highly erosive droplets that accelerate erosion around the bases of dead trees. This phenomenon has been observed by Miles (1987) on the Shasta-Trinity National Forest, and the physical processes involved have been described by Herwitz (1987). The importance of drop size on erosivity is discussed by Hudson (1971). Salvage logging thus not only increases ground cover by the addition of slash, it also removes the source of large water droplets causing accelerated erosion.

Where strongly hydrophobic soil layers have developed, ground disturbance caused by yarding operations can break up the continuity of the hydrophobic soils and improve infiltration. However, this apparently occurs only if logging disturbance is deep enough to penetrate the full depth of the hydrophobic soil layer. Observations on the Indian Burn also suggest this benefit may not be achieved where the hydrophobic layer is very thick (Poff 1988).

Where high volumes of timber have been killed, producing excessive fuel loading, a long-term benefit of salvage logging is to reduce the risk of an intense fire in the future.

Another often overlooked benefit of salvage logging is the generation of funds for watershed improvement projects. When timber is sold, some of the receipts are returned to the sale area for post-salvage resource improvement projects. Timely salvage means less deterioration and higher value; if higher value brings a higher price, the potential for funds to do resource improvement work is likely to be higher.

CRITICAL STEPS IN INTERDISCIPLINARY APPROACH

One reason for the successful salvage on the Indian Burn, including watershed protection treatments, was the interdisciplinary process used to prepare the environmental analysis. Key steps in this process were (1) early development of watershed issues, concerns, and opportunities, (2) defining specific objectives for each resource, (3) accurate assessment of on-site conditions, and (4) looking at whole watersheds and fire management areas.

The first critical step was the development of issues, concerns, and opportunities (ICOs) by the Emergency Burn Rehabilitation Team even before the fire was controlled. This early identification of ICOs legitimized the special needs of all resources, including the importance of timely salvage to capture the high timber values.

The second critical step was to define minimum objectives for each resource in specific terms. This set the stage for developing strategies and treatments that would benefit all resources and would provide a basis for trade-offs. For example: the watershed specialist defined the need for ground cover to minimize erosion, but the fuels specialist identified the need to remove woody material to reduce fuel loading; however, when specific objectives were examined, there was no conflict. The preferred ground cover to maintain watershed values had been defined as litter and small woody material close to or in contact with the soil; the greatest fuel hazards had been defined as woody material larger than 8 cm (3 in) in diameter, in a continuous bed, and with a fuel ladder above the ground.

The third critical step was to develop an accurate assessment of on-site conditions. The burn was subdivided into 10 timber sale areas, with a team assigned to each. These field teams provided detailed information on on-site conditions to the interdisciplinary team (IDT). In addition, each stream was traversed by a hydrologist or hydrologic technician who prescribed specific treatments for individual

stream reaches. This detailed information was invaluable to the IDT when developing management prescriptions.

The last critical step was to look at whole watersheds and fire management areas to assess risks. This broader perspective encouraged development of combination treatments. For example: on some cable clearcuts fuels were treated only on the upper slopes, leaving slash for erosion control on the lower slopes. On other harvest units, heavy fuels were removed only along ridgetops to create fuel breaks. Similarly, risks to water quality and soil productivity on each harvest unit were examined in the context of a whole watershed. This allowed ranking harvest units on the basis of need for ground cover, and made tradeoffs easier with other resources.

PRESCRIBED TREATMENTS

The following treatments were developed for specific harvest units in order to meet the need to treat fuels, to provide ground cover, to remove trees contributing to raindrop erosion, and to break up the continuity of hydrophobic soils:

Intentional Disturbance of Hydrophobic Soils--Where hydrophobic layers were thin, generally less than 5 to 10 cm (2 to 4 in), tractors were intentionally not restricted to a designated skidding pattern, but were encouraged to disturb as much surface soil as possible.

Protection of Streamside Management Zones (SMZs)--Variable width SMZs were prescribed and posted on the ground for each individual stream reach. No tractors were allowed in SMZs; on cable units logs were fully suspended across stream reaches. Trees salvaged from SMZs were directionally felled and end-lined.

YSM and YUM Specifications to Reduce the Need for Broadcast Burning--Woody material generally larger than 8 cm (3 in) in diameter was removed during yarding by specifications in the sale contracts to yard submerchantable material (YSM), or to yard unmerchantable material (YUM), to avoid the need for broadcast burning.

Lop and Scatter Slash--Specifications to lop and scatter slash after logging were made to reduce height of fuel ladders and to get the slash in contact with the soil for erosion protection.

Biomass Harvesting of Submerchantable Material--As an alternative to tractor piling or broadcast burning, rubber-tired logging equipment

was used to harvest submerchantable material, which was yarded to a chipper. Specifications were to leave on-site all material smaller than 8 cm (3 in) in diameter.

Special Specifications for Tractor Piling--Ground cover and large woody material specifications were developed for tractor piling logging slash to prepare sites for planting.

Over-the-Snow Logging--Over-the-snow logging was specified to reduce soil compaction during winter logging operations.

The following summary indicates the wide range of post-sale site preparation treatments prescribed for the Indian Burn:

Treatment:	Area (ha)	(ac)
Treat brush	726	1,800
Hand cut brush	72	180
Tractor pile	481	1,200
Broadcast burn	48	120
Lop and scatter	1,418	3,500
Spot burn	36	90
Hand pile slash	73	180
YSM	158	390
YUM	56	140

The amount of area in the last four treatments is significant. These four treatments are alternatives to broadcast burning that were prescribed for watershed protection. The area of alternative treatments is almost seven times the area prescribed for broadcast burning.

RESULTS

The intentional disturbance of surface soils to break up hydrophobic layers appeared effective on the Jocal soils, where the hydrophobic layers were less than 5 to 10 cm (2 to 4 in) thick. Where these soils had been intentionally disturbed, they were no longer hydrophobic in August 1988; on adjacent undisturbed control plots soils were still hydrophobic and showed no sign of recovery. On McCarthy soils, where hydrophobic layers were thicker than 15 cm (6 in), the hydrophobic layers were not effectively disturbed by either the rubber-tired logging equipment or by tractors, and soils were just as hydrophobic as on adjacent undisturbed control plots. This was partly because disturbance was not deep enough and partly because the disturbance merely remixed the hydrophobic soils (Poff 1988).

The harvest of excess fuels in SMZs was effective. The directional felling and end-lining caused very little ground disturbance. However, where fires had consumed the

crowns only and where there was no needlecast, directional felling placed fine branches and tops outside the SMZs, resulting in loss of desirable ground cover in the SMZ.

Biomass harvesting with rubber-tired logging equipment increased ground cover from 16 percent before salvage logging to 54 percent after biomass harvest. However, this increase in cover is still inadequate to protect the site because of the thick, strongly hydrophobic soil layers. Strict conformance to the specifications developed for biomass harvesting would have produced much more cover, but it was difficult to get the contractor to leave all the fine woody material on-site because this required an extra crew person to limb tops and branches.

The special specifications for tractor piling were effective. Ground cover was 35 percent before logging, 77 percent after logging but before site preparation, and 69 percent after site preparation.

On the units where special YSM or YUM specifications were used to reduce fuel loading, effective ground cover ranged from about 75 to 90 percent.

Over-the-snow logging was successful in avoiding soil compaction. However, where YSM specifications were used with cable logging over snow, results were unacceptable because much of the material was lost in the snow. On one unit it was necessary to follow up with tractor piling to reduce fuels to acceptable levels.

NEED FOR FURTHER STUDY

The strongly hydrophobic soils have persisted much longer than anticipated (Poff 1988). They have undergone one year of seasonal changes, including 80 cm (30 in) of precipitation. How long they will persist is unknown. This is a serious problem because reforestation cannot begin until the rooting zone is moist, and soil erosion will remain high until infiltration returns to normal.

The treatments prescribed have added ground cover. Long-term monitoring is needed to evaluate how effective this cover will be in controlling soil erosion.

Resprouting shrubs are common in parts of the Indian Burn. The effect of treatments to control brush reinvasion could have long-term impacts on watershed condition.

CONCLUSIONS

Salvage harvesting of fire-killed timber can improve watershed conditions (as compared to no salvage) where fire has consumed both ground cover and tree crowns. Improvements are accomplished by adding effective ground cover and by removing the source of large water droplets that can cause erosion around the base of dead trees.

Salvage harvest of fire-killed timber can improve watershed condition where hydrophobic soils have developed, if logging equipment can disturb the hydrophobic layers to a sufficient depth.

Interdisciplinary solutions of potential conflicts among resources can be resolved if (1) critical issues, concerns, and opportunities are identified early in the planning process, (2) specific resource objectives are defined, (3) accurate on-site information is available, and (4) management prescriptions and mitigation measures are made in the context of whole watersheds and fire management areas.

REFERENCES

- Hanes, Richard O. 1986. Soil survey of the Tahoe National Forest Area, Calif. Interim report on file at Tahoe National Forest, Nevada City, Calif.
- Herwitz, Stanley R. 1987. Raindrop impact and water flow on the vegetative surfaces of trees and the effects of stemflow and throughfall generation. *Earth Surface Processes and Landforms* 12(4): 425-432.
- Hudson, Norman. 1971. *Soil Conservation*. Ithaca, New York: Cornell University Press; 320 p.
- Miles, Scott, Zone Soil Scientist, Shasta-Trinity National Forest, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Redding, Calif. [Personal conversation]. November, 1987.
- Poff, Roger J. Distribution and persistence of hydrophobic soil layers on the Indian Burn. 1989. [These Proceedings].
- Svalberg, Larry, Planning Forester, North Yuba Ranger Station, Tahoe National Forest, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Camptonville, Calif. [Personal conversation]. May, 1988.

Rehabilitation and Recovery Following Wildfires: A Synthesis¹

Lee H. MacDonald²

Wildfires traditionally have been regarded as a threat to many of the multiple resources produced by forest lands. Timber, fish, recreation, and water are all important forest products that can be adversely affected by wildfires. The greatest threat, however, is to the long-term productivity of the land. Foresters are particularly aware of this threat because the production of their primary crop--trees--is such a long-term endeavor.

The importance of fire protection is demonstrated by the fact that about 40 percent of the USDA Forest Service budget in California is allocated to fire management. Once a wildfire does occur, wildland managers are obliged to take measures to minimize both short-term damage to resources and long-term reductions in productivity. Actions directed at reducing post-fire damage are typically termed rehabilitation, whereas actions directed at accelerating the return to pre-fire levels of productivity are classified as recovery.

The wildfires in summer 1987 were particularly dramatic in the western United States. Wildfires burned approximately 720,000 acres in California, or about 3.6 percent of the National Forests in California. Approximately 1.8 billion board feet of timber were damaged or placed at risk to disease and insects; this amount is roughly equivalent to the average annual cut on National Forest lands in California.

The extensive damage triggered rehabilitation and recovery efforts on an unprecedented scale. This session of the symposium provided an opportunity for land managers to compare post-fire treatments, and to conduct a preliminary evaluation of their effectiveness. Six of the papers were case studies from different National Forests, whereas the seventh paper (Taskey and others) was concerned with a specific technique--ryegrass seeding--in the central coast ranges of California.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Associate, Philip Williams & Associates, Ltd., Pier 35, The Embarcadero, San Francisco, CA 94133.

REHABILITATION AND RECOVERY

Taken together, the six case studies provide an excellent overview of the emergency rehabilitation techniques applied in the Sierra Nevada, northern California, and southwestern Oregon. The procedure followed on each National Forest was to: (1) assemble an interdisciplinary team; (2) collect basic information and field data; (3) identify needs for protecting life, property and resources; (4) establish objectives; and (5) recommend appropriate rehabilitation and recovery measures.

Rehabilitation and recovery measures can be classified as either slope treatments or channel treatments. Slope treatments, such as mulching, seeding, and contour felling, tend to focus on maintaining site productivity. Channel treatments are aimed at minimizing both on-site and downstream impacts. Typical techniques include the construction of check dams, stabilization of stream channels, and the replacement of burned-out woody debris.

A comparison of the papers shows that the balance between slope and channel measures differed in each National Forest, and that each Forest also tended to emphasize different techniques. This variation was due largely to the Forest managers' attempt to relate their rehabilitation and recovery measures to their specific environment and objectives. The final choice of treatments was determined by evaluating the compatibility of the treatments with other resource values, treatment costs, timber salvage goals, and a variety of institutional and political considerations.

Slope Treatments

Miles and others stated that slope treatments were intended to reduce surface erosion, disperse overland flow, prevent water concentration, and provide local sites for sediment storage. Similar objectives were cited in the other papers. Slope techniques common to most of the presentations included contour felling, seeding, and mulching. Other methods and their rationale were: the placement of lines of hay bales across the slope as an erosion barrier (Gross and others, Siskiyou National Forest); the removal of fire-killed trees in order to reduce the likelihood of small mass failures (Smith and Wright, Six Rivers National Forest); the removal of fire-killed trees to reduce the impact of concentrated raindrops falling from the dead limbs (Poff, Tahoe National Forest); planting in riparian areas and on potentially active landslides (Gross and others, Siskiyou National Forest); and deep soil ripping to break up a fire-induced hydrophobic layer (Poff, Tahoe National Forest).

Although each treatment has its merits, its effectiveness in a specific location depends on

the physical and biological environment. For example, contoured hay bales and contour felling trapped only small amounts of sediment during the first rainy season (Miles and others; Gross and others). This should not be surprising because most forest soils have infiltration rates well in excess of expected rainfall intensities, and most runoff in forested areas is generated by subsurface stormflow (Pierce 1967; Dunne 1978). Only at the bottom of slopes or in swales is there sufficient topographic convergence to generate saturation overland flow or return flow, and it is these areas in which physical barriers might prove effective. Contour felling or contoured hay bales could also be helpful on compacted areas, such as roads and fire lines, or in areas with a fire-induced hydrophobic layer.

Similarly, the value of mulching and grass seeding on erosion will vary according to the site conditions. In areas from which the litter layer has been completely removed by fire or other types of disturbance, a mulch or grass layer can absorb much of the energy of falling raindrops. This will reduce rainsplash erosion, prevent the breakdown of soil aggregates, and inhibit surface sealing. Grass growth also can help capture nutrients released by the fire that otherwise might be lost through leaching.

The physical, on-site benefits of a mulch or grass cover are widely recognized. Ruby suggested that grass seeding also can have beneficial effects on the watershed scale. These include accelerated hydrologic recovery, mitigation of potential cumulative impacts, and reduction of the adverse effects of storm events. The efficacy of grass seeding in achieving these watershed-scale benefits is difficult to assess because runoff and sediment are derived from many sources in a watershed. A grass cover may be comparable to a forest cover in terms of protecting the soil surface from rainsplash and surface runoff, but it is not comparable in terms of slope stability or reducing soil moisture in the deeper soil layers. It is precisely because of these differences that the physical processes and treatment objectives must be identified before initiating a rehabilitation and recovery program. Otherwise we run the risk of applying inappropriate treatments.

As was the case with the other slope measures, the maximum benefit of seeding or mulching will be in areas where overland flow does occur. In these areas seeding or mulching can greatly reduce sediment yields and slow the velocity of overland flow. Because these areas have the greatest potential to deliver sediment directly to the stream channels, they should have the highest priority for treatment.

Roby's data from the Will Fire indicated that scattering slash is another means of providing ground cover in a burned area, and this was qualitatively supported by Poff and

Miles and others. However, generation of the slash by salvage logging will increase soil disturbance, and this disadvantage must be carefully weighed against the benefits of an increase in ground cover. In general, we cannot base the decision to act on beneficial changes in a single process (for example, reduction of raindrop impact), but must consider all the effects of the proposed action.

Deep ripping is another disruptive treatment for which the pros and cons must be carefully weighed. Hydrophobic soils occur in both burned and unburned areas (DeBano 1969), but their hydrologic effects are quite different. In unburned areas hydrophobic layers can be quite deep, but they typically are discontinuous and do not generate much overland flow (Biswell 1974). On the other hand, fire-induced hydrophobic layers are shallow (less than 10 cm) and can be continuous enough to cause substantial surface runoff. Clearly the decision to treat and the design of effective treatments depend on our ability to assess the extent, strength, and persistence of hydrophobic layers following wildfires.

For some slope treatments the biological effects can be more significant than the intended effects on runoff and erosion. Taskay and others showed that grass seeding inhibited the regeneration and growth of native plant species. The seeding also led to an increase in the pocket gopher population, which caused erosion rates to be higher in the seeded plots. These types of results indicate that, in the face of uncertainty, more conservative (that is, less disruptive) treatments are preferred.

The stochastic element in land management must be recognized and considered. The winter following the 1987 wildfires, for example, was relatively mild, and this helped minimize adverse effects (Miles and others; Gross and others). The absence of a severe storm also means that the results of the monitoring may be biased. In years with more intense storms cross-slope barriers or other recovery measures could prove more effective than was indicated by the data from the first year after the 1987 fires.

Channel Treatments

The channel treatments had two basic objectives: (1) to provide channel stability by inhibiting lateral and vertical scour; and (2) to trap sediment that would otherwise be mobilized by the stream (Miles and others; Smith and Wright; Gross and others). The placement of structures in the channel was the most common means of achieving these objectives. These structures ranged from simple hay bale check dams to large woody debris. Other rehabilitation and recovery measures discussed in the papers included replanting riparian vegetation and bank stabilization.

The appropriate channel treatment was determined by the type of channel needing protection, the length of time protection was required, and the objective of the treatment. For short-term control in small channels hay bale or sandbag check dams were used (Miles and others; Gross and others). Their observed life-span of two to three years implies that a large portion of the trapped sediment will be remobilized after three or four years (Miles and others).

Where longer-term channel stabilization and sediment storage is desired, log-and-rock check dams or large organic debris is appropriate. Their larger scale means that failure after a couple of decades, or during a major runoff event, could release a large slug of sediment with a much greater potential for disruption. Thus the decision to install these larger structures implicitly assumes that the stream channel will have stabilized by the time failure occurs, and that the breakdown of one structure will not cause significant degradation or the failure of other structures downstream.

In general, these types of structural treatments were considered successful. The few failures observed were due to the usual problems associated with the technique, namely a failure to adequately protect the structure against piping or undercutting.

CONSENSUS AND CONFLICT

The 1987 wildfires in California and southern Oregon were unprecedented in scale. The efforts of forest managers to reduce adverse effects were guided by the resource concerns in the individual areas and their knowledge of runoff and erosion processes. Differences in values, perceptions, sites and resources all contributed to the variation in approaches reported in this session.

Despite these differences, the authors agreed on several issues that have important implications for future rehabilitation and recovery efforts, and for current Forest Service research and management. First, there is no substitute for reliable baseline data. First-hand knowledge of site conditions is essential to the proper selection of treatment measures. Second, the interdisciplinary team approach is essential to developing rehabilitation and recovery plans that respond to the objectives of all the various constituencies. Third, post-fire resource management objectives must be identified as early as possible. Specification of the timber salvage objective, for example, was necessary to reduce post-fire management conflicts and maximize emergency treatment funds. Fourth, the effectiveness of the emergency treatments is highly dependent on their timing. The treatments should be applied as soon as possible after the fire is controlled and be in place before the

first winter storms. Finally, the authors agreed that more effort should be devoted to evaluating the treatment measures discussed in the papers. Cooperation between researchers and the National Forest System is not only desirable, but is probably essential.

The primary controversy was whether grass seeding was an effective treatment for burned areas. Miles and others found that the effect of seeding can be highly variable. Roby's report on the 1979 Williams Creek burn indicated little or no differences between seeded and unseeded areas in terms of ground cover and sediment yield. His data showed that, in forested watersheds at higher elevations, seeding with grass does not provide cover any more expeditiously than the natural revegetation processes. Taskey and others concluded that seeding of annual ryegrass can be ineffective or even harmful. A recent review by Barro and Conard (1987), although focussing on chaparral ecosystems, emphasized the variability and uncertainty associated with seeding ryegrass after wildfires. This range of opinions and results means that the controversy will persist until more definitive data are available. Until then, the decision to seed will depend on factors such as the willingness to take risks, compatibility of grass growth with other resources, site conditions, the time of year, and the sociopolitical need to take demonstrative action.

FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Obviously, post-fire rehabilitation and recovery require considerable thought and planning before action can be initiated. No "canned" set of methods and techniques can be applied once the wildfire is extinguished.

In view of the current uncertainty about the value of different treatments, rigorous monitoring and evaluation studies are the next logical step. Miles and others have taken the lead in attempting to quantify the costs and benefits of the different treatments. Their efforts on the Shasta-Trinity National Forest must be supported by:

- (1) Standardizing the methods for measurement and evaluation. Any comparison of treatments must use the same methodology.
- (2) Specifying the time scale for measuring and calculating benefits. In general, the time scale should be consistent with the expected life-span of the treatment. A corollary to this is that treatments should be selected according to the desired length of effectiveness. In some cases the timing of sediment delivery may be more important than the absolute amount, and this must be taken into account when selecting and evaluating treatments.
- (3) Evaluating all the effects of a given treatment.

(4) Recognizing that treatment effectiveness is not necessarily the same as achieving the treatment goal. An example cited by Taskey and others was that the percent increase in ground cover due to seeding (the objective) cannot be used to assess the reduction in sediment yield (the goal).

Several times during the conference it was suggested that there was little one could do after a fire except get out of the way. While this is an overstatement, the point is that we cannot completely negate the adverse effects of a wildfire, and that much of the rehabilitation and recovery is accomplished by the natural stabilization processes. Nevertheless the public demands, and our responsibility as land managers requires, that we make all feasible efforts to reduce adverse on-site and downstream effects. As resource demands continue to escalate, land managers will be increasingly required to explain and justify their efforts. We must begin now to develop the information and data necessary to make the best choices. The recent wildfires have given us the opportunity to do so, and the development of guidelines for the future should be one of the enduring legacies of the 1987 fire season.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

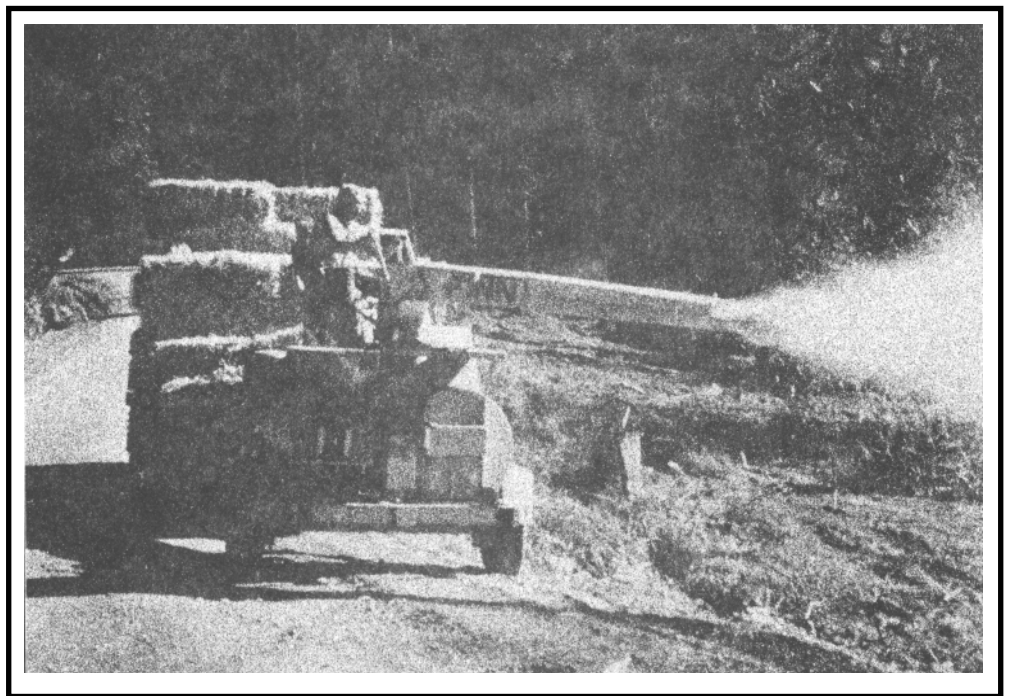
I am grateful to the authors, for submitting papers for this session, and to John Rector, for his assistance in formulating this paper. Several Forest Service employees provided comments on an earlier draft of this paper, and their response helped shape the final version.

REFERENCES

Barro, S.C.; Conard, S.G. 1987. Use of ryegrass seeding as an emergency revegetation measure in chaparral ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-102. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and

Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.
Biswell, H.H. 1974. Effects of fire on chaparral. In: Kozlowski, T.T.; Ahlgren, C.E., eds. Fire and ecosystems. San Francisco: Academic Press; 321-364.
DeBano, L.F. 1969. Observations on water-repellent soils in western United States. In: Symposium on water-repellant soils, proceedings. University of California, Riverside; 17-28.
Dunne, T. 1978. Field studies of hillslope flow processes. In: Kirkby, M.J., ed. Hillslope hydrology. New York: John Wiley & Sons; 227-293.
Gross, Ed; Steinblums, Ivars; Ralston, Curt; Jubas, Howard. 1989. Emergency watershed treatments on burned lands in southwestern Oregon. [These proceedings].
Miles, Scott R.; Haskins, Donald M.; Ranken, Darrel W. 1989. Emergency burn rehabilitation: Cost, risk, and effectiveness. [These proceedings].
Pierce, R.S. 1967. Evidence of overland flow on forest watersheds. In: Sopper, W.E.; Lull, H.W., eds. Forest hydrology. New York: Pergamon Press; 247-253.
Poff, Roger J. 1989. Compatibility of timber salvage operations with watershed values. [These proceedings].
Roby, Kenneth B. 1989. Watershed response and recovery from the Will Fire: Ten years of observation. [These proceedings].
Ruby, Earl C. 1989. Rationale for seeding grass on the Stanislaus Complex burn. [These proceedings].
Smith, Mark E.; Wright, Kenneth A. 1989. Emergency watershed protection measures in highly unstable terrain on the Blake Fire, Six Rivers National Forest, 1987. [These proceedings].
Taskey, Ronald; Curtis, C.L.; Stone, Jennifer. 1989. Wildfire, ryegrass seeding, and watershed rehabilitation. [These proceedings].

Poster Papers



Population Structure Analysis in the Context of Fire: A Preliminary Report¹

Jeremy John Ahouse²

One difficulty in managing watershed vegetation with prescribed burning is predicting the response of the vegetation. Burns are catastrophic for the plant populations. The only way to predict the response of the vegetation is to look closely at the population structure. Chamise (*Adenostoma fasciculatum* H. & A.) is a "fire adapted" chaparral plant that has a persistent fire stimulated seed bank. Chamise presents us with a complex population structure, since many year classes of seeds can be viable simultaneously in the seed bank. Only after the population dynamics are well described is it possible to model the response of a population to fire. We have been exploring the use of matrix models to summarize and model chamise communities.

TRANSITION MATRICES

Transition matrices allow us to combine laboratory and field data and bring them together to estimate the effects of fire in different seasons on stands of chamise.

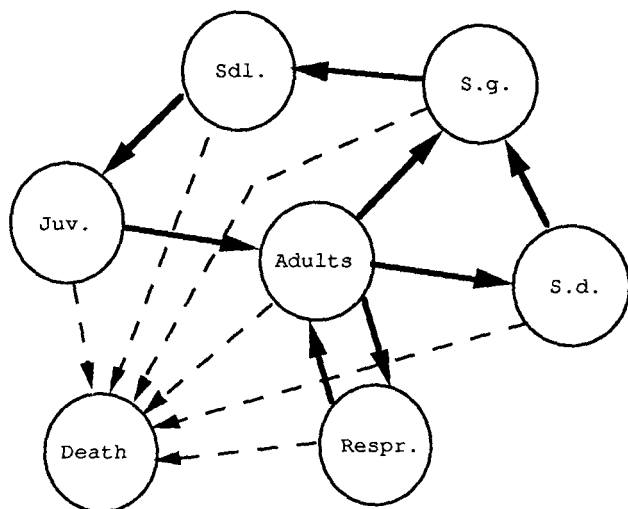


Fig 1. This diagram shows the life stages and important transitions for chamise; germinable seeds (S.g.), dormant seeds (S.d.), seedlings (Sdl.), juveniles (Juv.), adults, and resprouters (Respr.).

¹Presented at the Symposium for Fire and Watershed Management October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, CA.

²Graduate Student at San Francisco State University, Department of Ecology and Systematics.

To use the matrix approach we define the probability of a member of a cohort moving to a new "state" of the system during a given time interval. The diagram above shows the seven states of the system. The matrix is constructed to summarize the probabilities of surviving from one state to the next and is used to describe the dynamics of the population.

THE MATRICES

Each element of the matrix refers to a particular transition and is a function of different factors. The factors we consider are fire intensity(I), season(S), seed depth(D), time since last burn(t), seed predators(P), climatological factors(C), and density dependent factors(d).

Sg	$f(P)$	$f(I,D)$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$f(I,S, C,t)$	$f(I,S, C,t)$
Sd	?	$f(p,I)$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$f(I,S, C,t)$	$f(I,S, C,t)$
Sdl	$f(C,S, I)$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$
J	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$f(d,I)$	$f(t,S)$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset-?$
A	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$f(t,S, C,I)$	$f(t,S, C,I)$	$f(t)$
R	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$\emptyset$	$f(t,I)$	$f(t)$

Fig 2. This matrix shows the proposed functional relationships between the different factors that affect the population structure.

We are building a library of matrices which can then be applied one after another to simulate "possible" futures for a given stand of chamise under a given fire regime.

SOME BENEFITS OF THIS APPROACH

Using a population model based on transitions allows us to include laboratory data on germination as a function of heat or charate in concert with field data on-controlled burns directly in our predictions about real populations. A second benefit is that by describing the population dynamics with respect to environmental fluctuations it becomes possible to play out long and short term scenarios for a population and compare different management strategies.

Effect of Grass Seeding and Fertilizing on Surface Erosion in Two Intensely Burned Sites in Southwest Oregon¹

Michael P. Amaranthus²

INTRODUCTION

In Oregon and California, large acreages of forest land were burned by wildfires in the summer and fall of 1987. Major storms can greatly accelerate surface erosion in areas with bare soil following fire. Emergency rehabilitation measures are commonly employed to rapidly establish vegetation cover and minimize surface erosion. This study assessed the combined effect of grass seeding and fertilizing on bare soil exposure and surface erosion in a clearcut and adjacent forest intensely burned by wildfire.

SITE DESCRIPTION AND METHODS

The study site is located on a southwest-to-west facing slope at 420 m elevation in the Siskiyou Mountains of southwest Oregon. Slope steepness ranges from 40 to 50 percent. Soils are fine-loamy mixed mesic Ultic Haploxeralfs, formed in colluvium derived from metavolcanic parent material at 80 to 110 cm depth. Annual precipitation averages 175 cm, with less than 10 percent falling from mid-May to mid-September. The area was clearcut in December, 1985, broadcast burned and planted with Douglas-fir seedlings in spring 1986. Clumps of pioneering hardwood--primarily tanoak, madrone, chinquapin, black oak, and poison oak--were widespread across the clearcut before wildfire. The adjacent forest contained a Douglas-fir overstory and primarily tanoak, madrone, and black oak understory.

On August 31, 1987, the study site was intensely burned by the Longwood Complex wildfire on the Siskiyou National Forest. Surface litter, duff layers, downed woody material less than 20 cm, and leaves and needles in live crowns were completely consumed in both clearcut and adjacent forest. Bare mineral soil was exposed on approximately 85 to 95 percent of the study area.

For the study, sixteen blocks, 30 by 80, were identified in clearcut and adjacent forest immediately following fire, but before the onset of first fall rains. Half of the blocks were seeded with annual rye grass (*Lolium multiflorum*) at a rate equivalent to 27kg/ha. On the same blocks, ammonium phosphate fertilizer (27-12-0-6) was applied at a rate equivalent to 260kg/ha. The other half of the blocks were neither seeded nor fertilized (untreated).

Rates of surface erosion were estimated using the erosion-bridge method (Ranger and Frank, 1978). Three erosion-bridge sample units were randomly selected in each block. Each unit consists of a 48-in aluminum masonry level, machined to provide 10 vertical measuring holes, placed on two fixed support pins. Distance to the soil surface was measured at 10 fixed points along the bridge. Erosion rates were estimated, following each major storm, from average changes in soil surface elevation during the period October 13, 1987 to May 4, 1988. The percentage of bare soil exposed was estimated for each block when erosion rates were sampled. Data were subjected to analysis of variance. Before analysis, erosion values were log-transformed to compensate for lognormally distributed values and percentage bare soil data converted to an inverse sine.

RESULTS AND DISCUSSION

Results showed that most surface erosion--67 to 92 percent in untreated blocks, 100 percent in seeded and fertilized blocks--occurred before December 9 (table 1). Monitoring of individual storms suggests that the majority of the surface erosion was associated with a large storm that dropped 26.7 cm of precipitation during the period of December 1 to 9.

Grass and fertilizer treatment did not significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) reduce bare soil exposure in clearcut and adjacent forest compared to the untreated blocks before December 9 (table 2). Grass and fertilizer treated areas, however, did trend toward reduced bare soil exposure, compared to untreated blocks. By May 4, 1988, grass seed and fertilizer treatment had significantly reduced bare soil exposure 42 percent in both clearcut and adjacent forest, compared to untreated blocks.

Grass and fertilizer treatment did not significantly ($p \leq 0.05$) reduce surface erosion in clearcut and adjacent forest compared to the untreated blocks (table 1). Grass and fertilizer treatment, however, did trend toward reduced surface erosion. Differences might have been larger had grass coverage been greater before the first major storm. No surface erosion was observed in the seeded and fertilized blocks after December 9, suggesting that rapid increases in vegetative cover from that time until May 1988 apparently were effective in preventing surface erosion. The low surface erosion values in untreated blocks, after December 9, are probably

¹Presented at the symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Soil Scientist, Siskiyou National Forest, USDA Forest Service, Grants Pass, Oregon.

Table 1. Mean estimated surface erosion (standard error) for two sampling periods with and without grass seed and fertilizer following wildfire.*

Site and sampling period	<u>Estimated surface erosion</u>	
	Untreated blocks	Grass & fertilizer
	kgs/ha	
Clearcut- Oct. 13 to Dec. 9, 1987	-83.3 (8.0)	-62.3 (6.8)
Dec. 9, 1987 to May 4, 1988	-6.8 (2.4)	+ .5 (3.8)
Adjacent Forest- Oct. 13 to Dec. 9, 1987	-66.7 (12.1)	-44.6 (9.9)
Dec. 9, 1987 to May 4, 1988	-22.3 (8.2)	- .1 (7.0)

*Surface erosion was not significantly different between treatments within a sampling period but was significantly different within treatment between sampling periods ($p \leq 0.05$).

Table 2--Mean estimated percent of bare soil exposed (standard error) on two sampling dates with and without grass seed and fertilizer following wildfire.*

Site and sampling date	<u>Bare soil exposure</u>	
	Untreated blocks	Grass & fertilizer
	percent	
Clearcut- Dec. 9, 1987	65.1 (12.0)	45.3 (7.1)
May 4, 1988	49.7 (4.9)	8.0 (2.4)
Adjacent Forest- Dec. 9, 1987	71.7 (11.7)	65.0 (5.0)
May 4, 1988	55.2 (3.0)	13.2 (3.4)

*Bare soil exposure was significantly different between treatments on the May 4, 1988 sampling date and was significantly different for grass and fertilizer treatment between sampling dates ($p \leq 0.05$).

due to the infrequency of large storms, in combination with the increased occurrence of natural vegetation and armoring of the soil surface.

Changes in site and soil conditions following intense burning can greatly influence erosion potential (Anderson 1974, Amaranthus and McNabb, 1984). Estimated rates of surface erosion,

including both soil and ash, ranged from 45 to 90 kgs/ha, but did not significantly differ between clearcut and adjacent forest. In both, nearly all the foliage was destroyed, and interception and evapotranspiration were reduced. The fire totally consumed the organic layer on the forest floor, exposing bare mineral soil and reducing surface infiltration and water-holding capacity. The soil surface changed noticeably after the December 1 to 9 storm; surface sealing and washing were apparent, likely the result of raindrop splash rearranging soil particles and breakup of weak aggregates associated with loss of cover. Some areas showed evidence of overland flow, probably a direct result of surface sealing and reduced infiltration capacity.

The magnitude of surface erosion following intense fire is likely to vary considerably by soil and site conditions. In this study, however, rates of surface erosion in both clearcut and adjacent forest were nearly identical, probably due to similarities in slope and postfire conditions of the surface soil. The impact of the rates of surface erosion observed in this study depends upon many factors, including delivery rates to streams, sediment-sensitive values at risk, and indigenous site productivity. It is likely that accelerated surface erosion that accompanies periodic intense fire represents a large portion of the long-term surface sediment yield of otherwise forest-covered slopes. This study indicates that although large increases in surface erosion occur, susceptibility is of short duration and depends upon the timing of vegetative recovery and storms. The potential for reducing surface erosion appears greatest if grass cover can be established before the first major storm following intense wildfire.

REFERENCES

- Amaranthus, M.P., and D.H. McNabb. 1984. Bare soil exposure following logging and prescribed burning in southwest Oregon. Pages 235-237 in New Forest for a Changing World. Proceedings, Society of American Foresters National Convention, Oct. 16-20, Portland, Oregon.
- Anderson, H.W. 1974. Sediment deposition in reservoirs associated with rural roads, forest fires and catchment attributes. Proc. Symp. Man's Effect on Erosion and Sedimentation. Paris. Sept. 9-12 1974:87-95.
- Ranger, G.E., and F.F. Frank. 1978. The 3-f erosion bridge--a tool for measuring soil erosion. Range Improvement Studies #23. California State Department of Forestry, Sacramento.

Postfire Erosion and Vegetation Development in Chaparral as Influenced by Emergency Revegetation--A Study in Progress¹

Susan G. Conard, Peter M. Wohlgemuth, Jane A. Kertis, Wade G. Wells II, and Susan C. Barro²

One of the most dramatic and costly effects of chaparral fires is a large increase in erosion and sedimentation, yet little quantitative information is available on effects of fire, vegetation development, or environmental conditions on hillslope erosion. Since the 1940's, agencies and landowners have tried to reduce erosion damage by seeding of annual grasses after severe fires. However, the effects of this practice on erosion rates or on patterns of vegetation development are not well established (Barro and Conard 1987).

Recent questions about the effectiveness of ryegrass in reducing erosion, and its effects on chaparral plant succession, led Barro and Conard (1987) to do an extensive review of past research on the effects of ryegrass seeding on chaparral ecosystems. Several major areas that needed further research were identified, including studies comparing different geographic areas, studies evaluating erosion and vegetation characteristics concurrently, experiments replicated in time and space, studies comparing effects of seeded and native vegetation on erosion and succession, and long-term studies lasting 5 to 10 years.

To address some of these critical research needs, we have begun a major long-term research project to evaluate the impacts of fire and postfire rehabilitation measures on chaparral watersheds. More specifically, the study is designed to

-compare the magnitude and timing of surface erosion on seeded and unseeded slopes,

-compare the development of postfire vegetation on seeded and unseeded slopes,

-evaluate effects of site differences and year-to-year climatic variability in species establishment and vegetation/erosion interactions.

To encompass a wide geographic range, study sites have been established in four areas, ranging from San Luis Obispo County in the north to Orange County in the south. Three study sites are being established in each area, one of which is being burned each year starting in the summer of 1988. By replicating over three years, we hope to gather data over a range of postfire weather patterns at each location. A key to the success of this study is the cooperation of Federal, State, and local agencies to conduct prescribed burns that will approximate wildfire conditions. Through the use of prescribed fire we are able to quantify erosion and vegetation conditions before fire to compare with postfire data, and to achieve the important objectives of replication in time and space.

This research is just beginning, and it will be several years before detailed results are available. Our results should provide managers with greatly improved information on the effects of postfire seeding on erosion and on development of native chaparral vegetation. We also expect to add substantially to the understanding of effects of fire on erosion processes and of vegetation dynamics in chaparral ecosystems.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This study is supported by Agreement 8CA53048, California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection. Other major cooperators include Los Angeles and Santa Barbara Counties, and the Los Padres and Cleveland National Forests.

REFERENCES

Barro, Susan C.; Conard, Susan G. 1987. Use of ryegrass seeding as an emergency revegetation measure in chaparral ecosystems. Gen. Tech. Rep. PSW-102. Berkeley, CA: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 12 p.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Supervisory Ecologist, Hydrologist, Ecologist, Hydrologist, and Botanist, respectively, Forest Fire Laboratory, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Riverside, Calif.

Chaparral Response to Burning: A Summer Wildfire Compared with Prescribed Burns¹

Daniel O. Kelly, V. Thomas Parker, and Chris Rogers²

Over the last several years a number of chaparral areas have burned in Marin County, California. These have included several prescribed burns and one summer wildfire. Responses of the chaparral vegetation to these different burns have been variable and can be correlated to such pre-burn conditions as soil moisture, soil type, topography, and season of burning.

The prescribed burns took place in October through April, with moderate to high soil moisture levels. In contrast, the wildfire occurred in summer when soil moisture levels were at their lowest.

Response of the vegetation was determined by monitoring post-fire survival and establishment of species from the soil seed bank. In particular, seedling density of the predominant shrub chamise (Adenostoma fasciculatum H. & A.) and post-fire annual and perennial species was determined from permanent plots.

Post-fire germination of chamise after the first growing season was higher for the summer

wildfire than for the winter burns. Chamise seedling density averaged 34 m⁻² for the summer fire, with up to 235 m⁻² in some plots, compared to seedling densities ranging from 0 m⁻² to 16 m⁻² for the prescribed burns chamise. A comparison of only the prescribed burns indicates a variable response dependent upon seasonal timing of the burn, as well as site conditions. Responses of other woody chaparral dominants, e.g. manzanita (Arctostaphylos spp.) after the prescribed burns were similar to that of chamise.

Numbers of all other germinating species after the summer burn ranged between 100 and 200 individuals m⁻², with over 65 species represented. Prescribed burn sites had total densities which were considerably reduced, averaging less than 10 seedlings m⁻² with only about 25 species represented. The range in seedling density for all of the prescribed burns was considerable and germination was much higher following those which occurred under drier soil conditions.

Successful management of watershed vegetation includes determining the rate and extent of vegetation recovery to preserve soil and mineral nutrient resources as well as maintaining the vegetation. Although our data is representative of only one case study, it does reflect important differences in chaparral seed bank responses to being burned during different seasons. Therefore pre-burn site conditions and season should be considered when implementing prescribed burning practices in management of chaparral vegetation.

¹Presented at the symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Graduate student, Professor of Biology, and Graduate student at San Francisco State University, San Francisco.

Fire Rehabilitation Techniques on Public Lands in Central California¹

John W. Key²

Wildfire is one of the principal antagonists of soil and water resources. These resources are more vulnerable immediately following a wildfire than at any other time. The Bureau of Land Management (BLM) has important programs that are designed to alleviate or mitigate the detrimental effects of wildfire on public lands.

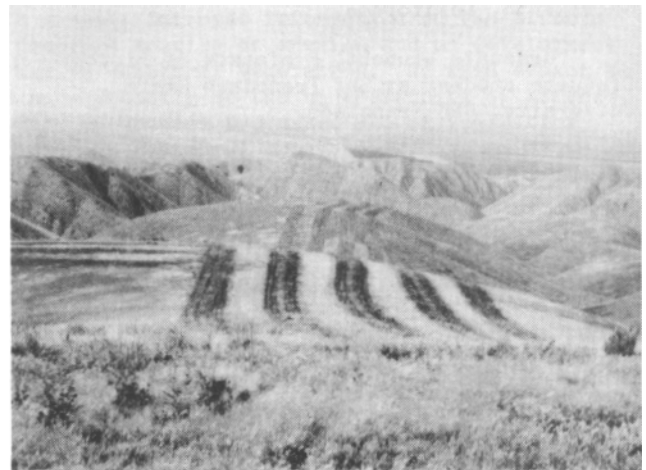
The primary effects of a wildfire on soil and water resources are the destruction of protective soil cover, the subsequent acceleration of the erosion of unprotected soil, the reduction of quality of runoff waters, and the increased turbidity and variability of streamflow.

Rehabilitation efforts fall into two categories: repair of damage caused by fire suppression activities and mitigation of damage caused by fire to the soil, water, and vegetation resources. Initial rehabilitation includes correction of damage caused by fireline construction, and damage to water sources and road drainage systems. Emergency fire rehabilitation efforts are assessed by an interdisciplinary team which recommends practices to offset immediate damage to soil, water, and vegetation resources.

BLM's emergency fire rehabilitation (EFR) program is both a planning process and an activity resulting from an evaluation of potential and past wildfire impacts to mitigate undesirable effects. Measures compatible with land-use objectives are promptly initiated to protect soil and water resources, life, and property in the most cost-effective and expeditious manner possible. The BLM, along with other agencies, such as the U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service, and the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection, cooperate to establish emergency protective vegetative cover to minimize soil erosion, loss of productive capacity, and off-site flooding and sediment damage.

Satisfactory establishment of soil-conserving cover often requires the management of livestock, wildlife, and public use until cover is firmly established. Experience has shown that grazing may have to be restricted for a full year or at least until after seed production of the second year for optimum cover reestablishment. In areas of less than 30.5 cm of annual precipitation, longer time frames may be necessary. Temporary fencing is often used to control grazing and restrict livestock use from the burned area.

Seeding is often a primary measure proposed in emergency fire rehabilitation plans, if seed sources in burned areas are not readily available to mitigate the potential for erosion and flood damage. Emergency reseeding must be restricted to species adaptable to the area. The best time to seed is usually from September 15 to November 15 before rainfall packs the burned area's ash. Later plantings grow more slowly because of cooler temperatures. Other factors considered in seeding are depth and type of soil, average annual rainfall, seed availability, natural reseeding ability, and amount of growth that can be produced before the winter rains.



Seeding of native shrubs (*Atriplex polycarpa*) to reestablish protective cover for threatened and endangered species. Panoche Fire, Fresno County, California, 1987.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Soil Scientist, Bureau of Land Management, U.S. Department of the Interior, Bakersfield, California.

Distribution and Persistence of Hydrophobic Soil Layers on the Indian Burn¹

Roger J. Poff²

In September 1987, the Indian Fire on the Downieville District of the Tahoe National Forest burned over 3,750 ha of heavy timber. One-third of the area was very intensively burned. Hydrophobic soil layers 5 to 10 cm thick were common throughout the burn, but intensely hydrophobic soil layers 30 to 38 cm thick developed on about 250 ha. Where hydrophobic layers were less than 5 to 10 cm thick, soils were intentionally disturbed during winter logging to speed recovery.

The following observations were made:

(1) Litter amount, and possibly type, seems important in developing hydrophobic soils under forest vegetation. The deepest and most intensely hydrophobic soil layers developed under mature stands of white fir, with a thick duff. Plantations, with no duff, did not have hydrophobic soil layers. (2) Depth and thickness of hydrophobic soil layers both appear related to the thickness of the A horizon: the thickest hydrophobic soil layers occurred on McCarthy soils, which are medial-skeletal and have high amounts of organic matter in an umbric epipedon; hydrophobic layers were thinner on Jocal soils, which are fine-loamy and have an

ochric epipedon. (3) McCarthy soils are naturally hydrophobic when dry, but recover rapidly if unburned. An unburned McCarthy soil under white fir was strongly hydrophobic to 35 cm in September; but in November, under 45 cm of snow, this natural hydrophobicity had completely disappeared. (4) The strongly hydrophobic layers of the burned McCarthy soils have persisted much longer than anticipated. As of August 1988, there has been very little change in the thickness of the hydrophobic soil layers or the intensity of hydrophobicity. (5) Intentional disturbance with logging equipment was successful in speeding up the breakdown of thin and shallow hydrophobic layers on Jocal soils. On McCarthy soils, where hydrophobic layers were more than 10 cm thick, disturbance did not seem to be deep enough to penetrate the hydrophobic layers. An alternative explanation is that mixing the intensely hydrophobic McCarthy soils, which are ashy and high in organic matter, merely redistributed the hydrophobic material throughout the soil.

From these observations the following conclusions can be drawn: (1) Under forested vegetation, thick and very strongly hydrophobic soil layers can develop. The depth and intensity of hydrophobic soil layers appears related to amount and type of forest duff, soil type, and fire intensity. (2) Intentional mixing of hydrophobic soil layers can speed recovery where the layers are thin and close to the surface. Mixing is not beneficial where the layers are thick and deep, especially where developed in ashy soils high in organic matter. (3) Thick, intensely hydrophobic soil layers developed under forest vegetation can persist for at least a full year, and possibly much longer.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Soil Scientist, North Sierra Zone, Pacific Southwest Region and Tahoe National Forest, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service, Nevada City, Calif.

Fire Hazard Reduction, Watershed Restoration at the University of California at Berkeley¹

Carol L. Rice and Robert Charbonneau²

The Office of Environmental Health and Safety, University of California Office has responsibility for resource management for the 1500-acre Strawberry Creek watershed above the Berkeley campus. The goals of resource management are fire hazard reduction plus preservation of the lands as an Ecological Study Area.

To reduce the chance of damage to nearby developments (residences, laboratories, museums) and preserve an intact watershed, fire hazard reduction efforts employ a variety of techniques. These remove a large amount of fuel, and change the distribution of the remaining fuels. In some areas, these efforts will change the type of vegetation. Eucalyptus sprouts (resulting from a freeze and subsequent logging in 1975) will be eliminated and replaced by grasslands along with oak/bay woodlands by the end of the initial five year program. Brush cover is being reduced to 20 percent in areas previously covered with grass, and litter layers are being reduced in conifer stands. Fortunately, the fire hazard reduction treatments also restore the Ecological Study Area to a more natural condition, since the area was predominantly grassland and oak savanna in the early 1900's.

Implementation of the program is facilitated by a Fire Prevention Committee comprised of members from diverse interests including faculty, staff, homeowners, and local fire departments. This group provides feedback and communication with the

community to strengthen support and identify opportunities for cooperation. In this urban interface setting, communication and coordination with diverse elements of the community is a major aspect of the program and essential to its success.

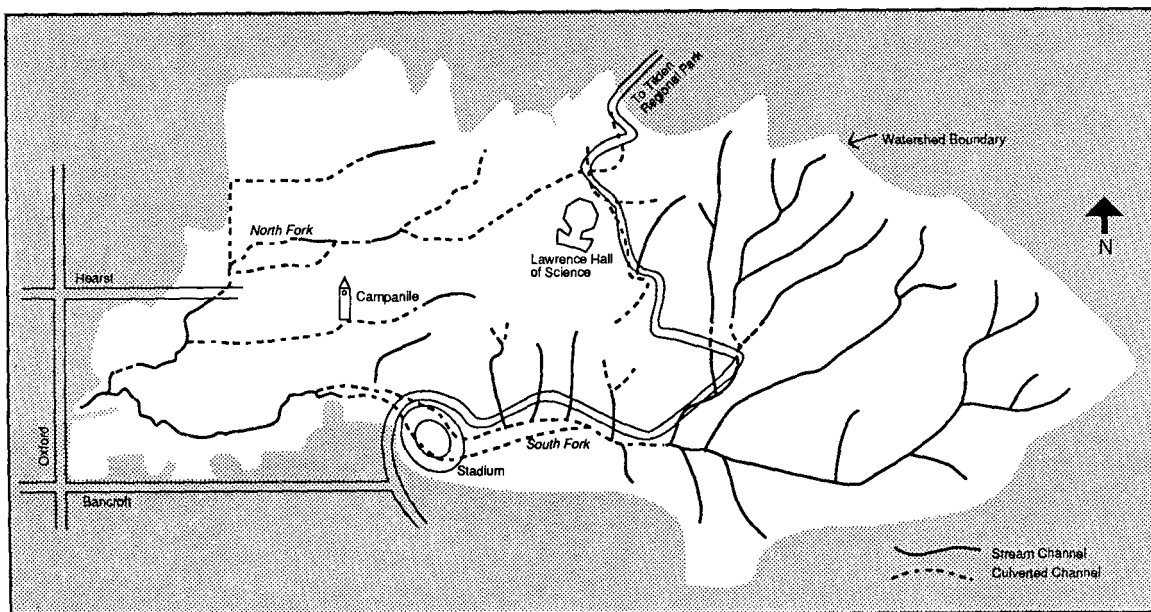
Techniques employed include hand labor, prescribed burning, goat grazing, and appropriate mechanical equipment operations. Fire intensity is expected to be reduced by as much as one half as a result of this program. A wildfire occurred July 27, 1988 in one area of thinned and pruned eucalyptus; heat output was minor (flames less than 4 feet, or 1.2 m, in height) and spread was slow (under three chains/hour, or 60.35 m/h).

The overall effects of these management practices on the water-carrying characteristics of the watershed will be increased surface runoff volume and velocity. Because the canyon soils are generally heavy clays with high runoff and erosion potential, a primary concern is that increased soil erosion and gullying could occur. Numerous landslide and colluvial bodies are also located in the hill area. Applicable erosion control techniques will be implemented as necessary.

On the other hand, conversion of brush and eucalyptus to grassland should increase groundwater recharge in the Hill Area and beneficially increase the low (under 1 ft³, or 0.28 m³, per second) baseflow of Strawberry Creek. Baseflow and sedimentation of the creek and its tributaries will be monitored to assess the impacts. Hillslope stability will also be monitored for movement caused by increased shallow groundwater levels.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-29, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Proprietor, Wildland Resource Management, Walnut Creek, Calif; and Environmental Planner in the Office of Environmental Health and Safety, University of California, Berkeley, Calif.



Soil Movement After Wildfire in Taiga (Discontinuous Permafrost) Upland Forest¹

Charles W. Slaughter²

The 3,239-ha Rosie Creek fire of June 1983 covered nearly one-third of the Bonanza Creek Experimental Forest, near Fairbanks, Alaska. Although the fire destroyed or affected ongoing forestry research, it also provided opportunity for research on effects of fire. Post-fire soil erosion was monitored in an intensively burned, south-facing (permafrost-free) white spruce/birch/aspen forest (22 to 35 percent slope), beginning in August 1983. Eight sediment traps (122 cm wide, 5,575 cm² surface area) were installed, four in a swale and four on adjacent slopes. Upslope potential sediment source areas were not bounded, so actual contributing areas for each sediment trap are undefined. Sediment traps were inspected immediately after snowmelt in spring 1984. None of the traps had collected enough sediment to justify measurement (though appreciable organic litter had accumulated in the traps through direct litterfall). The organic material was removed in spring 1985; the sediment traps were again inspected after snowmelt in spring 1986, and a small accumulation of organic and mineral sediment was recovered and measured. Ash-free dry weight of sediment ranged from 8.7 to 14.3

grams/trap. Sediment traps were again inspected in September 1988; although organic debris (leaves, twigs, insects) had accumulated in the traps, mineral soil was not evident.

These results support earlier observations that even severely burned steep slopes experienced very little soil movement as a direct result of this wildfire. Isolated instances of downslope soil movement over short distances were associated with soil disturbance caused by blowdown of fire-killed trees.

SELECTED REFERENCES

- Juday, Glenn P.; Dyrness, Theodore C. 1986. Early results of the Rosie Creek Fire Research Project 1984. Misc. Pub. 85-2. Fairbanks, AK: Agricultural and Forestry Experiment Station, School of Agriculture and Land Resources Management, University of Alaska-Fairbanks; 46 p.
- Viereck, Leslie A.; Schandelmeier, Linda A. 1980. Effects of fire in Alaska and adjacent Canada--a literature review. BLM-Alaska Tech. Rep. 6. Anchorage, AK: U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land Management; 124 p.
- Viereck, L.A. 1983. The effects of fire in the black spruce ecosystem of Alaska and northern Canada. In: Wein, Ross W.; MacLean, David A., eds. The role of fire in northern circumpolar ecosystems. Toronto, ON: John Wiley and Sons Canada Limited; 201-220.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Principal Watershed Scientist, Pacific Northwest Research Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Fairbanks, Alaska 99775-5500.

Fire and Archaeology¹

Larry Swan and Charla Francis²

There are thousands of prehistoric and historic sites in California resulting from over 10,000 years of human occupation. Fires have occurred on a regular basis during this time and effects on archaeological sites have been minimal. Over the last 80 years, however, with the advent of active fire suppression, the effects of fires and fire suppression on archaeological sites have greatly increased.

One of the effects of fire suppression has been increased fuel buildup; there may be fewer fires, but those that occur tend to burn more intensely. This type of burn can destroy or greatly alter chipped or groundstone artifacts, as well as make difficult the protection of historic remains such as cabins and other structures. Another effect of fire suppression has been the disturbance resulting from fire suppression activities. Thousands of years of human remains can be obliterated through the use of mechanized equipment. The most commonly perceived use of mechanized equipment during fire suppression is the use of tractors for fireline construction. However, severe disturbance can also occur during the construction of helipads, water site developments, fire camps, and staging areas.

An often overlooked, potentially disturbing effect of fires are activities associated with watershed rehabilitation efforts. Depending upon design and location, rehabilitation projects

can be either beneficial or detrimental to archaeological sites. Examples of watershed rehabilitation projects which may be beneficial are streambank stabilization, OHV barriers, and water control measures. Detrimental effects generally relate to excavations or mechanized equipment use within site boundaries, and downstream effects of watershed projects undertaken without consideration of archaeological sites.

In timber country, probably the most widespread and potentially the most disturbing effects result from salvage logging. Destruction of archaeological sites will occur unless an archaeological survey is conducted and sites are protected prior to logging. Even if an area has already been surveyed, post-fire surveys will reveal sites previously hidden by duff and slash, and better ground visibility will allow refinement of boundaries of known sites.

Most resource specialists are accustomed to dealing with and mitigating multiple resource concerns during normal project work. During and after fires however, for such reasons as fatigue, stress, and sense of emergency, project location and design may inadvertently omit consideration of certain resources. In the case of archaeological sites, such a mistake will result in irreparable damage.

Archaeological sites are nonrenewable resources. Personnel working on fires, both during and after an incident, are strongly encouraged to consult with local archaeologists about project location and design, and include archaeologists as an integral part of fire suppression and rehabilitation efforts. Not only is this good resource management, but when Federal land is involved, agencies are legally required to follow 36 CFR 800 procedures for post-fire projects involving archaeological sites.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²District Archaeologist, Sierra National Forest, California; and Forest Archaeologist, Stanislaus National Forest, California.

Modeling Fire and Timber Salvage Effects for the Silver Fire Recovery Project in Southwestern Oregon¹

Jon Vanderheyden, Lee Johnson,
Mike Amaranthus, and Linda Batten²

In the Environmental Impact statement developed by the silver Fire Recovery Project, after wildfire swept through southwestern Oregon in 1987, the objective was to analyze management alternatives in the fire area. As the Council on Environmental Quality requires that all Federal agencies consider cumulative impacts in such an analysis, anadromous fish populations were chosen as indicators of watershed and fisheries resource effects.

A model was created to assess the cumulative effects of past watershed practices, the Silver Fire, and various management alternatives, on steelhead and Chinook smolt production in the Silver and Indigo Creek drainages. The factors used to predict steelhead smolt production were pool volume and summer stream temperatures. Chinook production was predicted using an estimate of channel bed disturbance. The value which the model predicts is referred to as the Smolt Habitat Capability Index.

Changes in pool volume and channel bed disturbance were estimated based on potential stream aggradation due to sedimentation. Sediment production from surface and mass erosion was predicted across the analysis area, based on watershed sensitivity, fire intensity, management practices, and local inventory data. Watershed sensitivity is mapped in the fire area, based on the relative risk of erosion from debris slides, rills and gullies reaching streams.

Stream gradient and an estimated 10-year event discharge were used to establish stream

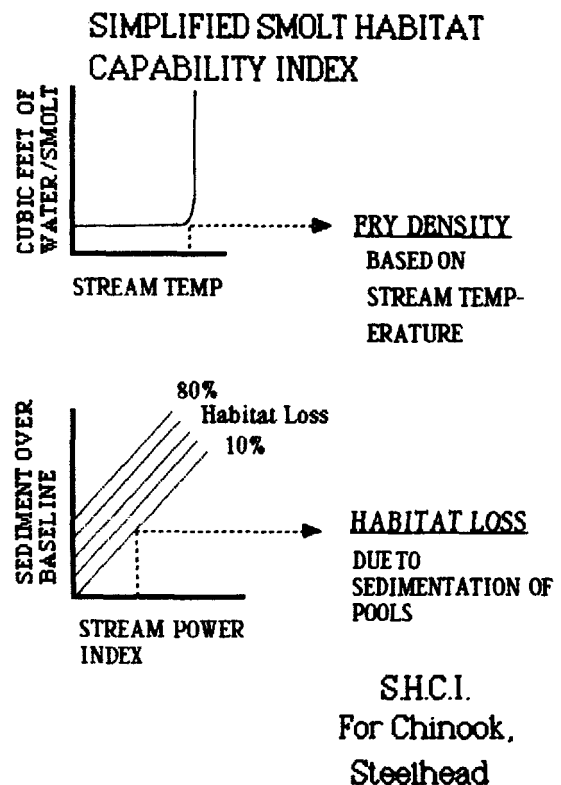
power. A sample number of streams in the analysis area were evaluated to develop a relationship between stream power; sediment increase, and stream habitat. Total amount of pool habitat for the analysis area was estimated based on stream surveys.

Stream temperatures were calculated using Brown's (1969) equation modified for use in large basins. Equation calculations were tested against two summers of thermograph data. Temperatures pre-fire, post-fire, and under different management alternatives were calculated for the analysis area. Literature values and local data were used to establish a relationship between fry density and water temperature, and fry reductions were equated to fish densities using actual observations in Silver Creek.

Efforts are currently under way to monitor field conditions and verify some of the assumptions used to run this model.

REFERENCE

Brown, G.W. 1969. Predicting temperature of small streams. Water Resources Res. 5(1):68-75.



¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California

²District Ranger, Wallawa-Whitman National Forest, Halfway, Oregon; Fisheries Biologist, Siskiyou National Forest, Brookings, Oregon; Soil Scientist and Hydrologist, respectively, Siskiyou National Forest, Grants Pass, Oregon, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture.

Poster presented by Paula Fong, Soil Scientist, Siskiyou National Forest, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Grants Pass, Oregon.

Maximizing Chaparral Vegetation Response to Prescribed Burns: Experimental Considerations¹

Chris Rogers, V. Thomas Parker, Victoria R. Kelly, and Michael K. Wood²

Recovery of chaparral vegetation following out-of-season burns has been shown to be unpredictable and often contrary to the goals of the prescription. Preliminary investigations of seed bank responses to heat and moisture using dry (3 percent) versus moist (45 percent) soil found large differences in the germination of woody shrubs and herbaceous species. Further investigations suggest a complex interaction of temperature, soil moisture, and heat duration causing differential responses among the post-fire flora.

Sensitivity to these factors is related to the amount of water a seed imbibes, with species falling into two classes: (1) almost no imbibition (e.g. *Calystegia macrostegia*, *Ceanothus* sp.) and requiring high temperatures to stimulate germination, and (2) imbibition of more than 25 percent seed dry weight (e.g. *Emmenanthe penduliflora*, *Phacelia* sp.) and suffering high mortality at relatively low temperatures. Dry seeds of four fire-following herbs survived heating up to 110 C, but germination of seeds soaked in water before heating was significantly reduced or eliminated in three species at 65 C and in the fourth at 95 C.

Similar germination results were obtained in tests with seeds of dominant woody taxa: seeds exposed to cooler temperatures in moist soils yielded lower germination than seeds exposed to hotter temperatures in dry soils. Experiments were designed to test incrementally longer periods of heat treatment and moisture levels on chemise (*Adenostoma fasciculatum*), a species with seeds

that are sensitive to high temperatures under moist conditions (Table 1). In general, greater numbers of seedlings were observed in the unheated controls and the lower moisture levels. Germination decreased almost exponentially in wet heated soils between 3 and 22 percent moisture content, with no germination above this soil moisture level, while moisture levels in unheated soils was not a limiting factor.

Table 1. Germination response of chamise to increasing heat duration and soil moisture content. Values are mean number of seedlings per standard half flat, n=6.

Moisture pct.	Time (min.)			
	0	10	20	30
3	139	100	203	228
7	164	129	95	181
15	191	7	18	7
22	196	0	1	5
30	187	1	1	0
45	143	0	1	0

In addition to the problems summarized above, unusual substrates such as serpentinitic or acidic soils may complicate results, where the responses of apparently highly sensitive and often narrowly endemic plant species are poorly understood. Seed banks of these species, as with the Lone manzanita (*Arctostaphylos myrtifolia*), often yield little or no germination from simulated fire treatments, suggesting either low numbers of persistent seeds or high mortality from heat.

The successful recovery of a stand is not only desirable from a biological point of view, but is important to the maintenance of the watershed. These experimental results indicate that the use of fire as a management tool in chaparral can yield variable results. To maximize vegetation regeneration from the soil seed bank, pre-burn soil conditions must be considered.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, Sacramento, California.

²Graduate Student and Professor of Biology, respectively, San Francisco State University, San Francisco; Research Associate, Institute of Ecosystem Studies, Millbrook, New York; and Graduate Student, San Francisco State University.

Burned-Area Emergency Rehabilitation in the Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, USDA¹

Kathryn J. Silverman²

The Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, has responsibility on agency lands to provide for emergency watershed rehabilitation following destruction of vegetative cover by wildfire. The California wildfires of 1987 created a need for the largest burned-area emergency rehabilitation effort ever. Rehabilitation teams analyzed over 250,000 ha for emergency treatment needs, with the objective of protecting water quality and soil productivity, and preventing loss of life and property. Ultimately, over 5 million dollars were spent for emergency watershed protection measures on 11 National Forests.

Emergency rehabilitation begins with the formation of an interdisciplinary team to assess the condition and restoration needs of the burned area. Critical information about burn intensity, watershed values, and land capability is gathered and used in planning for potential treatment measures. Finally, a cost-benefit analysis is completed to determine whether the expenditure is justified.

Land treatment measures used for burned-area restoration include seeding to provide protective plant cover. Common grass species used are annual ryegrasses, Lolium multiflorum; Blando brome, Bromus mollis; Zorro annual fescue, Vulpia myuros; and barley, Hordeum

vulgare. Site-specific mixtures are developed by each Forest. Candidate areas for seeding are intensely burned, have a high erosion-hazard rating, or both. About 13 percent of the acreage burned in the 1987 fires was seeded.

Another treatment, used to control water movement in the upper reaches of a watershed, is contour felling of large woody material, or slashing using smaller materials. Dead, standing timber (20 to 25 cm in diameter) is felled and set on the contour with good ground contact to slow the flow of water and shorten the length of slope. When larger material is not available, brush and smaller poles are dropped and left to provide groundcover and protection from raindrop impact.

Road drainage is a critical concern. Drainage may be modified on existing roads to allow for an increase in water and debris movement. Modifications include cleaning inside ditches, enlarging culverts to handle increased flow, and providing protection at road drainage outlets.

Various channel treatment measures are used to stabilize the watershed. Check dams made of straw and/or logs are used in headwater drainages to maintain gradient and prevent downcutting. Other channel treatments include removing floatable debris and stabilizing streambanks with vegetation or inorganic materials.

Monitoring follows the first storms to determine the effectiveness of treatments, maintenance needs, watershed condition, and vegetative recovery rates. Photographs, transects, and other measurement devices provide information useful for validating assumptions and predictions and the knowledge necessary to improve future burned-area rehabilitation projects.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988 Sacramento, California.

²Burned-Area Emergency Rehabilitation Coordinator, Pacific Southwest Region, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, San Francisco, Calif.

Does Fire Regime Determine the Distribution of Pacific Yew in Forested Watersheds?¹

Stanley Scher and Thomas M. Jimerson²

Pacific yew (*Taxus brevifolia*) (TABR), a slow-growing, shade-tolerant conifer, forms an understory canopy in forested watersheds from northern California to southern Alaska. The TABR subcanopy serves several functions in forest communities. It provides protective cover and food for wildlife. Several groups of birds feed on the fleshy aril and disseminate yew seed. On riparian sites, it provides streamside shading to maintain cool temperatures for salmonids and other anadromous fish. Its fibrous root system also contributes to stream-channel stabilization.

Survival of TABR populations in western states may be threatened by the discovery that its thin bark is a major source of an antitumor drug. Concern has been expressed that continued harvesting of TABR bark may deplete the resource.

Compared to most other conifers, TABR is highly sensitive to heat damage, possibly because of its thin bark. Several lines of evidence lend support to the idea that heat shock, induced by exposure to supraoptimal temperatures, is a selective factor in modifying ecosystem biodiversity. Both maximum temperature and time of exposure selectively affect survival and germination of seeds. Conifer seedlings are frequently killed at soil level from overheating of the soil surface. Young stands of redwood (under 20 years old) may be destroyed by a single ground fire. Accordingly, wildfire and prescribed burning may represent an additional factor in the depletion of TABR populations. This paper defines the habitat of TABR and assesses the role of fire in limiting the distribution of this temperature-sensitive species.

METHODS

This study was done in conjunction with the ecosystem classification program being conducted on the Six Rivers and Klamath National Forests in northern California (fig. 1). Late seral stage stands (old-growth), mid-seral stands (mature), and early seral stands (plantations) were stratified and randomly selected as study sites. Over 950 plots were analyzed for the presence of TABR. Sampling methods follow the Ecosystem Classification Handbook, FSH 2090 SUPPL. (Allen and Diaz 1986). Data analysis, environmental and vegetation descriptions were completed using SPSSPC+.

The study area is characterized by warm dry summers and cool wet winters. It ranges from 100 to 8000 ft. in elevation (30-2450 m). Slopes are generally steep; they range from 0 to 95 percent.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26/28, 1988, Sacramento, California

²Adjunct Professor, Department of Biology, School of Environmental Studies, Sonoma State University, Rohnert Park, California; Zone Ecologist, Six Rivers National Forest, Eureka, California; Present address: Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Berkeley, Calif.

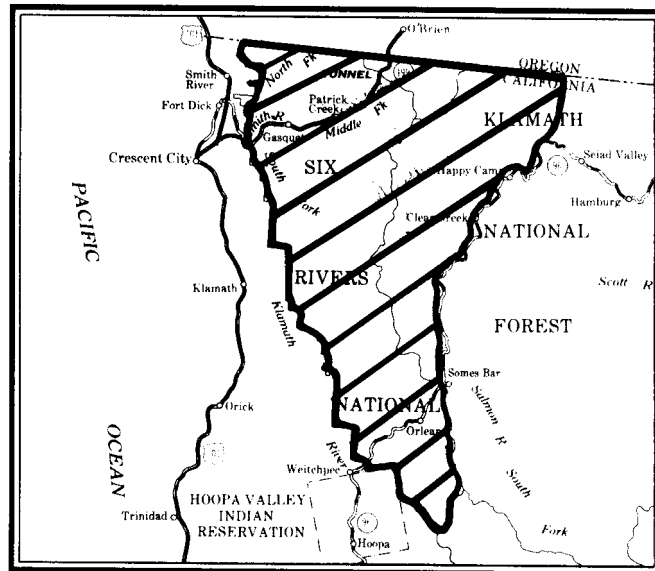


Figure 1--Study area in Six Rivers and Klamath National Forests in northern California.

Mean annual precipitation ranges from 80 to 120 in./yr (203-3048 cm/yr).

The vegetation in the study area includes four conifer series: (1) Port-Orford-Cedar (*Chamaecyparis lawsoniana* [A. Murr.] Parl.) series, located along the stream bottoms; (2) Tanoak/Douglas-fir (*Lithocarpus densiflora* [H. & A.] Rehd./*Pseudotsuga menziesii* [Mirb.] Franco.) series begins at the bottom of the slopes and continues upslope to approximately 4000 ft. (1200 m); (3) White fir (*Abies concolor* [Gord. & Glendl.] Lindl.) series replaces the tanoak/Douglas-fir series above 4000 ft. (1200 m); and (4) Red fir (*Abies magnifica* A. Murr. var. *shastensis* Lemmon) series replaces the white fir series at the top of the highest mountains.

Small pockets of jeffrey pine (*Pinus jeffreyi* Grev. & Balf.), lodgepole pine (*Pinus contorta* Dougl.), and knobcone pine (*Pinus attenuata* Lemmon) are found throughout the study area.

RESULTS

During this study, we examined 951 plots; 143 contained TABR. The Port-Orford-Cedar series had the highest frequency of occurrence of TABR (29 percent), followed by the Douglas-fir series (13 percent), white and red fir series (4 percent), and the Douglas-fir plantations (2 percent) (fig. 2). TABR occurred most frequently between 1000 and 4000 feet. Above 4000 feet, cover dropped dramatically. Slopes were moderate (40 percent), as were

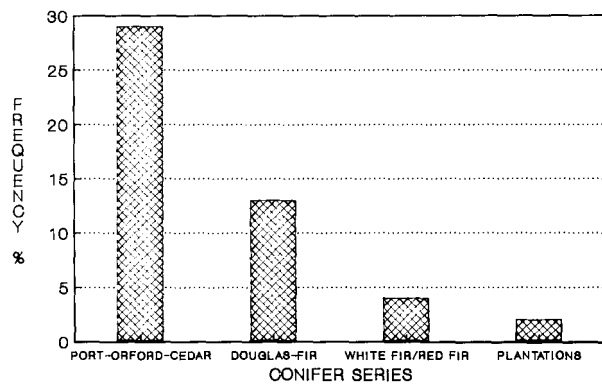


Figure 2--Frequency of *Taxus brevifolia* by conifer series.

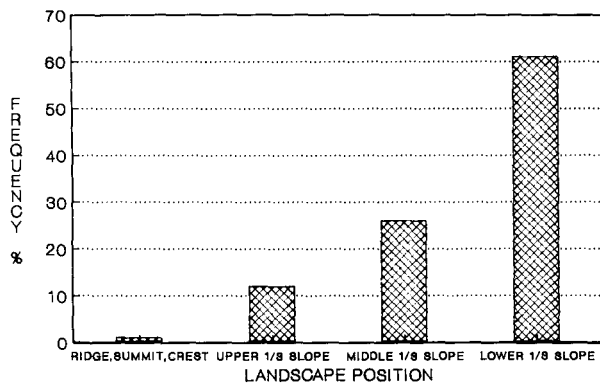


Figure 3--Frequency of *Taxus brevifolia* by landscape position.

surface rock and gravel (2-3 percent). TABR cover increased with total vegetation.

Most stands containing TABR had more than 95 percent total vegetation cover. The stand age of overstory trees ranged from 200 to 450 years, with basal areas from 200 ft.² to 360 ft.² per acre. TABR habitat was found to be cool, moist sites with northerly aspects or topographic shading, primarily in the draws and lower one-third slope position (fig. 3). Slope shapes were primarily concave (55 percent) or linear (40 percent).

DISCUSSION

In the Coastal Range and Klamath Mountains of northwestern California, TABR is found primarily in the Port-Orford-Cedar series along stream banks and canyon bottoms. Further north, both species occur on mid-slopes, not restricted to streamside habitats. Fire frequencies in northwestern California are likely responsible for the unequal distribution of TABR. Stand-replacing fires occur with higher frequencies at higher elevations (Veirs 1980). Such fires occur every 500-600 years at low elevations, 150-200 years at intermediate sites, and 33-50 years on high elevation sites. Broadcast burning has virtually eliminated the Pacific yew on some timber-harvested sites. Although prescribed burning reduces the probability of catastrophic wildfires, precautions must be exercised to maintain biodiversity by protecting temperature-sensitive species.

Fire frequency decreases in Oregon and Washington with a corresponding increase in TABR. Mean stand age of old-growth Douglas-fir in 14 ecological types surveyed in northwestern California ranged from 194 to 366 years. (Jimerson 1988). In contrast, the most common age classes of old-growth stands in the Cascade Range in Oregon are between 400 and 500 years. Stands with Douglas-fir over 1000 years old are occasionally encountered (Hemstrom and Franklin 1982).

A key characteristic of old-growth forests is the association of long-lived seral dominant species such as Douglas-fir with a shade-tolerant understory species—western hemlock or TABR. Since fire risks are very low in old-growth Douglas-fir stands, the density of TABR populations increases with Douglas-fir age to ~500 years. In both the Coast and Cascade Ranges, TABR is more common in old-growth forests than in younger stands (T. Spies, personal communication). These findings strongly suggest that long-lived temperature-sensitive species such as TABR may serve as a useful indicator of old-growth forests.

CONCLUSIONS

Studies of TABR distribution in more than 950 plots suggest that proximity to water, vegetative cover, slope position, and elevation are major determinants of TABR on the Six Rivers and Klamath National Forests in northern California. Association of TABR with late seral wet-area species such as Port-Orford-Cedar suggest that stand age, reduced fire frequency and intensity are related factors that also influence TABR occurrence in the northwestern California landscape. Areas with high frequencies of fire have low frequencies of TABR occurrence.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank Neil Berg, Vincent Dong, and Joann Fites for thoughtful reviews of the manuscript, and Tim Washburn and Kathy Stewart for their generous advice and assistance with the figures and composition.

REFERENCES

- Allen, Barbara H.; Diaz, David V. 1986. R-5 Ecosystem Classification Handbook. Region 5, San Francisco, Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture; 98 p. Unpublished draft supplied by authors.
- Hemstrom, Miles A.; Franklin, Jerry. 1982. Fire and other disturbances of the forests in Mount Rainier National Park. Quaternary Research 18: 32-51.
- Jimerson, Thomas M. 1988. Ecological types of the Gasquet Ranger District, Six Rivers National Forest. Forest Service, U.S. Department of Agriculture, 164 p. Unpublished draft supplied by author.
- Veirs, Stephen D. Jr. 1980. The influence of fire in coast redwood forests. In: Proceedings of the Fire History Workshop, Laboratory of Tree Ring Research, University of Arizona, Tucson, AZ. October 20-24. 93-95.

Techniques and Costs for Erosion Control and Site Restoration in National Parks¹

Terry A. Spreiter, William Weaver, and Ronald Sonnevil²

In 1978, the U.S. Congress expanded Redwood National Park, located on the northern California coast. The expansion included 36,000 acres of recently logged and roaded steeppland in the Redwood Creek watershed. Natural erosion rates in this area are very high, and man's activities accelerated erosion to extreme levels. Many streams were diverted from their natural channels, gullies formed and continue to enlarge, landslides (common to the area) were re-activated, and thousands of acres of bare soil were left behind to erode. To control the man-induced erosion and to restore more natural processes to the Redwood Creek ecosystem, the NPS was authorized to launch an unprecedented \$33 million, 10-15 year program for rehabilitation of the Redwood Creek watershed.

Park resource managers and scientists have developed and tested a wide variety of methods for erosion control and site restoration that have broad application for all natural areas. The poster display presents a number of techniques which have been used in the rehabilitation program over the last 10 years, and discusses the cost-effectiveness of each type of treatment. The treatments and actual techniques for their implementation are being constantly refined by the resource management staff, and a steady decline in costs has been the result. We are happy to share our collective experience in erosion control and land restoration, so that others may benefit in planning a small project or developing an entire watershed program.

To cost-effectively undertake a rehabilitation project of any scale, a series of critical steps must be taken.

1. Identify the basic problem and establish the treatment objectives.
2. Collect site data, through inventories and detailed mapping.
3. Develop prescriptions and prepare work plans and or specifications.
4. Directly supervise prescription implementation.
5. Document costs, monitor and measure effectiveness, perform maintenance, and summarize work: Did you meet your objectives and was it cost effective?

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Watershed Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Supervisory Geologist, Engineering Geologist and Geologist, respectively, Redwood National Park, Orick, California.

The success of the project depends on the care given to the first step. Often the perceived problem is not the actual problem. For example, is the problem the eyesore, eroded stream crossing or the less obvious, 1/2 plugged culvert which may totally plug, causing the stream to divert, yielding a large hillslope gully or landslide? The cause of the problem may give added insight; perhaps the cause is also part of the problem. Are the gullies on the hillslope because of bare ground from over grazing or is a stream diverted by a road further upslope? The problem then helps define the objectives.

The cost-effectiveness of any restoration work is dependent on the degree to which stated objectives have been obtained. At Redwood, our principal objective is to reduce man-caused erosion, and more directly to minimize sediment yield to the stream system. Our cost-effectiveness is measured in terms of dollars per cubic yard of sediment "saved" from entering the streams.

All of Redwood's erosion control techniques have been tested and refined based on a quantitative evaluation of this measure of rehabilitation cost-effectiveness. Treatments such as willow wattling, and constructing elaborate wooden structures to temporarily trap or stabilize small quantities of sediment are no longer determined to be cost-effective for our specific objectives. Where its use is applicable, the efficient use of heavy equipment to do complete excavations has proven to be the most cost effective of all erosion control treatments. With careful supervision and skilled operators, heavy equipment can be used successfully and cost-effectively to heal the landscape.

Prevention is clearly the least costly and most effective method for minimizing increased erosion and sediment yield. However, where corrective work is needed, careful consideration of erosion control cost-effectiveness can result in significant savings.

Work at Redwood National Park has shown that a successful erosion control program requires critical evaluation and monitoring which continually feeds information and findings back into the on-going rehabilitation work. Post-rehabilitation evaluation of completed projects is the best available tool for improving the cost-effectiveness of future erosion control and site restoration work.

Techniques developed at RNP have broad applicability to restoration of the physical environment in disturbed natural areas. Repair of the physical environment is often the critical first step in ecosystem restoration. If you are interested in additional information about specific treatments, costs or techniques that may be applicable to your area, please contact the Deputy Superintendent at Redwood National Park.

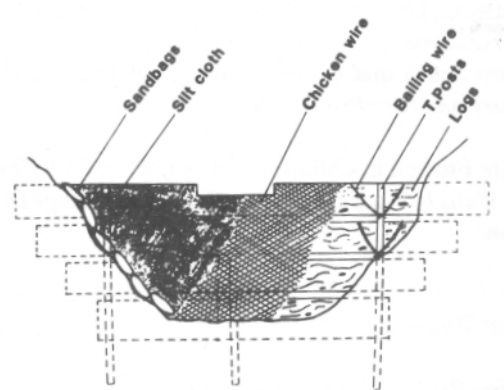
Erosion Associated with Postfire Salvage Logging Operations in the Central Sierra Nevada¹

Wade G. Wells II²

The disastrous Stanislaus Complex Fires, which burned 147,000 acres of timber in September 1987, provided an opportunity to gather some badly needed information about erosion in the central Sierra Nevada. Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station and the Stanislaus National Forest have established a study designed to estimate the erosion caused by cable yarding and tractor logging, the two commonly used methods in the burned area. The study will compare erosion from watersheds logged exclusively by each method to comparable unlogged controls.

The study uses measurements of sediment trapped in debris basins to estimate erosion rates from upstream watershed areas. The debris basins are established by constructing log dams in the stream channels which drain the watersheds, then excavating the channel immediately above each dam to increase its capacity. We built 22 dams, each impounding 5 to 10 acres of drainage area, between

January and March of 1988. The resulting basins are small (average capacity about 20 m³) and require frequent cleanouts. To measure the trapped sediment, each basin has a set of 10 cross-sections, surveyed and profiled, between the dam and the estimated upstream end of the resulting reservoir.



Downstream face of a typical dam. Large rocks placed below the spillway prevent formation of a plunge pool which could undermine the dam.

Cutaway view showing construction details of a typical dam. Silt cloth reinforced by chicken wire is stapled to the upstream face of the dam. This water-permeable cloth can trap all but the finest sediments. (Drawing by Margo M. Erickson)



Upstream face of a completed dam. Natural channel has been widened to increase reservoir capacity. Sandbags secure the reinforced silt cloth to the bottom of the reservoir.

¹Presented at the Symposium on Fire and Water Management, October 26-28, 1988, Sacramento, California.

²Hydrologist, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station, USDA Forest Service, 4955 Canyon Crest Drive, Riverside, CA 92507

TECHNICAL AND POSTER PAPERS NOT SUBMITTED FOR PUBLICATION

Technical Papers

Soil Temperature and Moisture Profiles During Wildland Fires
*Alex Dimitrakopoulos, Robert Martin, and Larry Waldron,
Department of Forestry and Resource Management, University
of California, Berkeley*

Watershed Effects of Wildfire in the Entiat Experimental
Watershed
Glen Klock, Klock and Associates

The Effect of Growth and Development on California's Wildland
Fire Protection
*Richard Schell and Dianne Mays, California Department of
Forestry and Fire Protection*

Postfire Erosion in California Chaparral, an Overview
*Wade Wells II, Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment
Station*

Poster Paper

Fay Fire Recovery and Rehabilitation
Margie Clack, Sequoia National Forest

EXHIBITORS

Albright Seed Company
5710 Auburn Boulevard, No. 4
Sacramento, California 95841
Dale Kidwell

American Excelsior
839 Eldercreek Rd.
Sacramento, California 95824
Lynn Ward

Geofab Inc.
P.O. Box 399
Anderson, California 96007
Lynn Friesner

Jones and Stokes Associates, Inc.
1725 - 23rd Street, Suite 100
Sacramento, California 95816
Charles Hazel

North American Green
14649 Highway 41N
Evansville, Indiana 47711
Dan Carter

Pacific Coast Seed
7074D Commerce Circle
Pleasanton, California 94566
Peter Boffey



The Forest Service, U. S. Department of Agriculture, is responsible for Federal leadership in forestry.

It carries out this role through four main activities:

- Protection and management of resources on 191 million acres of National Forest System lands
- Cooperation with State and local governments, forest industries, and private landowners to help protect and manage non-Federal forest and associated range and watershed lands
- Participation with other agencies in human resource and community assistance programs to improve living conditions in rural areas
- Research on all aspects of forestry, rangeland management, and forest resources utilization.

The Pacific Southwest Forest and Range Experiment Station

- Represents the research branch of the Forest Service in California, Hawaii, and the western Pacific.
-